FUNDAMENTALS OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR

WORKBOOK

Betty Schrampfer Azar
with Stacy Hagen

FUNDAMENTALS OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR is a classic developmental skills text for students of English as a second or foreign language.

This Workbook consists solely of self-study exercises, providing students the opportunity to explore and practice grammar independently. It is keyed to the explanatory grammar charts in both the Student Book and the Chartbook.

The components of FUNDAMENTALS OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR, Third Edition, are:

Student Book

Workbook, consisting of self-study exercises for independent work

Chartbook, a reference text consisting of only the grammar charts

Teacher’s Guide, with teaching suggestions, grammar notes, and answers
ISBN 0-13-013634-4

Azar/Grammar Exchange Companion website
http://www.longman.com/azar
http://www.longman.com/grammarexchange

Pearson Education
FUNDAMENTALS OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR
Third Edition

WORKBOOK

Betty Schrampfer Azar with Stacy Hagen
Contents

Preface ................................................................. xv

Chapter 1  PRESENT TIME

PRACTICES
1. Interview questions and answers ........................................... 1
2. Present verbs ................................................................. 2
3. Forms of the simple present .................................................. 2
4. Forms of the present progressive .......................................... 3
5. Present verbs: questions ..................................................... 3
6. Present verbs: questions ..................................................... 4
7. Simple present ............................................................... 4
8. Simple present and present progressive .................................. 5
9. Simple present ............................................................... 5
10. Simple present and present progressive ................................ 6
11. Frequency adverbs ......................................................... 7
12. Frequency adverbs ......................................................... 7
13. Frequency adverbs ......................................................... 8
14. Frequency adverbs ......................................................... 8
15. Frequency adverbs ......................................................... 9
16. Simple present: final -s/-es ............................................... 10
17. Simple present: final -s/-es ............................................... 11
18. Pronunciation: final -s/-es ................................................ 11
19. Pronunciation: final -s/-es ................................................ 12
20. Spelling: final -s/-es ....................................................... 12
21. Non-action verbs ............................................................ 12
22. Simple present and present progressive ................................ 13
23. Simple present and present progressive ................................ 14
24. Error analysis .............................................................. 15
25. Present verbs: questions and short answers ........................... 15
26. Review: present verbs ..................................................... 16

Chapter 2  PAST TIME
1. Simple past ................................................................. 18
2. Simple past: regular and irregular verbs ................................ 19
3. Simple past forms .......................................................... 19
Chapter 3  FUTURE TIME

1. Present, past, and future ................................. 43
2. Will and be going to ...................................... 44
3. Be going to .................................................. 44
4. Will .......................................................... 44
5. Questions with will and be going to ...................... 45
6. Will .......................................................... 46
7. Will probably ............................................... 46
8. Will probably ............................................... 47
9. Sureness about the future .................................. 47
10. Sureness about the future ................................. 48
11. Will .......................................................... 49
12. Be going to vs. will ....................................... 49
13. Be going to vs. will ....................................... 50
14. Past and future time clauses ............................ 52
15. Future time clauses ....................................... 52
16. If-clauses .................................................. 53
17. Time clauses and if-clauses ............................... 54
18. Review: past and future .................................. 54
19. Using *be going to* and the present progressive to express future time .... 56
20. Using the present progressive to express future time ..................... 56
21. Using the simple present to express future time .......................... 58
22. Using *be about to* ......................................................... 59
23. Parallel verbs ............................................................... 59
24. Error analysis ............................................................... 60
25. Verb tense review .......................................................... 61

Chapter 4 THE PRESENT PERFECT AND THE PAST PERFECT

1. Forms of the present perfect ................................................. 64
2. The present perfect .......................................................... 65
3. Review: irregular verbs ..................................................... 66
4. The present perfect .......................................................... 67
5. The present perfect vs. the simple past .................................. 68
6. Review: irregular verbs ..................................................... 68
7. The present perfect vs. the simple past .................................. 70
8. Review: irregular verbs ..................................................... 71
9. *Since* vs. *for* .............................................................. 73
10. Present perfect with *since* and *for* .................................... 74
11. Present perfect and simple past with time words ....................... 74
12. *Since*-clauses .............................................................. 75
13. The present perfect progressive .......................................... 75
14. The present perfect progressive .......................................... 76
15. *Already, still, yet, anymore* ............................................. 77
16. *Already, still, yet, anymore* ............................................. 78
17. Verb tense review .......................................................... 79
18. The present perfect vs. the past perfect ................................ 80
19. The past progressive vs. the past perfect ............................... 81
20. The past perfect ............................................................ 82
21. Verb tense review .......................................................... 83
22. Error analysis .............................................................. 84

Chapter 5 ASKING QUESTIONS

1. Preview: asking questions .................................................. 85
2. Yes/no questions ............................................................ 86
3. Yes/no questions and short answers ..................................... 87
4. Yes/no questions and short answers ..................................... 88
5. Yes/no questions and short answers ..................................... 89
6. Yes/no and information questions ........................................ 89
7. Information questions ...................................................... 90
8. Information questions ...................................................... 91
9. Information questions with *why* ........................................ 92
10. *Who, who(m), and what* ................................................. 93
11. *Who, who(m), and what* ................................................. 94
12. Asking for the meaning of a word ....................................... 95
13. *What* + a form of *do* .................................................. 95
### Chapter 6  NOUNS AND PRONOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Preview: plural nouns</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Pronunciation of -s/-es</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Pronunciation of -s/-es</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Pronunciation of -s/-es</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Plural nouns</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Plural nouns</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Subjects, verbs, and objects</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Objects of prepositions</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Subjects, verbs, objects, and prepositions</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Prepositions of time</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Word order: object, place, and time</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Subject–verb agreement</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Subject–verb agreement</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Adjectives</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Adjectives and nouns</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Nouns as adjectives</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. Review: nouns</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Personal pronouns</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. Personal pronouns</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. Personal pronouns</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. Possessive nouns</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. Possessive nouns</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. Possessive pronouns vs. possessive adjectives</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. Possessive pronouns vs. possessive adjectives</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. Reflexive pronouns</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. Reflexive pronouns</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. Review: pronouns</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. Review: pronouns</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. Singular forms of other</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. Singular forms of other</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31. Plural forms of other</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32. Summary: forms of other</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33. Cumulative review</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34. Cumulative review</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 7  MODAL AUXILIARIES

PRACTICES
1. Preview: modal auxiliaries .................................................. 132
2. The form of modal auxiliaries ............................................. 133
3. Expressing ability ............................................................... 134
4. Expressing ability and possibility ......................................... 134
5. Expressing possibility .......................................................... 135
6. Expressing possibility and permission .................................... 135
7. Meanings of could ............................................................... 136
8. Polite questions ................................................................. 137
9. Polite questions ................................................................. 137
10. Expressing advice .............................................................. 138
11. Expressing advice .............................................................. 138
12. Expressing advice .............................................................. 139
13. Expressing necessity ........................................................... 140
14. Expressing necessity ........................................................... 140
15. Necessity: must, have to, have got to .................................... 141
16. Necessity: must, have to, have got to .................................... 141
17. Expressing lack of necessity and prohibition .............................. 141
18. Expressing necessity, lack of necessity, and prohibition .............. 143
19. Expressing necessity, lack of necessity, and prohibition .............. 143
20. Logical conclusion or necessity ............................................. 144
21. Imperative sentences .......................................................... 144
22. Polite questions and imperatives ........................................... 145
23. Let's and why don't ............................................................ 145
24. Stating preferences ............................................................. 146
25. Stating preferences ............................................................. 147
26. Cumulative review ............................................................. 148
27. Cumulative review ............................................................. 149
28. Cumulative review ............................................................. 150

Chapter 8  CONNECTING IDEAS

1. Connecting ideas with and .................................................... 152
2. Punctuating items connected with and ................................. 153
3. Punctuating sentences .......................................................... 153
4. Punctuating sentences .......................................................... 154
5. Using and, but, and or .......................................................... 154
6. Using and, but, or, and so ....................................................... 155
7. Using and, but, or, and so ....................................................... 155
8. Using and, but, or, and so ....................................................... 156
9. Using and, but, or, and so ....................................................... 156
10. Using and, but, or, and so ...................................................... 157
11. Using auxiliary verbs after but and and ............................... 157
12. Auxiliary verbs after but and and ........................................ 158
13. Using too, so, either, or neither after and ............................. 160
14. Adverb clauses with because ............................................... 161
15. Adverb clauses with because ............................................... 161
16. Adverb clauses with because ............................................... 161
PRACTICES
17. Adverb clauses with because .................................................. 162
18. Adverb clauses with even though and although .......................................... 163
19. Using because and even though .................................................. 164
20. Adverb clauses with because .................................................. 165
21. Using even though / although and because .......................................... 166
22. Error analysis ................................................................. 168

Chapter 9 COMPARISONS
1. As as ............................................................................. 169
2. As as ............................................................................. 169
3. As as ............................................................................. 170
4. As as ............................................................................. 172
5. As as ............................................................................. 172
6. Comparative and superlative forms .................................................. 174
7. Comparative forms ........................................................................... 174
8. Comparatives ........................................................................... 175
9. Comparatives and superlatives .................................................. 176
10. Farther and further ........................................................................... 176
11. Adjectives and adverbs in the comparative .................................................. 177
12. Completing a comparative ........................................................................... 177
13. Completing comparisons with pronouns .................................................. 178
14. Very a lot / much / far ........................................................................... 179
15. Not as as and less than ........................................................................... 179
16. Unclear comparisons ........................................................................... 180
17. Using more with nouns ........................................................................... 180
18. Repeating a comparative ........................................................................... 181
19. Double comparatives ........................................................................... 181
20. Double comparatives ........................................................................... 182
21. Using superlatives ........................................................................... 183
22. Using superlatives ........................................................................... 183
23. As as, more/er, and most/est ........................................................................... 184
24. Using never with comparatives .................................................. 186
25. Using ever and never in comparisons .................................................. 186
26. Review of comparatives and superlatives .................................................. 187
27. Review of comparatives and superlatives .................................................. 188
28. Like, alike ............................................................................. 189
29. The same as, similar to, different from .................................................. 190
30. Like, alike, similar (to), different (from) .................................................. 190
31. The same, similar, different, like, alike .................................................. 191
32. Error analysis ............................................................................. 192

Chapter 10 THE PASSIVE
1. Active vs. passive ............................................................................. 193
2. Active vs. passive ............................................................................. 193
3. Review of past participles ........................................................................... 194
4. Passive form ............................................................................. 194
5. Passive vs. active meaning ........................................................................... 195
Chapter 11 COUNT/NONCOUNT NOUNS AND ARTICLES

1. *A* vs. *an*: singular count nouns ................................. 218
2. Preview: count and noncount nouns ............................... 218
3. Count and noncount nouns ............................................ 219
4. Count and noncount nouns ............................................ 220
5. Count and noncount nouns ............................................ 220
6. Count and noncount nouns ............................................ 221
7. *Many* vs. *much* ..................................................... 222
8. *How many* and *how much* ........................................ 223
9. Review: count and noncount nouns ............................... 224
10. *A few* vs. *a little* ................................................ 224
11. Error analysis .......................................................... 225
12. Count and noncount nouns ............................................ 225
PRACTICES
13. Units of measure with noncount nouns ........................................... 226
14. Units of measure with noncount nouns ........................................... 227
15. Much vs. many ................................................................................ 227
16. A/an vs. some .................................................................................. 228
17. A vs. some ...................................................................................... 228
18. A/an vs. the: singular count nouns ................................................... 229
19. Ø vs. the ......................................................................................... 230
20. Using the for second mention ............................................................ 231
21. Using the for second mention ............................................................ 233
22. Summary: a/an vs. the vs. Ø .............................................................. 234
23. Using the or Ø with names ................................................................. 236
24. Using the or Ø with names ................................................................. 237
25. Capitalization ................................................................................... 238
26. Capitalization ................................................................................... 238
27. Error analysis ................................................................................... 239

Chapter 12 ADJECTIVE CLAUSES
1. Using who in adjective clauses ............................................................ 240
2. Using who in adjective clauses ............................................................ 241
3. Using who and whom in adjective clauses ......................................... 241
4. Using who and whom in adjective clauses ......................................... 242
5. Using who and who(m) in adjective clauses ....................................... 242
6. Using that or Ø in adjective clauses ................................................... 243
7. Using that or Ø in adjective clauses ................................................... 243
8. Using who, who(m), that, or Ø in adjective clauses ........................... 244
9. Who and who(m) vs. which ............................................................... 245
10. Adjective clauses .............................................................................. 245
11. Which and that .................................................................................. 246
12. Using which, that, and Ø in adjective clauses .................................. 246
13. Error analysis: object pronouns in adjective clauses ....................... 247
14. Pronoun usage in adjective clauses .................................................. 247
15. Subject–verb agreement in adjective clauses ..................................... 248
16. Prepositions in adjective clauses ....................................................... 249
17. Prepositions in adjective clauses ....................................................... 250
18. Prepositions in adjective clauses ....................................................... 250
19. Adjective clauses with whose ............................................................ 251
20. Adjective clauses with whose ............................................................ 251
21. Meaning of adjective clauses ............................................................ 252
22. Adjective clauses .............................................................................. 253
23. Adjective clauses .............................................................................. 253
24. Error analysis ................................................................................... 254

Chapter 13 GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES
1. Verb + gerund ................................................................................... 256
2. Go + gerund ...................................................................................... 256
3. Identifying gerunds and infinitives ..................................................... 257
## PRACTICES

1. Gerunds and infinitives .......................................................... 258
2. Verb + gerund vs. infinitive .................................................. 258
3. Verb + gerund or infinitive .................................................. 260
4. Verb + gerund or infinitive .................................................. 261
5. Preposition + gerund ............................................................ 262
6. Preposition + gerund ............................................................ 263
7. Review: gerund vs. infinitive ................................................ 264
8. Review: gerund vs. infinitive ................................................ 265
9. Review: gerund vs. infinitive ................................................ 265
10. By + gerund ....................................................................... 267
11. By + gerund ....................................................................... 268
12. By vs. with .......................................................................... 268
13. Gerund as subject; it + infinitive ......................................... 269
14. Purpose: to vs. for ............................................................... 270
15. Purpose: to vs. for ............................................................... 271
16. Purpose: to vs. for ............................................................... 271
17. (In order) to ....................................................................... 271
18. Too vs. enough .................................................................... 272
19. Too vs. enough .................................................................... 273
20. Gerund vs. infinitive ............................................................. 273
21. Gerund vs. infinitive ............................................................. 274
22. Error analysis ....................................................................... 276

## Chapter 14 NOUN CLAUSES

1. Information questions and noun clauses ............................... 278
2. Noun clauses ........................................................................ 278
3. Information questions and noun clauses ............................... 279
4. Information questions and noun clauses ............................... 279
5. Noun clauses ........................................................................ 281
6. Information questions and noun clauses ............................... 281
7. Noun clauses with who, what, whose + be ............................. 282
8. Noun clauses with who, what, whose + be ............................. 282
9. Noun clauses with who, what, whose + be ............................. 283
10. Noun clauses with who, what, whose + be ......................... 283
11. Noun clauses and yes/no questions ...................................... 284
12. Noun clauses and yes/no questions ...................................... 285
13. Noun clauses ........................................................................ 285
14. Noun clauses ........................................................................ 286
15. That-clauses ........................................................................ 287
16. That-clauses ........................................................................ 288
17. That-clauses ........................................................................ 289
18. That-clauses ........................................................................ 290
19. That-clauses ........................................................................ 290
20. Quoted speech ..................................................................... 291
21. Quoted speech ..................................................................... 291
22. Quoted speech ..................................................................... 292
23. Quoted speech ..................................................................... 293
PRACTICES
24. Reported speech: changing pronouns ................................................. 293
25. Reported speech: changing verbs ...................................................... 294
26. Reported speech ................................................................. 295
27. Reporting questions ......................................................................... 296
28. Quoting questions .............................................................................. 296
29. Reporting questions ........................................................................... 297
30. Reported speech .................................................................................. 298
31. Say vs. tell vs. ask ............................................................................... 299
32. Reported speech .................................................................................. 299
33. Reported speech .................................................................................. 300
34. Reported speech .................................................................................. 300
35. Reported speech .................................................................................. 302
36. Error analysis ....................................................................................... 303

Appendix 1 PHRASAL VERBS
1. Phrasal verbs: separable (Group A) ...................................................... 305
2. Phrasal verbs: separable (Group A) ...................................................... 306
3. Phrasal verbs: nonseparable (Group B) ................................................ 307
4. Phrasal verbs: nonseparable (Group B) ................................................ 308
5. Phrasal verbs: separable (Group C) ...................................................... 308
6. Phrasal verbs: separable (Groups A, B, C) ........................................... 309
7. Phrasal verbs: separable (Group D) ...................................................... 310
8. Phrasal verbs: separable and nonseparable (Groups A, B, C, D) ........... 311
9. Phrasal verbs: separable (Group E) ...................................................... 312
10. Phrasal verbs: separable (Group E) ..................................................... 313
11. Phrasal verbs: intransitive (Group F) ................................................... 314
12. Phrasal verbs: intransitive (Group F) ................................................... 316
13. Phrasal verbs (three-word) (Group G) ................................................ 316
14. Phrasal verbs (three-word) (Group G) ................................................ 317
15. Phrasal verbs (three-word) (Group H) ................................................ 317
16. Phrasal verbs (three-word) (Group H) ................................................ 318
17. Review: phrasal verbs (Appendix 1) .................................................... 319

Appendix 2 PREPOSITION COMBINATIONS
1. Preposition combinations (Group A) .................................................... 321
2. Preposition combinations (Group A) .................................................... 322
3. Preposition combinations (Group B) .................................................... 322
4. Preposition combinations (Group B) .................................................... 323
5. Preposition combinations (Group C) .................................................... 323
6. Review: preposition combinations (Groups A and C) ............................ 324
7. Preposition combinations (Group D) .................................................... 325
8. Preposition combinations (Groups B and D) ......................................... 326
9. Preposition combinations (Group E) .................................................... 326
10. Preposition combinations (Group E) .................................................... 327
11. Preposition combinations (Group F) .................................................... 327
12. Preposition combinations (Group F) .................................................... 328
This ESL/EFL Workbook is a place for students to explore and practice English grammar on their own. It is a place where they can test and fine-tune their understandings of English structures and improve their abilities to use English meaningfully and correctly.

It is keyed to the explanatory grammar charts found in Fundamentals of English Grammar, Third Edition, a classroom teaching text for students of English as a second or foreign language, as well as in the accompanying Chartbook, a reference grammar with no exercises.

The Workbook is designed not only for students who desire the opportunity for independent study of English grammar but also as a resource for teachers who need exercise material for additional classwork, homework, testing, or individualized instruction.

The answers to ALL of the practices are given in the back of the book in an Answer Key. The Answer Key is on perforated pages so that it can be detached to construct a separate booklet. If teachers desire to use the Workbook as a classroom teaching text, the Answer Key can be removed at the beginning of the term.

A note on changes from the previous edition: The Workbook that accompanied the previous edition of Fundamentals of English Grammar had both self-study (answers given) and guided study (no answers given) practices. This Workbook has only self-study practices. The guided study practices that involved communicative, interactive, and/or task-based activities are now in the main teaching text, and other guided study practices from the previous edition have been adapted to a self-study format in this edition. A good portion of the material in this edition of the FEG Workbook is newly created.
PRACTICE 1. Interview questions and answers.

Directions: Complete the sentences with appropriate words.

SPEAKER A: Hi. My name is Kunio.

SPEAKER B: Hi. My name is Maria. I am glad to meet you.

KUNIO: I am glad to meet you, too. Where are you from?

MARIA: I am from Mexico. Where are you from?

KUNIO: I am from Japan.

MARIA: Where are you living now?

KUNIO: On Fifth Avenue in an apartment. And you?

MARIA: I am living in a dorm.

KUNIO: What are you studying?

MARIA: Business. After I study English, I am going to attend the School of Business Administration. How about you? What is your major?

KUNIO: Engineering.

MARIA: What do you like to do in your free time?

KUNIO: I read a lot. How do you?

MARIA: I like to get on the Internet.

KUNIO: Really? What do you do when you’re online?

MARIA: I visit many different Web sites. It is a good way to practice my English.

KUNIO: That’s interesting. I have to get on the Internet, too.

MARIA: I have to spell your full name on the board when I introduce you to the class. How do you spell your name?


MARIA: Kunio Akiwa. That is right?

KUNIO: Yes, it is. And what is your name again?

MARIA: My first name is Maria. M-A-R-I-A. My last name is Lopez.

KUNIO: Thanks. It’s been nice talking to you.

MARIA: I enjoyed it, too.
PRACTICE 2. Present verbs. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)

Directions: Use the given verb to complete each sentence that follows. Use the simple present or the present progressive.

1. sit  I ____________ at my desk right now.
2. read I _______________ the second sentence in this exercise.
3. look I _______________ at sentence 3 now.
4. write Now I _______________ the right completion for this sentence.
5. do I _______________ a grammar exercise.
6. sit I usually _______________ at my desk when I do my homework. And right now I _______________ at my desk to do this exercise.
7. read I often _______________ the newspaper, but right now I _______________ a sentence in my grammar workbook.
8. look I _______________ at the newspaper every day. But right now I _______________ at my grammar workbook.
9. write When I do exercises in this workbook, I _______________ the answers in my book and then I check them in the Answer Key.* Right now I _______________ an answer in the book.
10. do I _______________ grammar exercises every day. Right now I _______________ Practice 2 in this workbook.

PRACTICE 3. Forms of the simple present. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)

Directions: Review the basic forms of the simple present tense by completing the sentences with the correct form of the verb speak.

PART I: STATEMENT FORMS
1. I (speak) _______________ English.
2. They (speak) _______________ English.
3. He (speak) _______________ English.
4. You (speak) _______________ English.
5. She (speak) _______________ English.

PART II: NEGATIVE FORMS
6. I (speak, not) _______________ your language.
7. They (speak, not) _______________ English.
8. She (speak, not) _______________ English.
9. You (speak, not) _______________ English.
10. He (speak, not) _______________ English.

*The Answer Key to these practices is in the back of this book.
PART III: QUESTION FORMS

11. (you, speak) _______ Do you speak _______ English right now?
12. (he, speak) _______ English right now?
13. (they, speak) _______ English right now?
14. (we, speak) _______ English right now?
15. (she, speak) _______ English right now?

PART III: QUESTION FORMS

11. (you, speak) _______ Do you speak _______ English right now?
12. (he, speak) _______ English right now?
13. (they, speak) _______ English right now?
14. (we, speak) _______ English right now?
15. (she, speak) _______ English right now?

PART III: QUESTION FORMS

11. (you, speak) _______ Do you speak _______ English right now?
12. (he, speak) _______ English right now?
13. (they, speak) _______ English right now?
14. (we, speak) _______ English right now?
15. (she, speak) _______ English right now?
7. _____________ tired?
8. _____________ study every day?
9. _____________ need help with his homework?
10. _____________ studying right now?

◊ PRACTICE 6. Present verbs: questions. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)
Directions: Complete the questions with Does she or Is she.

1. _____________ at work?
2. _____________ work five days a week?
3. _____________ working right now?
4. _____________ sitting at her desk?
5. _____________ come to the office every day?
6. _____________ like her job?
7. _____________ on the phone?
8. _____________ in a meeting?
9. _____________ work overtime often?
10. _____________ working overtime now?

◊ PRACTICE 7. Simple present. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)
Directions: Complete the sentences with do, does, or Ø.*

1. Jack _____________ not work at his father's store.
2. _____________ you have a job?
3. Kate _____________ works at a restaurant.
4. _____________ she work the day shift or night shift?
5. Denise and Scott _____________ own a small company that does home repairs.
6. They _____________ have different job skills.
7. They _____________ not do the same work.
8. Denise _____________ enjoys painting, and Scott _____________ prefers woodworking.
9. Scott _____________ not like painting very much.
10. They _____________ get along well with each other.
11. _____________ they plan to work together for a long time? Yes. They're married.

*Ø = "nothing."
PRACTICE 8. Simple present and present progressive. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with does, do, am, is, are, or Ø.

A: What ______ is ______ that? What ________ ________ you looking at?

B: It ________ a very rare and valuable book.

A: ________ it yours?

B: No. It ________ not belong to me. It ________ belongs to my cousin.

He ________ collects old books.

A: That ________ an interesting hobby. ________ you a collector, too?

_______ you collect old books?

B: I ________ have the interest but not the money. Rare old books ________ expensive to collect. I ________ becoming interested in stamps, though. Stamps ________ not as expensive as rare books. I ________ want to collect stamps from the 1800s.

A: I ________ thinking about collecting stamps, too. ________ you want to get together sometime and talk about it?

B: Yes. Let’s do that.

PRACTICE 9. Simple present. (Charts 1-1 and 1-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with does, do, is, are, or Ø.

1. A turtle ________ lays eggs.

2. ________ snakes lay eggs?

3. ________ an alligator lay eggs?

4. ________ an alligator a reptile?

5. ________ turtles and snakes reptiles?

6. Turtles, snakes, and alligators ________ all reptiles.

7. Almost all reptiles ________ lay eggs.

8. Reptiles ________ cold-blooded.

9. They ________ prefer warm climates.

10. Their body temperature ________ the same as the temperature of their surroundings.

11. ________ reptiles like to lie in the sun? Yes, they do.
Directions: Complete the sentences with *does, do, is, are,* or Ø.

1. A mosquito ________ flying around Sam’s head.
2. Mosquitoes ________ pests.
3. They ________ bother people and animals.
4. ________ a male mosquito bite?
5. No, male mosquitoes ________ not bite.
6. Only female mosquitoes ________ bite animals and people.

7. A female mosquito ________ lays 1000 to 3000 eggs each year.
8. How long ________ mosquitoes live?
9. A female mosquito ________ lives for 30 days.
10. A male mosquito ________ not live as long as a female.
11. How long ________ a male mosquito live?
12. It ________ dies after 10 or 20 days.
13. Beverly ________
   wearing mosquito repellent.

14. The mosquito repellent ________ smells bad, but it ________ works.
15. The mosquito repellent ________ effective.
16. Mosquitoes ________ stay away from people who ________ wearing mosquito repellent.

17. ________ you ever wear mosquito repellent?
18. ________ mosquito repellent work?
PRACTICE 11. Frequency adverbs. (Chart 1-3)

Directions: Add the word in italics to the sentences. Put the word in its usual midsentence position. Write Ø if no word is needed in a blank.

1. usually Ann _______ usually _____ stays _____ at night.
2. usually Ann _____ Ø _______ is _____ usually _____ at home at night.
3. always Bob _______ stays _______ home in the evening.
4. always He _______ is _______ at his desk in the evening.
5. usually He _______ doesn’t _______ go out in the evenings.
6. always But he _______ doesn’t _______ study every evening.
7. sometimes He _______ watches _______ a little TV.
8. never He _______ stays _______ up past midnight.
9. never He _______ is _______ up past midnight.
10. usually Does _______ Ann _______ study _______ at night?
11. always Does _______ Bob _______ study _______ at night?
12. always Is _______ Bob _______ at home at night?

PRACTICE 12. Frequency adverbs. (Chart 1-3)

Directions: Add the given words to the sentence. Put the adverbs in their usual midsentence position. Change the verb from negative to affirmative (i.e. statement form) as necessary.

1. Sentence: Jane doesn’t come to class on time.
   a. usually Jane _____ usually doesn’t come _______ to class on time.
   b. ever Jane _____ doesn’t ever come _______ to class on time.
   c. seldom Jane _____ seldom comes _______ to class on time.
   d. sometimes Jane _______ to class on time.
   e. always Jane _______ to class on time.
   f. occasionally Jane _______ to class on time.
   g. never Jane _______ to class on time.
   h. hardly ever Jane _______ to class on time.

2. Sentence: Jane isn’t on time for class.
   a. usually Jane _____ usually isn’t _______ on time for class.
   b. rarely Jane _______ on time for class.
   c. always Jane _______ on time for class.
   d. frequently Jane _______ on time for class.
   e. never Jane _______ on time for class.
   f. ever Jane _______ on time for class.
   g. seldom Jane _______ on time for class.
PRACTICE 13. Frequency adverbs. (Chart 1-3)

Directions: Use the given information to complete the sentences. Use a frequency adverb for each sentence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kim’s Day</th>
<th>S</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>Th</th>
<th>F</th>
<th>S</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. wake up late</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. skip breakfast</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. visit friends</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. be on time for class</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. surf the Internet</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. talk on the phone</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. do homework</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. be in bed early</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Kim ________ always wakes ________ up late.
2. She __________________ breakfast.
3. She __________________ friends.
4. She __________________ on time for class.
5. She __________________ the Internet.
6. She __________________ on the phone.
7. She __________________ homework.
8. She __________________ in bed early.

PRACTICE 14. Frequency adverbs. (Chart 1-3)

Directions: Complete each sentence with an appropriate frequency adverb from the list.

always    often OR usually    sometimes
never     seldom OR rarely

1. I watch TV in the evening five or six times a week.
   → I ________ often OR usually ________ watch TV in the evening.
2. I let my roommate borrow my car only one time last year.
   → I ________ seldom OR rarely ________ let my roommate borrow my car.
3. Maria eats cereal for breakfast seven days a week.
   → Maria ________ always ________ eats cereal for breakfast.
4. Four out of five visitors to the museum stay for three hours or longer.
   → Museum visitors __________ stay for at least three hours.

5. We occasionally have quizzes in Dr. Rice's history class.
   → Dr. Rice ________________ gives quizzes in her history class.

6. If the teacher is on time, the class begins at 8:00 A.M. Once in a while, the teacher is a few minutes late.
   → The class ________________ begins at 8:00 A.M.

7. The train from Chicago has been late ninety percent of the time.
   → The train from Chicago is ________________ on time.

8. In the desert, it rains only two or three days between May and September every year.
   → It ________________ rains in the desert in the summer.

9. James asks me to go to the sailboat races every year, but I don't accept his invitation because I think sailboat racing is boring.
   → I ________________ go to sailboat races with James.

10. Every time I go to a movie, I buy popcorn.
    → I ________________ buy popcorn when I go to a movie.

11. Andy and Jake work in the same office and are friends. They go to lunch together four or five times a week.
    → Andy and Jake ________________ go out to lunch with each other.

12. Most of the time Andy and Jake don't discuss business when they go to lunch with each other.
    → They ________________ discuss business during lunch.

◊ PRACTICE 15. Frequency adverbs. (Chart 1-3)
   Directions: Complete each sentence with an appropriate frequency adverb from the list and the simple present of the given verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>always</th>
<th>often OR usually</th>
<th>sometimes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>never</td>
<td>seldom OR rarely</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Every time Pat rents a video, she chooses a comedy.
   → Pat (choose) __________ always chooses __________ a comedy to rent.

2. I almost always watch soccer matches on TV. I go to a soccer match only once a year.
   → I (go) __________ to a soccer match.

3. I take the bus to work once a week or once every two weeks.
   → I usually carpool to work, but I (ride) __________ the bus.
4. The doctor told Mari to exercise four times a week, but she works long hours and exercises only a couple of times a month.
   → Mari (exercise) ____________________________.

5. My roommate eats only vegetarian food, and I like beef and chicken. We always cook separate meals.
   → I (eat) ____________________________ my roommate’s meals.

6. The little boy in the street is begging for food. He comes from a poor family and never gets enough to eat.
   → The little boy (be) ____________________________ hungry.

7. On most Sundays, my family gets together for a big dinner.
   → My family (get) ____________________________ together for a big dinner on Sundays.

8. Usually Jane can get right to work on her computer when she turns it on, but every once in a while she gets an error message.
   → Jane (get) ____________________________ an error message when she turns on her computer.

9. Peter tries to finish his homework before he goes to bed, but he usually falls asleep.
   → Peter (finish) ____________________________ his homework before he falls asleep and decides to go to bed.

10. My friends like to play video games, but I don’t join them because the games are too violent.
    → I (play) ____________________________ video games with my friends.

11. Jenny’s job starts at 8:00. Most days of the week, Jenny arrives around 7:30.
    → Jenny (arrive) ____________________________ at work early.

12. I like to relax every night by taking a long, hot bath.
    → I (take) ____________________________ a long, hot bath in the evening.

◇ PRACTICE 16. Simple present: final -s/-es. (Charts 1-4 and 1-5)

Directions: Write -s/-es in the blanks where necessary. If the verb does not need -s/-es, use Ø. Change -y to -i if necessary.

1. Alan like s _____ to play soccer.
2. My son watch es _____ too much TV.
3. Rita do es _____ n’t like Ø coffee.
4. Monkeys climb Ø trees.
5. Do _____ you like _____ to climb trees?
6. Do _____ Paul like _____ to cook?
7. Paula like _____ to dance.
8. Mike wash _____ his own clothes.
9. Yuki go _____ to school at seven.
10. Tina get _____ her work done on time.
11. Tina and Pat get _____ their work done.
12. Do _____ Bill get _____ his work done?
13. Eric do _____ n’t get it done on time.
14. Ahmed carry _____ a briefcase to work.
15. Janet play _____ tennis every day.
16. A turtle is another animal that live _____ near water.
17. Bees make ______ honey.
18. A bee visit ______ many flowers in one day.
19. A frog catch ______ flies with its tongue.
20. Frogs are small green animals that live ______ near water.

◊ PRACTICE 17. Simple present: final -S/-ES. (Charts 1-4 and 1-5)
Directions: Read the paragraph. Then complete the paragraph about Sam’s day using he in place of I. You will need to change the verbs.

SAM’S DAY:
I leave my apartment at 8:00 every morning. I walk to the bus stop and catch the 8:10 bus. It takes me downtown. Then I transfer to another bus, and it takes me to my part-time job. I arrive at work at 8:50. I stay until 1:00, and then I leave for school. I attend classes until 5:00. I usually study in the library and try to finish my homework. Then I go home around 8:00. I have a long day.

Sam ______ leaves ______ his apartment at 8:00. ______ He walks ______ to the bus stop and ______ the 8:10 bus. It takes him downtown. Then ______ another bus, and it takes him to his part-time job. ______ at work at 8:50. ______ until 1:00, and then ______ for school. ______ classes until 5:00. ______ usually ______ in the library and ______ to finish his homework. Then ______ home around 8:00. ______ a long day.

◊ PRACTICE 18. Pronunciation: final -S/-ES. (Charts 1-5 and 6-1*)
Directions: Put the verbs under the correct endings for pronunciation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-cooks</th>
<th>stays</th>
<th>hates</th>
<th>misses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/s/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invites</td>
<td>seems</td>
<td>travels</td>
<td>draws</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/z/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>promises</td>
<td>watches</td>
<td>picks</td>
<td>introduces</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*See Chart 6-1, p. 157, in the Student Book for information about the pronunciation and spelling of final -s/-es.
**PRACTICE 19. Pronunciation: final -S/-ES.** (Charts 1-5 and 6-1)
*Directions:* Provide the pronunciation for the verb ending: /s/, /z/, or /əz/.

<p>| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>he need/</td>
<td>ə</td>
<td></td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>she take/</td>
<td>s</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>the bus pass/</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>John love/</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Pam listen/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>she add/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7.</td>
<td>he dress/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>8.</td>
<td>it fit/</td>
<td></td>
<td>9.</td>
<td>the teacher enjoy/</td>
<td></td>
<td>10.</td>
<td>the baby kiss/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>she realize/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12.</td>
<td>her dad spend/</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>13.</td>
<td>she think/</td>
<td></td>
<td>14.</td>
<td>he wonder/</td>
<td></td>
<td>15.</td>
<td>my manager suggest/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRACTICE 20. Spelling: final -S/-ING.** (Charts 1-4, 1-5, and 2-5)
*Directions:* Fill in the blanks with the simple present and present progressive forms of the verbs.

<p>| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>buy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>come</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>open</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>begin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>stop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>die</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>rain</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>dream</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>write</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>try</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>stay</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>hope</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>lie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>fly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRACTICE 21. Non-action verbs.** (Chart 1-5)
*Directions:* Choose the correct sentence.

1. (a) We want to have an answer.
   b. We are wanting to have an answer.

2. a. The students think their grammar class is challenging.
   b. The students are thinking their grammar class is challenging.

3. a. Look! An eagle is flying overhead.
   b. Look! An eagle flies overhead.

4. a. The eagle is over there! Are you seeing it?
   b. The eagle is over there! Do you see it?

5. a. Now I believe my English is better.
   b. Now I am believing my English is better.

6. a. I'm doing this exercise now.
   b. I do this exercise now.

7. a. My parents are owning two cars at this time.
   b. My parents own two cars at this time.

8. a. This is fun. I am having a good time.
   b. This is fun. I have a good time.
9. a. We are having a new computer now.
   b. We have a new computer now.
10. a. I'm not knowing the answer to your question right now, but I'll find out.
    b. I don't know the answer to your question right now, but I'll find out.
11. a. My family is preferring chicken to red meat.
    b. My family prefers chicken to red meat.
12. a. I need to borrow some money.
    b. I am needing to borrow some money.

◊ PRACTICE 22. Simple present and present progressive. (Charts 1-1 → 1-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple present or present progressive form of the verbs in the list. Each verb is used only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>belong</th>
<th>need</th>
<th>see</th>
<th>take</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>shine</td>
<td>understand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td>prefer</td>
<td>sing</td>
<td>watch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>look</td>
<td>rain</td>
<td>snow</td>
<td>write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Look outside! It **is snowing**. Everything is beautiful and all white.

2. My father **takes** the 8:15 train into the city every weekday morning.

3. On Tuesdays and Thursdays, I walk to work for the exercise. Every Monday, Wednesday, and Friday, I **drive** my car to work.

4. A: Charlie, can’t you hear the telephone? Answer it!
   B: You get it! I **am watching** my favorite TV show. I don’t want to miss anything.

5. A: What kind of tea do you like?
   B: Well, I’m drinking black tea, but I **prefer** green tea.

6. I’m gaining weight around my waist. These pants are too tight. I **need** a larger pair of pants.

   B: Where are they?
   A: They **are playing** a game outside in the street.

8. It’s night. There’s no moon. Emily is outside. She **is looking** at the sky. She **sees** more stars than she can count.

9. Michael has a good voice. Sometimes he **sings** with a musical group in town. It’s a good way to earn a little extra money.
10. A: Ouch!  
   B: What’s the matter?  
   A: Every time I eat too fast, I ______________________ my tongue.

11. Nadia always ______________________ in her diary before bed.

12. Thank you for your help in algebra. Now I ______________________ that lesson.

13. This magazine is not mine. It ______________________ to Colette.

14. I can see a rainbow because the sun ______________________ and it ______________________ at the same time.

◊ PRACTICE 23. Simple present and present progressive. (Charts 1-1 → 1-6)  
Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple present or present progressive form of the verb.

Rosa is sitting on the train right now. She ______________________ usually doesn’t take the train, but today her son ______________________ her car. She ______________________ the ride today. There ______________________ so many people to watch. Some people ______________________ breakfast. Others ______________________ coffee and ______________________ the newspaper. One woman ______________________ on her laptop computer. Another ______________________ her baby. Two teenagers ______________________ computer games. One of them ______________________ his hand in excitement. A clown ______________________ up and down the aisles and ______________________ the children. Rosa ______________________ . The train ride ______________________ her longer than driving, but it ______________________ a more enjoyable way for her to travel.
PRACTICE 24. Error analysis. (Charts 1-1 → 1-6)

Directions: Correct the sentences.

doesn’t
1. My friend doesn’t speak English well.

2. I am not believing you.

3. My sister’s dog no bark.

4. Our teacher is always starting class on time.

5. Look! The cat gets up on the counter.

6. Is Marie has enough money?

7. We are not liking this rainy weather.

8. Mrs. Gray is worry about her daughter.

9. My brother no has enough free time.

10. Is Jim drive to school every day?

11. He always hurrys in the morning. He no wanting to be late.

12. Anna have usually dinner at eight.

PRACTICE 25. Present verbs: questions and short answers. (Chart 1-7)

Directions: Complete the questions with do, does, am, is, or are. Then complete both the affirmative and negative short answers.

1. A: ________ Are ________ you leaving now?
   B: Yes, ________ I am ________ . OR No, ________ I’m not ________ .

2. A: ________ Do ________ your neighbors know that you are a police officer?
   B: Yes, ________ they do ________ . OR No, ________ they don’t ________ .

3. A: ________ do ________ you follow the same routine every morning?
   B: Yes, ________ . OR No, ________ .

4. A: ________ do ________ Dr. Jarvis know the name of her new assistant yet?
   B: Yes, ________ . OR No, ________ .

5. A: ________ do ________ Paul and Beth studying the problem?
   B: Yes, ________ . OR No, ________ .
6. A: ____________ you understand the problem?
   B: Yes, ______________. OR No, ______________.

7. A: ______________ Mike reading the paper and watching television at the same time?
   B: Yes, ______________. OR No, ______________.

8. A: ______________ you listening to me?
   B: Yes, ______________. OR No, ______________.

9. A: ______________ the building safe?
   B: Yes, ______________. OR No, ______________.

10. A: ______________ you and your co-workers get together outside of work?
    B: Yes, ______________. OR No, ______________.

◊ PRACTICE 26. Review: present verbs. (Charts 1-1 → 1-7)

Directions: Use either the simple present or the present progressive of the verbs in parentheses to complete the sentences.

1. A: Hi! What (you, do) ___are you doing___?
   B: I (watch) _________________ an exercise video. I (want) _________________
   to lose a little weight before my vacation.

   A: I really (enjoy) _________________ exercising. I (go) _________________ to
   an aerobics class three times a week. It (be) _________________ really fun. I also
   (run) _________________ every morning before school.

   B: Stop! You (make) _________________ me feel bad!

2. A: I like to read. How about you? (you, read) _________________ a lot?
   B: Yes, I _________________ . I (read) _________________ at least one novel
   every week, and I (subscribe) _________________ to several magazines. And I
   (look, always) _________________ at the newspaper during breakfast.

3. Before you begin to study, you should ask yourself two questions. First, “Why (I, study)
   _________________ this subject right now?” Second, “What (I, want) _________________
   to learn about this topic?” Students (need) _________________ to understand the purpose of their study.

4. A: I (leave) _________________ now. (you, want) _________________ to go
   with me into town?
   B: No, thanks. I can’t. I (wait) _________________ for my sister to call.
5. A: Shhh.
   B: Why? (the baby, sleep) ____________________________?
   A: Uh-huh. She (take) __________________ her afternoon nap.
   B: Okay, I'll talk softly. I (want, not) __________________ to wake her up.

6. Ann is a painter. She (go) __________________ to the opening of every new art show in the city. She (like) __________________ to see the latest work of other artists. Right now she (prepare) __________________ for a show of her new paintings next month.

7. It (be) __________________ a cool autumn day today. The wind (blow) _______________ and the leaves (fall) __________________ to the ground.

8. My roommate (eat) __________________ breakfast at exactly seven o'clock every morning. I usually (eat, not) __________________ breakfast at all. What time (you, eat) __________________ in the morning?

9. A: (you, shop) __________________ at this store every week?
   B: No, I _________________. I (shop, usually) __________________ at the store near my apartment.
   A: Why (you, shop) __________________ here now?
   B: I (try) _________________ to find something special for my father's birthday dinner.

10. In cold climates, many trees (lose) __________________ their leaves in winter. They (rest) __________________ for several months. Then they (grow) __________________ new leaves and flowers in the spring. Some trees (keep) __________________ their leaves during the winter and (stay) __________________ green all year long. In some regions of the earth, trees (grow, not) __________________ at all. For example, some desert areas (have, not) __________________ any trees. The largest area of the world without trees (be) __________________ Antarctica. No trees (grow) __________________ in Antarctica.
CHAPTER 2
Past Time

*PRACTICE 1. Simple past. (Charts 2-1 → 2-7)

*Directions:* Change the sentences to past time. Use simple past verbs and *yesterday* or *last.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>PAST</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>every day</td>
<td>yesterday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every morning</td>
<td>yesterday morning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every afternoon</td>
<td>yesterday afternoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every night</td>
<td>last night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every week</td>
<td>last week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every Monday, Tuesday, etc.</td>
<td>last Monday, Tuesday, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every month</td>
<td>last month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>every year</td>
<td>last year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I walk to my office **every morning.**
   → I ___ walked ___ to my office ___ yesterday ___ morning.

2. I talk to my parents on the phone **every week.**
   → I ___ talked ___ to my parents on the phone ___ last ___ week.

3. The post office opens at eight o'clock **every morning.**
   → The post office ___ at eight o'clock ___ morning.

4. Mrs. Hall goes to the fruit market **every Monday.**
   → Mrs. Hall ___ to the fresh fruit market ___ Monday.

5. The company managers meet at nine o'clock **every Friday morning.**
   → The executives ___ at nine o'clock ___ Friday morning.

6. I make my own lunch and take it to work with me **every morning.**
   → ___ morning, I ___ my own lunch and ___ it to work with me.
7. Mr. Clark pays his rent on time every month.

→ Mr. Clark __________________ his rent on time __________________ month.

8. The baby falls asleep at three o’clock every afternoon.

→ __________________ afternoon, the baby __________________ asleep at three o’clock.

9. The last bus to downtown leaves at ten o’clock every night.

→ The last bus to downtown __________________ at ten o’clock __________________ night.

◊ PRACTICE 2. Simple past: regular and irregular verbs. (Charts 2-2 and 2-7)

Directions: Write the simple past form of the given verbs.

1. start __________________ 16. bring __________________
2. go __________________ 17. break __________________
3. see __________________ 18. eat __________________
4. stand __________________ 19. watch __________________
5. arrive __________________ 20. build __________________
6. win __________________ 21. take __________________
7. have __________________ 22. pay __________________
8. make __________________ 23. leave __________________
9. finish __________________ 24. wear __________________
10. feel __________________ 25. open __________________
11. fall __________________ 26. decide __________________
12. hear __________________ 27. plan __________________
13. sing __________________ 28. write __________________
14. explore __________________ 29. teach __________________
15. ask __________________ 30. hold __________________

◊ PRACTICE 3. Simple past forms. (Charts 2-1 → 2-3)

Directions: Use the given words to create questions and answers.

1. you/answer

A: The teacher asked a question. Did you answer it?

B: Yes, I did __________________. I answered __________________ it. OR

   No, I didn’t __________________. I didn’t answer __________________ it.
2. *he/see*
   A: Tom went to the celebration. _________________ the fireworks?
   B: Yes, _________________. _________________ the fireworks. OR
       No, _________________. _________________ the fireworks.

3. *they/watch*
   A: The game was on TV. _________________ it?
   B: Yes, _________________. _________________ the game. OR
       No, _________________. _________________ the game.

4. *you/understand*
   A: You went to a lecture. _________________ it?
   B: Yes, _________________. _________________ the lecture. OR
       No, _________________. _________________ the lecture.

5. *you/be*
   A: ________________ at home last night?
   B: Yes, _________________. ________________ at home last night. OR
       No, _________________. ________________ at home last night.

◊ **PRACTICE 4. Present and past negatives.** (Chapter 1 and Charts 2-1 → 2-3)
   Directions: The sentences in quotation marks contain incorrect information. Complete the unfinished sentences by using correct information: first in a negative sentence, then in an affirmative sentence.

1. “You flew to school yesterday.”
   No, I ____________ to school yesterday. I _____________.

2. “Lemons are sweet.”
   No, lemons ____________ sweet. They _____________.

   No, astronauts ____________ on Mars in 1969. They _____________.

4. “You were a baby in the year 2000.”

5. “Buddha came from China.”
   No, Buddha ____________ from China. Buddha ____________ from Nepal.
6. “Coffee comes from cocoa beans.”
   No, coffee __________________ from cocoa beans. It __________________ .

7. “You slept outdoors last night.”
   No, I __________________ outdoors last night. I __________________ .

8. “Ice is hot.”
   No, ice __________________ hot. It __________________ .

9. “Dinosaurs disappeared a hundred years ago.”
   No, dinosaurs __________________ a hundred years ago.
   They __________________ ago.

◇ PRACTICE 5. Simple past: questions. (Charts 2-2 and 2-3)
   Directions: Write past tense questions using the italicized words and did, was, or were.

   1. he/study  ___________________________ did he study yesterday?
   2. he/sick  ___________________________ was he sick yesterday?
   3. she/sad  ___________________________ was she sad yesterday?
   4. they/eat  ___________________________ did they eat yesterday?
   5. they/hungry  ___________________________ did they get hungry yesterday?
   6. you/go  ___________________________ did you go yesterday?
   7. she/understand  ___________________________ did she understand yesterday?
   8. he/forget  ___________________________ did he forget yesterday?

◇ PRACTICE 6. Simple past: questions. (Charts 2-2 and 2-3)
   Directions: You took your driver’s test yesterday. A friend is asking you questions about it. Fill in the blanks with did, was, or were.

   1. Did you pass your driver’s test yesterday?
   2. ___________________________ you nervous?
   3. ___________________________ your hands shake?
   4. ___________________________ you practice a lot for it?
   5. ___________________________ the license examiner friendly?
   6. ___________________________ you make any silly mistakes?
   7. ___________________________ the car easy to drive?
   8. ___________________________ you go on an easy route?
Directions: Complete the sentences by using the simple past of the verbs below. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>call</th>
<th>hold</th>
<th>sell</th>
<th>swim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>jump</td>
<td>shake</td>
<td>teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>ride</td>
<td>stay</td>
<td>think</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Paul shook the soft drink so hard that it sprayed all over his clothes.

2. Carol didn’t want to go on vacation with us, so she stayed home alone all week.


4. I was terrified just standing over the pool on the high diving board. Finally, I took a deep breath, held my nose, and jumped into the water.

5. The climber, who was fearful of falling, held the rope tightly in both hands.

6. Johnny pushed Alan down on the floor, and the two boys stayed for a few minutes. Neither boy was hurt.

7. Before Louise started her own company, she taught chemistry at the university.

8. It was extremely cold last night, and the water we put out for the cat froze solid.

9. Before I made my decision, I thought about it for a long, long time.

10. Carlos visited your house three times to ask you to go to the movie with us, but there was no answer, so we went without you.

11. My car wouldn’t start this morning, so I rode my bicycle to work.

12. I needed money to pay my tuition at the university, so I sold my motorcycle to my cousin.
PRACTICE 8. Regular verbs: pronunciation of -ED endings. (Chart 2-4)

Directions: Practice pronouncing final -ed by saying the words in the list aloud.

1. stopped = stop/t/
2. robbed = rob/d/
3. wanted = want/æd/
4. talked = talk/t/
5. lived = live/d/
6. needed = need/æd/
7. passed = pass/t/*
8. pushed = push/t/
9. watched = watch/t/
10. thanked = thank/t/
11. finished = finish/t/
12. seem = seem/d/
13. killed = kill/d/
14. turned = turn/d/
15. played = play/d/
16. continued = continue/d/
17. repeated = repeat/æd/
18. waited = wait/æd/
19. added = add/æd/
20. decide = decide/æd/

PRACTICE 9. Regular verbs: pronunciation of -ED endings. (Chart 2-4)

Directions: Write the correct pronunciation. Then practice pronouncing final -ed by saying the words in the list aloud.

1. talked = talk/ t/ 11. continued = continue/ /
2. lived = live/ æ/ 12. watched = watch/ /
3. waited = wait/ ææ/ 13. passed = pass/ /
4. played = play/ / 14. decide = decide/ /
5. added = add/ / 15. stopped = stop/ /
6. needed = need/ / 16. turned = turn/ /
7. killed = kill/ / 17. thanked = thank/ /
8. finished = finish/ / 18. wanted = want/ /
9. seemed = seem/ / 19. robbed = rob/ /
10. repeated = repeat/ / 20. pushed = push/ /

PRACTICE 10. Spelling and pronunciation of -ED endings. (Charts 2-4 and 2-5)

Directions: Add -ed to each verb. When necessary, add or change letters to correct the spelling. Then circle the correct pronunciation of -ed for the given verb.

1. walk ed  æ/ /d/ /æd/ 9. open  æ/ /d/ /æd/
2. pat ted  æ/ /d/ /æd/ 10. hurry  æ/ /d/ /æd/
3. worry ed  æ/ /d/ /æd/ 11. rent  æ/ /d/ /æd/
4. stay  æ/ /d/ /æd/ 12. try  æ/ /d/ /æd/
5. visit  æ/ /d/ /æd/ 13. enjoy  æ/ /d/ /æd/
6. die  æ/ /d/ /æd/ 14. stop  æ/ /d/ /æd/
7. trade  æ/ /d/ /æd/ 15. need  æ/ /d/ /æd/
8. plan  æ/ /d/ /æd/

*The words “passed” and “past” have the same pronunciation.
PRACTICE 11. Regular verbs: pronunciation of -ED endings. (Chart 2-4)

Directions: Practice pronouncing final -ed by reading the sentences aloud.

1. I **watched** TV. Jean **listened** to the radio. Nick **waited** for the mail.
   - watch/t/  listen/d/  wait/ad/

2. I **tasted** the soup. It **seemed** too salty.
   - taste/ad/  seem/d/

3. James **planned** for his future. He **saved** money and **started** his own business.
   - plan/d/  save/d/  start/ad/

4. I **asked** a question. Joe **answered** it. Then he **repeated** the answer for Ted.
   - ask/t/  answer/d/  repeat/ad/

5. I **stared** at the sculpture for a long time. Finally, I **touched** it.
   - stare/d/  touch/t/

6. Mary **prepared** a long report for her boss. She **completed** it late last night.
   - prepare/d/  complete/ad/

7. After Dick **parked** the car, I **jumped** out and **opened** the door for my mother.
   - park/t/  jump/t/  open/d/

8. After I **finished** reading Rod’s poem, I **called** him and we **talked** for an hour.
   - finish/t/  call/d/  talk/t/

9. Earlier today, I **cleaned** my apartment.
   - clean/d/

10. I **washed** the windows, **waxed** the wood floor, and **vacuumed** the carpet.
    - wash/t/  wax/t/  vacuum/d/

11. I **crossed** my fingers and **hoped** for good news.
    - cross/t/  hope/t/

PRACTICE 12. Spelling of -ING and -ED forms. (Chart 2-5)

Directions: Complete the chart. Refer to Chart 2-5 if necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>END OF VERB</th>
<th>DOUBLE THE CONSONANT?</th>
<th>SIMPLE FORM</th>
<th>-ING</th>
<th>-ED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-e</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>excite</td>
<td>exciting</td>
<td>excited</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two Consonants</td>
<td></td>
<td>exist</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two Vowels + One Consonant</td>
<td></td>
<td>shout</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One Vowel + One Consonant</td>
<td>ONE-SYLLABLE VERBS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TWO-SYLLABLE VERBS (STRESS ON FIRST SYLLABLE)</td>
<td>visit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TWO-SYLLABLE VERBS (STRESS ON SECOND SYLLABLE)</td>
<td>admit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y</td>
<td></td>
<td>pray</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ie</td>
<td></td>
<td>tie</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**PRACTICE 13. Spelling of -ING. (Chart 2-5)**

*Directions: Add -ing to the verbs and write them in the correct columns.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. hit</th>
<th>4. take</th>
<th>7. learn</th>
<th>10. smile</th>
<th>13. begin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. come</td>
<td>5. hop</td>
<td>8. listen</td>
<td>11. stay</td>
<td>14. win</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. cut</td>
<td>6. hope</td>
<td>9. rain</td>
<td>12. study</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Double the consonant.</th>
<th>Drop the -e.</th>
<th>Just add -ing.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(stop → stopping)</td>
<td>(live → living)</td>
<td>(visit → visiting)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hitting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRACTICE 14. Spelling of -ING and -ED. (Chart 2-5)**

*Directions: Spell the -ing and -ed forms of the verbs. (The simple past/past participle of irregular verbs is given in parentheses.)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-ING</th>
<th>-ED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ride</td>
<td>riding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. start</td>
<td>starting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. come</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. happen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. try</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. buy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. hope</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. keep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. tip</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. fail</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. fill</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. feel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. dine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. mean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. win</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. learn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. listen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. begin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRACTICE 15. Spelling of -ING. (Chart 2-5)

Directions: Write one “t” or two “t”s in the blanks to spell the -ING verb form correctly. Then write the simple form of the verb in each sentence.

SIMPLE FORM

1. I’m wait____ing for a phone call.
   1.  ____ wait

2. I’m pet____ing my dog.
   2.  ____ pet

3. I’m bi____ing my nails because I’m nervous.
   3.  __________________

4. I’m si____ing in a comfortable chair.
   4.  __________________

5. I’m wri____ing in my book.
   5.  __________________

6. I’m figh____ the urge to have some ice cream.
   6.  __________________

7. I’m wai____ing to see if I’m really hungry.
   7.  __________________

8. I’m ge____ing up from my chair now.
   8.  __________________

9. I’m star____ing to walk to the refrigerator.
   9.  __________________

10. I’m permi____ing myself to have some ice cream.
    10. __________________

11. I’m lif____ing the spoon to my mouth.
    11. __________________

12. I’m ea____ing the ice cream now.
    12. __________________

13. I’m tas____ing it. It tastes good.
    13. __________________

14. I’m also cu____ing a piece of cake.
    14. __________________

15. I’m mee____ing my sister at the airport tomorrow.
    15. __________________

16. She’s visi____ing me for a few days. I’ll save some cake and ice cream for her.
    16. __________________
**Practice 16. Spelling of irregular verbs. (Chart 2-7)**

*Directions:* The given verbs are in the present tense. Write the past tense of these verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PART I</th>
<th>PART II</th>
<th>PART III</th>
<th>PART IV</th>
<th>PART V</th>
<th>PART VI</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>break</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b __ u g h t</td>
<td>br __ __ t</td>
<td>p __ d*</td>
<td>br __ __</td>
<td>h __ __</td>
<td>p __ __ d*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bring</td>
<td>write</td>
<td></td>
<td>write __ __</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>br __ __ __ t</td>
<td>wr __ __</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach</td>
<td>freeze</td>
<td></td>
<td>freeze __ __</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t __ __ __ t</td>
<td>ride</td>
<td></td>
<td>ride __ __</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catch</td>
<td>sell</td>
<td></td>
<td>sell __ __</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c __ __ __ t</td>
<td>steal</td>
<td></td>
<td>steal __ __</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fight</td>
<td>think</td>
<td></td>
<td>think __ __ __ t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f __ __ __ t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>th __ __ __ t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f __ __ d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PART II.**

| swim                     | hit                       | pay                        |                           |                           |                           |
| sw __ __                 | h __ __                   | p __ __ d*                 |                           |                           |                           |
| drink                   | hurt                      |                           | hurt __ __                 |                           |                           |
| dr __ __                 |                           |                           |                           |                           |                           |
| sing                    | read                      |                           | read __ __                 |                           |                           |
| s __ __                 | shut                      |                           | shut __ __                |                           |                           |
| ring                    | cost                      |                           | cost __ __                |                           |                           |
| r __ __                 | put                       |                           | put __ __                 |                           |                           |
|                         | quit                      |                           | quit __ __                |                           |                           |

**PART III.**

| blow                     |                         |                           |                           |                           |                           |
| bl __ __                 |                           |                           |                           |                           |                           |
| draw                    | fly                       |                           |                           |                           |                           |
| dr __ __                 | fl __ __                 |                           |                           |                           |                           |
| fly                     | grow                      |                           |                           |                           |                           |
| fi __ __                 | gr __ __                 |                           |                           |                           |                           |
| grow                    | know                      |                           |                           |                           |                           |
| gr __ __                 | kn __ __                 |                           |                           |                           |                           |
| know                    | throw                      |                           |                           |                           |                           |
| kn __ __                 | thr __ __                 |                           |                           |                           |                           |
| throw                   |                           |                           |                           |                           |                           |

---

*The pronunciations of *paid* and *said* are different.  
*Paid* rhymes with *made.*  
*Said* rhymes with *red.*
Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple past of the given irregular verbs. There may be more than one possible completion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>begin</th>
<th>drive</th>
<th>hurt</th>
<th>ring</th>
<th>think</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>build</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>keep</td>
<td>rise</td>
<td>write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come</td>
<td>fall</td>
<td>lead</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>do</td>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>steal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>run</td>
<td>take</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Sue __________ a cup of coffee before class this morning.
2. We ________________ a delicious dinner at a Mexican restaurant last night.
3. When it ________________ to rain yesterday afternoon, I ________________ all of the windows in the apartment.
4. The phone ________________ eight times before anybody answered it.
5. My brother and his wife ________________ to our apartment for dinner last night.
6. The architectural firm that I work for designed that building. My brother's construction company ________________ it. They took two years to complete it.
7. When Alan slipped on the icy sidewalk yesterday, he ________________ down and ________________ his back. His back is very painful today.
8. Alice called the police yesterday because someone ________________ her bicycle while she was in the library studying. She's very angry.
9. There was a cool breeze last night. I opened the window, but Colette got cold and ________________ it.
10. Ted ________________ his car across Canada last summer.
11. Rita ________________ faster than anyone else in the footrace.
12. None of the other runners was ever in front of Rita during the race. She ________________ all of the other runners in the race from start to finish.
13. Greg is very cheap. I was surprised when he ________________ for my dinner.
14. It was really cold yesterday. The temperature was three below zero.* I nearly ________________ to death when I walked home!

*Note: -3°F (Fahrenheit) equals -20°C (Centigrade or Celsius).
15. Jason _______________ an excellent job in gluing the broken vase together.

16. The sun _______________ at 6:21 this morning.

17. I _______________ about going to Florida for my vacation, but I finally decided to go to Puerto Rico.

18. My friend _______________ a note and passed it to me in class.

19. My mother _______________ all the letters I wrote to her while I was in England. She didn’t throw any away.

20. An earthquake destroyed the old bridge, so the town _______________ a new one across the river.

◊ PRACTICE 18. Irregular verbs. (Chart 2-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple past of any of the given irregular verbs. There may be more than one possible completion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>break</th>
<th>draw</th>
<th>give</th>
<th>quit</th>
<th>steal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>buy</td>
<td>fall</td>
<td>grow</td>
<td>read</td>
<td>teach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>choose</td>
<td>feel</td>
<td>hear</td>
<td>shake</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>find</td>
<td>lose</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dig</td>
<td>forget</td>
<td>meet</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A: Why isn’t Bill here for the meeting? He’s supposed to give the weekly report.
   B: I ____________ to him on the phone last night, and he said he’d be here.

2. After I gave a large bone to each of my three dogs, they went to separate corners of the backyard and _______________ holes to bury their bones.

3. After looking at all the chairs, I finally _______________ the red one. It was a difficult decision.

4. The players are depressed because they _______________ the game last weekend. Next time they’ll play better.

5. A: How can you take a three-month vacation? What about your job?
   B: I won’t be going back to that job ever again. I _______________ yesterday.

6. Laurie has circles under her eyes because she _______________ only two hours last night. She was studying for her final exams.

7. Matt lost his watch. He looked everywhere for it. Finally, he _______________ it in his pants that were in the washing machine. He had washed his watch, but it was still ticking.
8. Joy was barefoot. She stepped on a piece of broken glass and ________ her foot.

9. Danny and I are old friends. We ________ each other in 1985.

10. My father ________ me how to make furniture.

11. The student with the highest grade point average ________ a speech at the graduation ceremony. She ________ about her hopes for the future of the world.

12. I didn’t have a garden, so I ________ tomatoes in a pot on the balcony outside my apartment.

13. Paul was in a hurry to get to class this morning. He ________ to comb his hair.

14. Last week I ________ an interesting book about the volcanoes in Iceland.

15. When Erica and I were introduced to each other, we ________ hands.

16. Mike is in jail because he ________ a car.

17. When I heard about Sue’s problem, I ________ sorry for her.

18. The students all ________ pictures of their teacher, but few of the drawings looked like her. She tried not to laugh at the pictures.

19. A few minutes ago, I ________ on the radio about a bad plane accident.

20. Joe had an accident. He ________ off the roof and ________ his leg.

**PRACTICE 19. Review: past questions and negatives.** (Charts 2-1 → 2-3)

*Directions:* Rewrite the subjects and verbs that appear in boldface to create questions and negative statements. Omit the rest of each sentence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTION</th>
<th>NEGATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Did I ride?</td>
<td>I didn’t ride.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did she sit?</td>
<td>She didn’t sit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did we go?</td>
<td>We didn’t go.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did they try?</td>
<td>They didn’t try.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. He was late.
6. They cut some paper.
7. She threw a ball.
8. We did our work.

◊ PRACTICE 20. Simple present and past: questions. (Chapter 1, Charts 2-1 → 2-5, and preview of Chapter 5)

Directions: Create questions using the SIMPLE PAST or the SIMPLE PRESENT.

SITUATION: Your cousin, Susan, has a new friend. She was with her new friend last night. You have several questions.

1. what/do last night? A: ________________________
   B: I went to a concert with my new friend.

2. what/your friend’s name? A: ________________________
   B: Robert.

3. he/nice? A: ________________________
   B: Yes, he’s very nice.

4. how/your evening? A: ________________________
   B: Fine.

5. where/you/go? A: ________________________
   B: To a concert.

6. you/enjoy it? A: ________________________
   B: Very much.

7. the music/loud? A: ________________________
   B: Yes, very loud! I loved it.

8. what time/you/get home? A: ________________________
   B: Around midnight.

9. what/you/wear? A: ________________________
   B: Nothing special. Just some jeans and a sweater.

10. what/he/be like? (his personality) A: ________________________
    B: He’s funny and friendly. He’s really nice.

11. what/he/look like? A: ________________________
    B: He has dark hair and is medium height.

12. you/want to go out with him again? A: ________________________
    B: Yes. I like him a lot.
(Chapter 1 and Charts 2-1 → 2-7)

Directions: Complete the chart with the correct forms of the verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EVERY DAY</th>
<th>NOW</th>
<th>YESTERDAY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. He <strong>is</strong> here every day.</td>
<td>He <strong>is</strong> here now.</td>
<td>He <strong>was</strong> here yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. I <strong>think</strong> about you every day.</td>
<td>I’m <strong>thinking</strong> about you now.</td>
<td>I <strong>thought</strong> about you yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. We <strong>play</strong> tennis every day.</td>
<td>We <strong>play</strong> tennis now.</td>
<td>We <strong>play</strong> tennis yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. I <strong>drink</strong> juice every day.</td>
<td>I <strong>drink</strong> juice now.</td>
<td>I <strong>drank</strong> juice yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. He <strong>teach</strong> every day.</td>
<td>He <strong>teach</strong> now.</td>
<td>He <strong>teach</strong> yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. She <strong>swim</strong> every day.</td>
<td>She <strong>swim</strong> now.</td>
<td>She <strong>swam</strong> yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. You <strong>sleep</strong> late every day.</td>
<td>You <strong>sleep</strong> late now.</td>
<td>You <strong>sleep</strong> late yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. He <strong>read</strong> every day.</td>
<td>He <strong>read</strong> now.</td>
<td>He <strong>read</strong> yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. They <strong>try</strong> hard every day.</td>
<td>They <strong>try</strong> hard now.</td>
<td>They <strong>tried</strong> hard yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. We <strong>eat</strong> dinner every day.</td>
<td>We <strong>eat</strong> dinner now.</td>
<td>We <strong>eat</strong> dinner yesterday.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRACTICE 22. Simple present and simple past. (Chapter 1 and Charts 2-1 → 2-7)

Directions: Use the simple present or the simple past form of the verb in parentheses as appropriate. Complete the short answers to the questions.

1. A: *(you, hear)* Did you **hear** the thunder last night?
   B: No, I **didn’t**. *(hear, not)* **didn’t hear** anything all night. I *(be)* **was** asleep.

2. A: Listen! *(you, hear)* Do you **hear** a siren in the distance?
   B: No, I **don’t**. *(hear, not)* **don’t hear** anything at all.
3. A: That's a nice bookshelf. *(you, build)* it?
   B: No, I ____________ . My uncle *(build)* it for me.

4. A: I have a question. *(a fish, be)* slippery to hold?
   B: Yes, ____________ . It can slip right out of your hand.
   A: How about frogs? *(they, be)* slippery?
   B: Yes, ____________ .

   A: What about snakes?
   B: I *(know, not)* ____________ . I've never touched a snake.

5. A: *(want)* ____________ to go to the mall later this afternoon and look for a new bathing suit. *(you, want)* ____________ to go with me?
   B: I can't. I *(have)* ____________ an appointment with my English teacher. Besides, I *(buy)* ____________ a new bathing suit last year. I *(need, not)* ____________ a new one this year.

6. I always *(offer)* ____________ to help my older neighbor carry her groceries into her house every time I see her return from the store. She *(be)* ____________ always very grateful. Yesterday, she *(offer)* ____________ to pay me for helping her, but of course I *(accept, not)* ____________ the offer.

7. Last Monday night, I *(take)* ____________ my sister and her husband to my favorite restaurant for dinner and *(find)* ____________ the doors locked. I *(know, not)* ____________ it then, but the restaurant *(be, not)* ____________ open on Mondays. We *(want, not)* ____________ to eat anywhere else, so we *(go)* ____________ back to my house. I *(make)* ____________ a salad and *(heat)* ____________ some soup. Everyone *(seem)* ____________ satisfied even though I *(be, not)* ____________ a wonderful cook.

8. My daughter is twenty-one years old. She *(like)* ____________ to travel. My wife and I *(worry)* ____________ about her a little when she *(be)* ____________ away from home, but we also *(trust)* ____________ her judgment.

   Last year, after she *(graduate)* ____________ from college, she *(go)* ____________ to Europe with two of her friends. They *(travel, not)* ____________ ____________ by train or by car. Instead, they *(rent)* ____________ motor scooters and *(ride)* ____________ slowly through each country they visited.

   While she *(be)* ____________ away, my wife and I *(worry)* ____________ about her safety. We *(be)* ____________ very happy when we *(see)* ____________ her smiling face at the airport and *(know)* ____________ that she was finally safe at home.
PRACTICE 23. Past progressive. (Charts 2-8 and 2-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using the past progressive of the given verbs. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>hide</th>
<th>look</th>
<th>read</th>
<th>sing</th>
<th>sit</th>
<th>talk</th>
<th>watch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. Jack’s wife arranged a surprise birthday party for him. When Jack arrived home, several people were hiding behind the couch or behind doors. All of the lights were out, and when Jack turned them on, everyone shouted “Surprise!”

2. The birds began to sing when the sun rose at 6:30. Dan woke up at 6:45. When Dan woke up, the birds

3. I a video last night when my best friend called.

4. While we on the phone, the power went out.

5. The bus driver looked at all the passengers on her bus and noticed how quiet they were. Some people newspapers or books. Most of the people quietly in their seats and out the windows of the bus.

PRACTICE 24. Past progressive. (Charts 2-8 and 2-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences. Use the simple past for one clause and the past progressive for the other.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVITY IN PROGRESS</th>
<th>NADIA</th>
<th>GEORGE</th>
<th>BILL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>play soccer</td>
<td>break her glasses</td>
<td>score a goal</td>
<td>hurt his foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hike</td>
<td>find some money</td>
<td>see a bear</td>
<td>pick up a snake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dance</td>
<td>trip and fall</td>
<td>meet his future wife</td>
<td>get dizzy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. While Nadia was playing soccer, she broke her glasses.

2. George scored a goal while he was playing soccer.

3. Bill hurt his foot while he was playing soccer.

4. While Nadia break her glasses, she find some money.

5. George see a bear while he break her glasses.

6. Bill pick up a snake while he break her glasses.

7. Nadia meet his future wife and get dizzy while she break her glasses.

8. While George pick up a snake, he meet his future wife.

9. While Bill break her glasses, he get dizzy.
Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Use the simple past or the past progressive.

1. It (begin) ___________ to rain while Amanda and I (walk) ___________ to school this morning.

2. While I (wash) ___________ dishes last night, I (drop) ___________ a plate and (break) ___________ it.

3. I (see) ___________ Ted at the student cafeteria at lunchtime yesterday. He (eat) ___________ a sandwich and (talk) ___________ with some friends. I (join) ___________ them.

4. While I (walk) ___________ under an apple tree a few days ago, an apple (fall) ___________ and (hit) ___________ me on the head.

5. Robert didn't answer the phone when Sara called. He (sing) ___________ his favorite song in the shower and (hear, not) ___________ the phone ring.

6. A: I saw a whale!
   B: Really? Great! When?
   A: This morning. I (walk) ___________ on the beach when I (hear) ___________ a sudden “whoosh!” It (be) ___________ the spout of a huge gray whale.

7. A: There was a power outage in our part of town last night. (your lights, go out) ___________ too?
   B: Yes, they did. It (be) ___________ terrible! I (take) ___________ a shower when the lights went out. My wife (find) ___________ a flashlight and rescued me from the bathroom. We couldn’t cook dinner, so we (eat) ___________ sandwiches instead. I (try) ___________ to read some reports by candlelight, but I couldn’t see well enough, so I (go) ___________ to bed and (sleep) ___________. How about you?
8. Yesterday Tom and Janice (go) ________________ to the zoo, where they (see) ________________ many kinds of animals and (have) ________________ a few adventures. While they (walk) __________________ by an elephant, it (begin) ________________ to squirt water at them, so they run behind a rock and (dry) ________________ themselves. Later, while they (pass) ________________ the giraffe area, one of the tall, purple-tongued animals (lower) ________________ its head toward Tom and (start) ________________ to nibble on his green hat. Janice said, “Shoo!”* At that point, the giraffe (stretch) ________________ its head toward Janice and (try) ________________ to eat her ice cream cone. Janice (let, not) ________________ the giraffe have the ice cream because she (stand) ________________ right in front of a sign that said, “DO NOT FEED THE ANIMALS.” She (point) ________________ at the sign and (say) ________________ to the giraffe, “Can’t you read?”

◊ PRACTICE 26. Past time using time clauses. (Chart 2-10)

Directions: Combine the two sentences in any order, using the time expression in parentheses. Underline the time clause.

1. I gave Alan his allowance. He finished his chores. (after)
   → I gave Alan his allowance after he finished his chores. OR
   → After Alan finished his chores, I gave him his allowance.

2. The doorbell rang. I was climbing the stairs. (while)

3. The firefighters checked the ashes one last time. They went home. (before)

4. The Novaks stopped by our table at the restaurant. They showed us their new baby. (when)

5. We started to dance. The music began. (as soon as)

6. We stayed in our seats. The game ended. (until)

7. My father was listening to a baseball game on the radio. He was watching a basketball game on television. (while)

**“Shoo! Shoo!” means “Go away! Leave!” When the woman shooed the giraffe, that means she said “Shoo! Shoo!” and made the giraffe leave.**
Last Friday was a holiday. It (be) ____________ Independence Day, so I didn’t have to go to classes. I (sleep) ____________ a little later than usual. Around ten, my friend Larry (come) ____________ over to my apartment. We (pack) ____________ a picnic basket and then (take) ____________ the bus to Forest Park. We (spend) ____________ most of the day there.

When we (get) ____________ to the park, we (find) ____________ an empty picnic table near a pond. There were some ducks on the pond, so we (feed) ____________ them. We (throw) ____________ small pieces of bread on the water, and the ducks (swim) ____________ over to get them. One duck was very clever. It (catch) ____________ the bread in midair before it (hit) ____________ the water.

Another duck was a thief. It (steal) ____________ bread from the beaks of other ducks. While we (feed) ____________ the ducks, Larry and I (meet) ____________ a man who usually (come) ____________ to the park every day to feed the ducks. We (sit) ____________ on a park bench and (speak) ____________ to him for fifteen or twenty minutes.
After we (eat) _______________ our lunch, I (take) _______________ a short nap under a tree. While I (sleep) _______________, a mosquito (bite) _______________ my arm. When I (wake) _______________ up, my arm itched, so I scratched it. Suddenly I (hear) _______________ a noise in the tree above me. I (look) _______________ up and (see) _______________ an orange and gray bird. After a few moments, it (fly) _______________ away.

During the afternoon, we (do) _______________ many things. First we (take) _______________ a long walk. When we (get) _______________ back to our picnic table, I (read) _______________ a book, and Larry, who (be) _______________ an artist, (draw) _______________ pictures. Later we (play) _______________ a game of chess. Larry (win) _______________ the first game, but I (win) _______________ the second one. Then he (teach) _______________ me how to play a new game, one with dice. While we (play) _______________, one of the dice (fall) _______________ from the picnic table onto the ground. We finally (find) _______________ it in some tall grass.

In the evening, we (join) _______________ a huge crowd to watch the fireworks display. The fireworks (be) _______________ beautiful. Some of the explosions (be) _______________
very loud, however. They (hurt) _______ my ears. When the display (be) _______ over, we (leave) _______. All in all, it (be) _______. a very enjoyable day.

◊ PRACTICE 28. Past habit with USED TO. (Chart 2-11)
Directions: Using the given information, complete the sentences. Use used to.

1. When James was young, he hated school. Now he likes school.
   → James _______ used to hate school _______.

2. Ann was a secretary for many years, but now she owns her own business.
   → Ann _______ , but now she owns her own business.

3. Rebecca had a pet rat when she was ten. The rat died, and she hasn’t had another rat as a pet since that time.
   → Rebecca _______ as a pet.

4. Before Adam got married, he went bowling five times a week.
   → Adam _______ five times a week.

5. When we raised our own chickens, we had fresh eggs every morning.
   → We _______ every morning when we raised our own chickens.

6. When Ben was a child, he often crawled under his bed and put his hands over his ears when he heard thunder.
   → Ben _______ and _______ when he heard thunder.
7. When I lived in my home town, I went to the beach every weekend. Now I don’t go to the beach every weekend.
   → I __________________________ to the beach every weekend, but now I don’t.

8. Adam has a new job. He has to wear a suit every day. When he was a student, he always wore jeans.
   → Adam __________________________ a suit every day, but now he does.

9. Sara has two cats that she enjoys as pets. In the past, she hated cats. These are her first pets.
   → Sara __________________________ cats. She __________________________ pets, but today she enjoys her two cats.

10. Now you have a job every summer. Have you always worked during summers?
    → What __________________________ in summer?

◊ PRACTICE 29. Error analysis. (Chapter 2)

Directions: Correct the errors.

didn’t stay
1. They don’t stayed at the park very long last Saturday.

2. They are walked to school yesterday.

3. I was understand all the teacher’s questions yesterday.

4. We didn’t knew what to do when the fire alarm ringed yesterday.

5. I was really enjoyed the baseball game last week.

6. Mr. Rice didn’t died in the accident.

7. I use to live with my parents. but now I have my own apartment.

8. My friends were went on vacation together last month.

9. I didn’t afraid of anything when I am a child.

10. The teacher was changed his mind yesterday.

11. Sally love Jim, but he didn’t loved her.

12. Carmen no used to eat fish, but now she does.
PRACTICE 30. Past verbs. (Chapter 2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple past or the past progressive of the verbs in parentheses.

Late yesterday afternoon while I (prepare) _______ was preparing _______ dinner, the doorbell (ring) _______. I (put) _______ everything down and (rush) _______ to answer it. I (open) _______ the door and (find) _______ a delivery man standing in my doorway. He (hold) _______ an express mail package and (need) _______ me to sign for it. While I (deal) _______ with the delivery man, the phone (ring) _______. I (excuse) _______ myself and (reach) _______ for the phone. While I (try) _______ to talk on the phone and sign for the package at the same time, my young son (run) _______ up to me to tell me about the cat. The cat (try) _______ to catch a big fish in my husband’s prized aquarium. The fish (swim) _______ frantically to avoid the cat’s paw.
I (say) ___________ an abrupt goodbye to the telemarketer on the phone and
(hang) ___________ up. I (thank) ___________ the delivery man and (shut)
___________ the door. I (yell) ___________ at the cat and (shoo)
___________ her away from the fish. Then I (sit) ___________ down in an easy
chair and (stay) ___________ there until I (begin) ___________ to feel calm
again. But as soon as I (feel) ___________ like everything was under control, the
doorbell (ring) ___________ again. Then the phone (ring) ___________. Then
my son said, “Mom! Mom! The dog is in the refrigerator!” I couldn’t move. “What’s next?” I
said aloud to no one in particular.
CHAPTER 3
Future Time

◊ PRACTICE 1. Present, past, and future. (Chapters 1, 2, and 3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the given verbs. Use the simple present, the simple past, and be going to/will.

1. arrive
   a. Joe ___________ arrives _________________ on time every day.
   b. Joe ___________ arrived _________________ on time yesterday.
   c. Joe ___________ is going to arrive _________________ on time tomorrow. OR
      Joe ___________ will arrive _________________ on time tomorrow.

2. eat
   a. Ann _________________ breakfast _________________ every day.
   b. Ann _________________ breakfast _________________ yesterday.
   c. Ann _________________ breakfast _________________ tomorrow. OR
      Ann _________________ breakfast _________________ tomorrow.

3. arrive, not
   a. Mike _________________ on time every day.
   b. Mike _________________ on time yesterday.
   c. Mike ___________ isn't going to arrive _________________ on time tomorrow. OR
      Mike _________________ on time tomorrow.

4. eat?
   a. ___________ you _________________ breakfast every day?
   b. ___________ you _________________ breakfast yesterday?
   c. ___________ you _________________ breakfast tomorrow? OR
      ___________ you _________________ breakfast tomorrow?

5. eat, not
   a. I _________________ breakfast every day.
   b. I _________________ breakfast yesterday.
   c. I _________________ breakfast tomorrow. OR
      I _________________ breakfast tomorrow
**PRACTICE 2. WILL and BE GOING TO. (Charts 3-1 → 3-3)**

*Directions:* Complete the chart with the correct forms of the verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>be going to</th>
<th>will</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am going to leave.</td>
<td>I will leave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You leave.</td>
<td>You leave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr. Rose leave.</td>
<td>He leave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We leave.</td>
<td>We leave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Our parents leave.</td>
<td>They leave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The boys (not) leave.</td>
<td>They (not) leave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ann (not) leave.</td>
<td>She (not) leave.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I (not) leave.</td>
<td>I (not) leave.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRACTICE 3. BE GOING TO. (Chart 3-2)**

*Directions:* Complete the sentences by using a pronoun + a form of *be going to*.

1. I ate lunch with Alan today, and **I'm going to eat** lunch with him tomorrow too.
2. Jason wasn't in class today, and **he isn't going to be** in class tomorrow either.
3. The students took a quiz yesterday, and ___________________________ another quiz today.
4. Margaret walked to school this morning, and ___________________________ to school tomorrow morning too.
5. It isn't raining today, and according to the weather report, ___________________________ tomorrow either.
6. We're in class today, and ___________________________ in class tomorrow too.
7. You didn't hitchhike to school today, and ___________________________ to school tomorrow either.
8. I didn't get married last year, and ___________________________ married this year either.
9. Peter didn't wear a clean shirt today, and ___________________________ a clean one tomorrow either.

**PRACTICE 4. WILL. (Chart 3-3)**

*Directions:* Read the paragraph. Change all the verbs with *be going to* to *will*.

*will*

The Smiths are going to celebrate their 50th wedding anniversary on December 1 of this year. Their children are planning a party for them at a local hotel. Their family and friends are going to join them for the celebration.
Mr. and Mrs. Smith have three children and five grandchildren. The Smiths know that two of their children are going to be at the party, but the third child, their youngest daughter, is far away in Africa, where she is doing medical research. They believe she is not going to come home for the party.

The Smiths don’t know it, but their youngest daughter is going to be at the party. She is planning to surprise them. It is going to be a wonderful surprise for them! They are going to be very happy to see her. The whole family is going to enjoy being together for this special occasion.

◊ PRACTICE 5. Questions with WILL and BE GOING TO. (Charts 3-1 → 3-3)

Directions: Use the given information to complete the questions. Write the question forms for both will and be going to.

1. Nick is thinking about starting an Internet company. His friends are wondering:

   Will Nick start an Internet company?
   Is Nick going to start an Internet company?

2. The teacher, Mr. Jones, is thinking about giving a test. His students are wondering:

   ___________________________________________ a test?
   ___________________________________________ a test?

3. Jacob is thinking about quitting his job. His co-workers are wondering:

   ___________________________________________ his job?
   ___________________________________________ his job?

4. Mr. and Mrs. Kono are thinking about adopting a child. Their friends are wondering:

   ___________________________________________ a child?
   ___________________________________________ a child?

5. The Johnsons are thinking about moving. Their friends are wondering:

   ___________________________________________?
   ___________________________________________?

6. Dr. Johnson is thinking about retiring. Her patients are wondering:

   ___________________________________________?
   ___________________________________________?
PRACTICE 6. WILL. (Chart 3-3)
Directions: Complete the dialogues. Use will.

1. A: (you, help) ____________________ will you help me tomorrow?
   B: Yes, ___________ I will* . OR No, ___________ I won't.

2. A: (Paul, lend) ____________________ us some money?
   B: Yes, ___________. OR No, ___________.

3. A: (Jane, graduate) ____________________ this spring?
   B: Yes, ___________. OR No, ___________.

4. A: (her parents, be) ____________________ at the ceremony?
   B: Yes, ___________. OR No, ___________.

5. A: (I, benefit) ____________________ from this business deal?
   B: Yes, ___________. OR No, ___________.

PRACTICE 7. WILL PROBABLY. (Chart 3-4)
Directions: Complete the sentences with will or won't. Also use probably.

1. The clouds are leaving, and the sun is coming out. It ____________________ rain anymore.
2. The weather is cold today. There's no reason to expect the weather to change. It ____________________ will probably be cold tomorrow too.
3. Sam, Sharon, and Carl worked hard on this project. They ____________________ turn in the best work. The other students didn't work as hard.
4. Ronald is having a very difficult time in advanced algebra. He didn't understand anything that happened in class today, and he ____________________ understand tomorrow's class either.
5. Jan skipped lunch today. She ____________________ eat as soon as she gets home.
6. I don't like parties. Mike really wants me to come to his birthday party, but I ____________________ go. I'd rather stay home.

*Pronouns are NOT contracted with helping verbs in short answers.  
CORRECT: Yes, I will.  INCORRECT: Yes, I'll.
7. Conditions in the factory have been very bad for a long time. All of the people who work on the assembly line are angry. They vote to go out on strike.

8. We are using up the earth’s resources at a rapid rate. We continue to do so* for years to come.

◇ PRACTICE 8. WILL PROBABLY. (Chart 3-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences.

PART I. Use a pronoun + will/won’t. Use probably.
1. I went to the library last night, and I’ll probably go there tonight too.
2. Ann didn’t come to class today, and she probably won’t come tomorrow either.
3. Greg went to bed early last night, and to bed early tonight too.
4. Jack didn’t hand his homework in today, and it in tomorrow either.
5. The students had a quiz today, and one tomorrow too.

PART II. Use a pronoun + be going to/not be going to. Use probably.
6. I watched TV last night, and I’m probably going to watch TV tonight too.
7. I wasn’t at home last night, and at home tonight either.
8. It’s hot today, and hot tomorrow too.
9. My friends didn’t come over last night, and over tonight either.
10. Alice didn’t ride her bike to school today, and it to school tomorrow either.

◇ PRACTICE 9. Sureness about the future. (Chart 3-4)

Directions: Decide if the speaker is 100%, 90%, or 50% sure.

1. 90% You’ll probably hear from our office tomorrow.
2. ______ Gino may not finish his assignment on time.
3. ______ My roommate will transfer to another university next year.

*Do so means “do that thing I just talked about.” In this sentence, do so = use up the earth’s resources at a rapid rate.
4. ______ My roommate is probably going to change her major.
5. ______ Julia may join a health club next month.
6. ______ I will probably join a health club too.
7. ______ Karen and Lee are not going to continue dating each other.
8. ______ Maybe they will remain friends.

◊ PRACTICE 10. Sureness about the future. (Chart 3-4)

Directions: Answer each question by using the word in parentheses. Pay special attention to word order.

1. A: Are Joel and Rita going to have a simple wedding? (probably)
   B: Yes. Joel and Rita ______ are probably going to have ______ a simple wedding.

2. A: Are they going to invite a lot of people? (probably not)
   B: No. They ___________________________ a lot of people.

3. A: Will they get married in Rita’s garden? Or will they get married at a place of worship?
   (may, maybe)
   B: They’re not sure. They ___________________________ in Rita’s garden.
   ___________________________ they ___________________________ at a place of worship.

4. A: Is Rita going to rent her wedding dress? (may)
   B: She’s trying to save money, so she’s thinking about it. She ___________________________ her wedding dress.

5. A: Will she decide that she wants a wedding dress of her very own? (probably)
   B: She ___________________________ that she wants a wedding dress of her very own.

6. A: Will Joel feel very relaxed on his wedding day? Will he be nervous? (may not, may)
   B: Joel ___________________________ very relaxed on his wedding day. He ___________________________ a little nervous.

7. A: Are they going to go on a honeymoon? (will)
   B: Yes. They ___________________________ on a honeymoon immediately after the wedding, but they haven’t told anyone where they are going to go.

8. A: Will they go far away for their honeymoon? (probably not)
   B: They ___________________________ far. They have only a few days before they need to be back at work.
PRACTICE 11. WILL. (Chart 3-5)

Directions: Complete the dialogues with will and a verb from the list. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>hold</th>
<th>move</th>
<th>take</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>answer</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>leave</td>
<td>read</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. At the office: A: The phone’s ringing.
   B: I’ll answer it.

2. At home: A: The baby won’t stop crying.
   B: I’ll hold her.

3. At the doctor’s office: A: I feel hot.
   B: I’ll read your temperature.

4. At work: A: These boxes are in the way.
   B: I’ll move them.

5. At home: A: The oven’s still on.
   B: I’ll turn it off.

6. At a restaurant: A: You paid the bill. I’ll take the tip.
   B: Thanks!

7. At home: A: The mail’s here.
   B: I’ll get it.

8. At a fast-food restaurant: A: I don’t have my glasses. I can’t read the menu board.
   B: I’ll turn it to you.

PRACTICE 12. BE GOING TO vs. WILL. (Chart 3-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with either be going to or will.*

1. (Speaker B is planning to listen to the news at six.)
   A: Why did you turn on the radio?
   B: I’m going to listen to the news at six.

2. (Speaker B didn’t have a plan to show the other person how to solve the math problem, but she is happy to do it.)
   A: I can’t figure out this math problem. Do you know how to do it?
   B: Yes. Give me your pencil. I’ll show you how to solve it.

*Usually be going to and will are interchangeable: you can use either one of them with little difference in meaning. Sometimes, however, they are NOT interchangeable. In this exercise, only one of them is correct, not both. See Chart 3-5, p. 63, in the FEG 3e student book.
3. (Speaker B has made a plan. He is planning to lie down because he doesn’t feel well.)
   A: What’s the matter?
   B: I don’t feel well. I ___________ lie down for a little while. If anyone calls, tell them I’ll call back later.
   A: Okay. I hope you feel better.

4. (Speaker B did not plan to take the other person home. He volunteers to do so only after the other person talks about missing his bus.)
   A: Oh no! I wasn’t watching the time. I missed my bus.
   B: That’s okay. I ___________ give you a ride home.
   A: Hey, thanks!

5. (Speaker B already has a plan.)
   A: Why did you borrow money from the bank?
   B: I ___________ buy a new pickup.* I’ve already picked it out.

6. (Speaker B does not have a plan.)
   A: Mom, can I have a candy bar?
   B: No, but I ___________ buy an apple for you. How does that sound?
   A: Okay, I guess.

7. (Speaker B has already made her plans about what to wear. Then Speaker B volunteers to help.)
   A: I can’t figure out what to wear to the dance tonight. It’s informal, isn’t it?
   B: Yes. I ___________ wear a pair of nice jeans.
   A: Maybe I should wear my jeans, too. But I think they’re dirty.
   B: I ___________ wash them for you. I’m planning to do a load of laundry in a few minutes.
   A: Gee, thanks. That’ll help me out a lot.

◊ PRACTICE 13. BE GOING TO vs. WILL. (Chart 3-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with either be going to or will.

1. A: Can I borrow this book?
   B: Sure. But I need it back soon.
   A: I ___________ return it to you tomorrow. Okay?

2. A: I ___________ wear a dark suit to the wedding reception. How about you?
   B: I’m not sure.

3. A: What are you doing with that picture?
   B: It doesn’t look good in this room. I ___________ hang it in our bedroom.

*A pickup is a small truck.
4. A: Can you meet me for dinner after work?
   B: I'd like to, but I can't. I __________________ work late tonight.

5. A: It's grandfather's eighty-fifth birthday next Sunday. What ________________
   you ________________ give him for his birthday?
   B: I __________________ give him a walking stick that I made myself.

6. A: Gee, I'd really like an ice cream cone, but I didn't bring any money with me.
   B: That's okay. I __________________ buy one for you.
   A: Thanks!

7. A: Why are you looking for a screwdriver?
   B: One of the kitchen chairs has a loose screw. I __________________
   ________________ fix it.

8. A: The computer printer isn't working again! What am I going to do?
   B: Calm down. Give Tom a call. He __________________
   fix it for you. He just fixed my printer.

9. A: Why is Nadia going to leave work early today?
   B: She __________________ pick up her husband at the airport.

10. A: Achoo! Your cat is making me sneeze.
    B: I __________________ put her outside.
    A: Thanks.

11. A: Do you have any plans for Saturday?
    B: I __________________ help some friends move to their new home.

12. A: Your pants have ink on them.
    B: They do? I don't have another pair.
    A: Don't worry. I have some spot remover. I __________________ get it for you.
PRACTICE 14. Past and future time clauses. (Charts 2-10 and 3-6)

Directions: Underline the time clauses.

1. After I did my homework last night, I went to bed.
2. I'm going to go to bed after I do my homework tonight.
3. Before Bob left for work this morning, he locked the door.
4. Before Bob leaves for work this morning, he's going to lock the door.
5. I'll call you after I get home this evening.
6. I called my friend after I got home last night.
7. Class will begin as soon as the teacher arrives.
8. As soon as the teacher arrived, class began.
9. When the rain stops, we'll go for a walk.
10. We went for a walk when the rain stopped.

PRACTICE 15. Future time clauses. (Chart 3-6)

Directions: Combine the ideas of the two given sentences into one sentence by using a time clause. Use the word in parentheses to introduce the time clause.

1. First: I'm going to finish my homework.  
   Then: I'm going to go to bed.  
   (after) After I finish my homework, I'm going to go to bed.
2. First: I'll finish my homework.  
   Then: I'm going to go to bed.  
   (until) I'm not going to go to bed until I finish my homework.
3. First: Ann will finish her homework.  
   Then: She will watch TV tonight.*  
   (before) TV tonight, her homework.
4. First: Jim will get home tonight.  
   Then: He's going to read the newspaper.  
   (after) the newspaper home tonight.
5. First: I'll call John tomorrow.  
   Then: I'll ask him to my party.  
   (when) John tomorrow, him to my party.

*A noun usually comes before a pronoun:  
After Ann eats dinner, she is going to study.  
Ann is going to study after she eats dinner.
6. **First:** Mrs. Fox will stay in her office tonight.  
**Then:** She will finish her report.

(until) _____________ in her office tonight ___________

___________ her report.

7. **First:** I will get home tonight.  
**Then:** I’m going to take a hot bath.

(as soon as) _____________ home tonight, _____________ a hot bath.

8. **First:** I’m going to be in Bangkok.  
**Then:** I’m going to go to a Thai-style boxing match.

(while) _____________ in Bangkok, _____________ to a Thai-style boxing match.

◇ **PRACTICE 16. IF-clauses. (Chart 3-6)**

**Directions:** Using the given ideas, complete each sentence by using an if-clause. Use a comma if necessary.*

1. Maybe it will rain tomorrow.  
   If it rains tomorrow, _____________ I’m going to go to a movie.

2. Maybe it will be hot tomorrow.  
   _____________ I’m going to go swimming.

3. Maybe Adam will have enough time.  
   Adam will finish his essay tonight _____________.

4. Maybe I won’t get a check tomorrow.  
   _____________ I’ll e-mail my parents.

5. Perhaps the weather will be nice tomorrow.  
   We’re going to go on a hike _____________.

6. Maybe Gina won’t study for her test.  
   _____________ she’ll get a bad grade.

7. Maybe I will have enough money.  
   I’m going to go to Hawaii for my vacation _____________.

8. Maybe I won’t study tonight.  
   _____________ I probably won’t pass the chemistry exam.

*Notice the punctuation in the example. A comma is used when the if-clause comes before the main clause. No comma is used when the if-clause follows the main clause.
PRACTICE 17. Time clauses and IF-clauses. (Chart 3-6)

Directions: Combine the ideas in the two sentences into one sentence by using the word in *italics* to make an adverb clause. Omit the words in parentheses from your new sentence. **Underline** the adverb clause.

1. *when*
   a. I’ll see you Sunday afternoon.
   b. I’ll give you my answer (then).*

   → *When I see you Sunday afternoon, I’ll give you my answer.* OR
   *I’ll give you my answer when I see you Sunday afternoon.*

2. *before*
   a. I’m going to clean up my apartment (first).
   b. My friends are going to come over (later).

3. *when*
   a. The storm will be over (in an hour or two).
   b. I’m going to do some errands (then).

4. *if*
   a. (Maybe) you won’t learn how to use a computer.
   b. (As a result), you will have trouble finding a job.

5. *as soon as*
   a. Joe will meet us at the coffee shop.
   b. He’ll finish his report (soon).

6. *after*
   a. Sue will wash and dry the dishes.
   b. (Then) she will put them away.

7. *if*
   a. They may not leave at seven.
   b. (As a result), they won’t get to the theater on time.

PRACTICE 18. Review: past and future. (Chapters 2 and 3)

Directions: Read Part I. Use the information in Part I to complete Part II with appropriate verb tenses. Use *will* (not *be going to*) for future time in Part II. Use the simple present for present time.

**PART I.**

(1) Yesterday morning was an ordinary morning. I got up at 6:30. I washed my face and brushed my teeth. Then I put on my jeans and a sweater. I went to the kitchen and started the electric coffee maker.

---

*When you combine the sentences, omit the word in parentheses.*
Then I walked down my driveway to get the morning newspaper. While I was walking to get the paper, I saw a deer. It was eating the flowers in my garden. After I watched the deer for a little while, I made some noise to make the deer run away before it destroyed my flowers.

As soon as I got back to the kitchen, I poured myself a cup of coffee and opened the morning paper. While I was reading the paper, my teenage daughter came downstairs. We talked about her plans for the day. I helped her with her breakfast and made a lunch for her to take to school. After we said goodbye, I ate some fruit and cereal and finished reading the paper.

Then I went to my office. My office is in my home. My office has a desk, a computer, a radio, a fax, a copy machine, and a lot of bookshelves. I worked all morning. While I was working, the phone rang many times. I talked to many people. At 11:30, I went to the kitchen and made a sandwich for lunch. As I said, it was an ordinary morning.

PART II.

(1) Tomorrow morning will be an ordinary morning. I'll get up at 6:30. I'll wash my face and brush my teeth. Then I probably on my jeans and a sweater. I to the kitchen and the electric coffee maker.

(2) Then I down my driveway to get the morning newspaper. If I a deer in my garden, I it for a while and some noise to chase it away before it my flowers.

(3) As soon as I back to the kitchen, I a cup of coffee and the morning paper. While I'm reading the paper, my teenage daughter downstairs. We about her plans for the day. I her with her breakfast and a lunch for her to take to school. After we goodbye, I some fruit and cereal and reading the paper.

(4) Then I to my office. My office in my home. My office a desk, a computer, a radio, a fax, a copy machine, and a lot of bookshelves. I all morning. While I'm working, the phone many times. I to many people. At 11:30, I to the kitchen and a sandwich for lunch. As I said, it an ordinary morning.
PRACTICE 19. Using BE GOING TO and the present progressive to express future time. (Chart 3-7)

Directions: Rewrite the sentences by using be going to and the present progressive.

1. I'm planning to stay home tonight.
   ___________ I'm going to stay ______ home tonight.
   ___________ I'm staying ______ home tonight.

2. They're planning to travel across the country by train this summer.
   ___________ across the country by train this summer.

3. We're planning to get married in June.
   ___________ married in June.

4. He's planning to start graduate school next year.
   ___________ graduate school next year.

5. She's planning to go to New Zealand next month.
   ___________ to New Zealand next month.

6. My neighbors are planning to build their dream home this spring.
   ___________ their dream home this spring.

PRACTICE 20. Using the present progressive to express future time. (Chart 3-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the present progressive. Use each verb in the list only once. Notice the future time expressions in italics.

arrive
attend
call
come
get
leave
meet
plan
see
prepare
study
take
travel

1. Kathy ___________ is traveling ______ to Caracas next month to attend a conference.

2. A: Your apartment is so neat! Are you expecting guests?
   B: Yes. My parents ___________ ___________ tomorrow for a two-day visit.
3. A: Do you have any plans for lunch today?
   B: I ______ Shannon at the Shamrock Cafe in an hour. Want to join us?

4. A: I ______ a bicycle for my son for his birthday next month. Do you know anything about bikes for kids?
   B: Sure. What do you want to know?

5. Amanda likes to take her two children with her on trips whenever she can, but she ______ not ______ them with her to El Paso, Texas, next week. It’s strictly a business trip.

6. A: What are your plans for the rest of the year?
   B: I ______ French in Grenoble, France, this coming summer. Then I’ll be back here in school in the fall.

7. A: Why are you packing your suitcase?
   B: I ______ for Los Angeles in a couple of hours.

8. My regular dentist, Dr. Jordan, ______ a conference in Las Vegas next week, so I ______ her partner, Dr. Peterson, when I go in for my appointment next Friday.

9. A: Do we have a test in English class tomorrow?
   B: No. Don’t you remember? We’re going to have a guest lecturer.
   A: Really? Who? Are you sure we don’t have a test?
   B: A professor from the Department of Environmental Sciences ______ to our class tomorrow morning.
   A: Great! That sounds interesting. And it’s a lot better than having a test.

10. A: My sister and her husband ______ over to my house for dinner tomorrow night. It’s my sister’s birthday, so I ______ a special birthday dinner for her. I ______ her favorite food: roast beef and mashed potatoes.
    B: That’s nice. She’ll like that.

11. A: I’m going to call the doctor. You have a fever, chills, and a stomach ache.
    B: No, don’t call a doctor. I’ll be okay.
    A: I’m worried. I ______ the doctor! And that’s it!
PRACTICE 21. Using the simple present to express future time. (Chart 3-8)

Directions: Use any of the verbs in the list to complete the sentences. Use the simple present to express future time.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>arrive</th>
<th>depart</th>
<th>get in</th>
<th>open</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>end</td>
<td>land</td>
<td>start</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>close</td>
<td>finish</td>
<td>leave</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A: What time __________ class __________ tomorrow morning?  
   B: It __________ at eight o’clock sharp.

2. A: The coffee shop __________________ at seven o’clock tomorrow morning. I’ll meet you there at 7:15.  
   B: Okay. I’ll be there.

3. A: What time are you going to go to the airport tonight?  
   B: Tom’s plane __________ around 7:15, but I think I’ll go a little early in case it gets in ahead of schedule.

4. A: What’s the hurry?  
   B: I’ve got to take a shower, change clothes, and get to the theater fast. The play __________ in forty-five minutes, and I don’t want to miss the beginning.

5. A: What time __________ the dry cleaning shop __________ this evening?  
   If I don’t get there in time, I’ll have nothing to wear to the banquet tonight.  
   B: It __________ at 6:00. I can pick up your dry cleaning for you.  
   A: Hey, thanks! That’ll really help!

6. A: What time should we go to the theater tomorrow night?  
   B: The doors __________ at 6:00 P.M., but we don’t need to be there that early. The show __________ at 8:00.  
   If we __________ at the theater by 7:15, we’ll be there in plenty of time. The show __________ around 10:30, so we can be back home by a little after 11:00.

7. A: I’ve enjoyed my visit with you, but tomorrow I have to go back home.  
   A: What time __________ your flight __________ tomorrow?  
   B: It __________ at 12:34 P.M. I want to be at the airport an hour early, so we should leave here around 10:30, if that’s okay with you.  
   A: Sure. What time __________ your flight __________ in Mexico City?  
   B: It’s about a three-hour flight. I’ll get in around 4:30 Mexico City time.
PRACTICE 22. Using BE ABOUT TO. (Chart 3-9)
Directions: Write sentences using be about to. Use each verb in the list only once.

| break | leave | rain | ring | write |

1. A: What does it usually mean if the sky is cloudy and dark?
   B: It usually means that it _____ is about to rain _____.

2. A: What does it probably mean if Jack is standing by the front door with his car keys in his hand?
   B: It means that he ___________________________ the house.

3. A: What does it mean if the teacher picks up a piece of chalk?
   B: It probably means that she ___________________________ on the board.

4. A: You’re in the kitchen. The oven timer has only a few seconds left. What does that mean?
   B: The timer ___________________________.

5. A: The heavy snow is making the tree branches hang down. One is almost touching the ground. What’s going to happen?
   B: The branch _______ probably ___________________________.

PRACTICE 23. Parallel verbs. (Chart 3-10)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses.

1. My classmates are going to meet at Danny’s and (study) study together tonight.

2. Tomorrow the sun will rise at 6:34 and (set) ______________ at 8:59.

3. Last night, I was listening to music and (do) ______________ my homework when Kim stopped by.

4. Next weekend, Nick is going to meet his friends downtown and (go) ______________ to a soccer game.

5. My pen slipped out of my hand and (fall) ______________ to the floor.

6. Alex is at his computer. He (write) ______________ e-mails and (wait) ______________ for responses.
7. Every morning without exception, Mrs. Carter (take) ________________ her dog for a walk
and (buy) ________________ a newspaper at Charlie's newsstand.

8. Before I (go) ________________ to your boss and (tell) ________________ her about
your mistake, I want to give you an opportunity to explain it to her yourself.

9. Next month, I (take) ________________ my vacation and (forget) ________________
about everything that is connected to my job.

10. Kathy thinks I was the cause of her problems, but I wasn’t. Someday she (discover)
_______________ the truth and (apologize) ________________ to me.

◊ PRACTICE 24. Error analysis. (Chapter 3)
Directions: Correct the errors.

1. My friends will -to- join us after work.

2. Maybe the rain stops soon.

3. On Friday, our school close early so teachers can go to a workshop.

4. My husband and I will intend to be at your graduation.

5. Our company is going to sells computer equipment to schools.

6. Give grandpa a hug. He's about to leaving.

7. Mr. Scott is going to retire and moving to a warmer climate.

8. If your soccer team will win the championship tomorrow, we’ll have a big celebration for you.

9. I maybe won’t be able to meet you for coffee.

10. I bought this cloth because I will make some curtains for my bedroom.

11. I moving to London when I will finish my education here.

12. Are you going go to the meeting?

13. I opened the door and walk to the front of the room.

14. When will you be going to move into your new apartment?
PRACTICE 25. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 → 3)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using a form of the words in parentheses.

1. It's getting late, but before I (go) ________ to bed, I (finish) ___________ my homework and (write) ___________ a couple of e-mails.

2. While I (make) ___________ dinner last night, some grease (spill) ___________ out of the frying pan and (catch) ___________ on fire. When the smoke detector on the ceiling (start) ___________ to buzz, my roommate (run) ___________ into the kitchen to find out what was wrong. He (think) ___________ that the house was on fire!

3. Mark is obsessed with video games. He (play) ___________ video games morning, noon, and night. Sometimes he (cut) ___________ class to play them. Right now he (do, not) ___________ very well in school. If he (study, not) ___________ harder and (go) ___________ to class every day, he (flunk) ___________ out of school.

4. Sometimes my daughter, Susie, has temper tantrums. She (cry) ___________ and (stomp) ___________ her feet when she (get) ___________ angry. Yesterday when she (get) ___________ angry, she (pick) ___________ up a toy car and (throw) ___________ it at her little brother. Luckily, the car (hit, not) ___________ him. Susie (feel) ___________ very bad. She (apologize) ___________ to her brother and (kiss) ___________ him.

5. It's October now. The weather (begin) ___________ to get colder. It (begin) ___________ to get cold every October. I (like, not) ___________ winter, but I (think) ___________ autumn is beautiful. In a couple of weeks, my friend and I (take) ___________ a weekend trip to the country if the weather (be) ___________ nice. We (drive) ___________ through the river valley and (enjoy) ___________ the colors of fall.
6. Jane (meet) __________________ me at the airport when my plane (arrive) __________________ tomorrow.

7. If I (see) ___________ Mike tomorrow, I (tell) ___________ him about the party.

8. I go to New York often. When I (be) ___________ in New York, I usually (see) ___________ a Broadway play.

9. When I (be) ___________ in New York next week, I (stay) ___________ at the Park Plaza Hotel.

10. Cindy and I (go) ___________ to the beach tomorrow if the weather (be) ___________ warm and sunny.

11. Jack (watch) ___________ a football game on TV right now. As soon as the game (be) ___________ over, he (mow) ___________ the grass in the back yard.

12. As soon as the test (be) ___________ over in class yesterday, the students (leave) ___________ the room.

13. As soon as I (get) ___________ home every day, my children always (run) ___________ to the door to meet me.

14. A: I’ll lend you my bike if I (need, not) ___________ it tomorrow.
    B: Thanks.
15. A: Everyone in the office (plan) ________________ to come to the annual company picnic tomorrow. (you, come) ________________?
   B: Of course!

16. A: How (you, get, usually) ________________ to work?
   B: I (take) ________________ the commuter train every morning.

17. This morning, Bob (comb) ________________ his hair when the comb (break) _________________. So he (finish) ________________ combing his hair with his fingers and (rush) ________________ out the door to class.

18. I'm exhausted! When I (get) ________________ home tonight, I (read) ________________ the paper and (watch) ________________ the news. I (do, not) ________________ any work around the house.

19. Yesterday I (see) ________________ the man who stole the radio from my car last Friday. I (run) ________________ after him, (catch) ________________ him, and (knock) ________________ him down. A passerby (go) ________________ to call the police. I (sit) ________________ on the man while I (wait) ________________ for them to come. After they (get) ________________ there and (understand) ________________ the situation, they (put) ________________ handcuffs on him and (take) ________________ him to jail.

20. A: My cousin (have) ________________ a new cat. She now (have) ________________ four cats.
   B: Why (she, have) ________________ so many?
   A: To catch the mice in her house.
   B: (you, have) ________________ any cats?
   A: No, and I (get, not) ________________ any. I (have, not) ________________ mice in my house.
CHAPTER 4
The Present Perfect and the Past Perfect

◊ PRACTICE 1. Forms of the present perfect. (Charts 4-1 → 4-3)

Directions: Complete the dialogues with the given verbs and any words in parentheses. Use the present perfect.

1. eat
A: (you, ever) __Have you ever eaten________ pepperoni pizza?
B: Yes, I _______. I _______ pepperoni pizza many times. OR
No, I _______. I (never) _______ pepperoni pizza.

2. talk
A: (you, ever) ________________________ to a famous person?
B: Yes, I _______. I ________________________ to a lot of famous people. OR
No, I _______. I (never) ________________________ to a famous person.

3. rent
A: (Erica, ever) ___________________________ a car?
B: Yes, she _______. She ___________________________ a car many times. OR
No, she _______. She (never) ___________________________ a car.

4. see
A: (you, ever) ___________________________ a shooting star?
B: Yes, I _______. I ___________________________ a lot of shooting stars. OR
No, I _______. I (never) ___________________________ a shooting star.

5. catch
A: (Joe, ever) ___________________________ a big fish?
B: Yes, he _______. He ___________________________ lots of big fish. OR
No, he _______. He (never) ___________________________ a big fish.
6. A: (you, ever) __________________________ a bad sunburn?
   B: Yes, I ___________. I ______________ a bad sunburn several times. OR
   No, I _______________. I (never) __________________________ a bad
   sunburn.

◊ PRACTICE 2. The present perfect. (Charts 4-1 → 4-3)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the present perfect of the verbs in parentheses.

1. A cell phone is so convenient. I (want) __________________________ one since they were
   available for sale.

2. I quit eating meat when I was in college. I (be) __________________________ a strict
   vegetarian for several years and feel very healthy.

3. We got a dog because we live in an isolated area. She (be) __________________________ a
   wonderful watchdog for us.

4. We (fly) __________________________ that airline many times because the service is excellent.

5. Our neighbors (pick up, not) __________________________ their mail yet. They may
   not be back from their trip.

6. Vivian (change) __________________________ her hair color so many times that no one can
   remember her natural color.

7. Our teacher (correct, already) __________________________ our tests, but she
   (return, not) __________________________ them yet.

8. A: Jose left two messages on my answering machine. I wonder what he wants.
   B: Maybe he just wants to talk. He said he (talk, not) __________________________
   to you in a long time.

9. My parents (need) __________________________ a new car for several months. They (look)
   __________________________ in lots of car showrooms, but they can’t agree on what kind of car
   to buy.

10. A: (you, have) ________________________ your flu shot this year? I got mine last week.
    B: No, but I will. I (get) __________________________ one every year for the past three years.
        My doctor says it’s a good idea after the age of 50.
GROUP I. Simple form, simple past, and past participle are the same.

Example: cost → cost → cost

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>hurt</th>
<th>hurt</th>
<th>hurt</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GROUP II. The vowel changes: i → a → u.

Example: begin → began → begun

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ring</th>
<th>rang</th>
<th>rung</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GROUP III. Simple past and past participle are the same.

Example: find → found → found

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>win</th>
<th>won</th>
<th>won</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRÁCTICE 4. The present perfect. (Charts 4-1 → 4-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the present perfect of the verbs in the list and any words in parentheses. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>eat</th>
<th>look</th>
<th>save</th>
<th>use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>give</td>
<td>play</td>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>wear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>improve</td>
<td>rise</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>win</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. People **have used** leather to make shoes for hundreds of years.

2. The night is over. It’s daytime now. The sun **is rising**.

3. I **never** ___________ golf, but I’d like to. It looks like fun.

4. Our team is great. They **have won** all of their games so far this year. They haven’t lost a single game.

5. Amy must be mad at me. She **not** ___________ one word to me all evening. I wonder what I did to make her angry.

6. The cat must be sick. He **not** ___________ any food for two days. We’d better call the vet.

7. Our teacher **has given** us a lot of tests and quizzes since the beginning of the term.

8. We put a little money in our savings account every month. We want to buy a car, but we **not** ___________ enough money yet. We’ll have enough in a few more months.

9. **(you, ever)** ___________ outdoors for an entire night? I mean without a tent, with nothing between you and the stars?

10. My aunt puts on a wig whenever she goes out, but I **never** ___________ a wig in my whole life.

11. Paul’s health **has improved** a lot since he started eating the right kinds of food, exercising regularly, and handling the stress in his life. He’s never felt better.

12. I can’t find my keys. I **have looked** everywhere—in all my pockets, in my briefcase, in my desk. They’re gone.
PRACTICE 5. The present perfect vs. the simple past. (Charts 4-3 and 4-4)
Directions: Write F if the activity or situation is finished and C if it continues to the present.

1. C My grandfather has worked since he was in high school.
2. F My grandmother worked for 20 years.
3. F I finished my work two hours ago.
4. F I have already finished my work, so I’m leaving the office.
5. My father has been sick since yesterday.
6. Jane was sick last Monday.
7. Tom has already left. He’s not here.
8. Tom left five minutes ago.
9. I have known Max Shell since we were children.
10. The baby has had a fever since midnight. I think I’ll call the doctor.
11. The baby had a fever all night, but he’s better now.
12. I have had the flu several times in my lifetime.
13. I had the flu last year.
14. Sue has had the flu since last Friday.

PRACTICE 6. Review: irregular verbs. (Charts 2-6, 2-7, and 4-1)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the simple past and the present perfect of the given verbs.

1. begin I began a new diet and exercise program last week. I have begun lots of new diet and exercise programs in my lifetime.
2. bend I down to pick up my young son from his crib this morning. I down to pick him up many times since he was born.
3. broadcast The radio news about a terrible earthquake in Iran last week. The radio news about Iran every day since the earthquake occurred there.
4. catch I a cold last week. I a lot of colds in my lifetime.
5. come A tourist into Mr. Nasser’s jewelry store after lunch. A lot of tourists into his store since he opened it last year.
6. cut I some flowers from my garden yesterday. I lots of flowers from my garden so far this summer.
7. dig The workers a hole to fix the leak in the water pipe. They many holes to fix water leaks since the earthquake.
8. **draw**  The artist ________ a picture of a sunset yesterday. She ________ many pictures of sunsets in her lifetime.

9. **feed**  I ________ birds at the park yesterday. I ________ birds at the park every day since I lost my job.

10. **fight**  We ________ a war last year. We ________ several wars since we became an independent country.

11. **forget**  I ________ to turn off the stove after dinner. I ________ to turn off the stove a lot of times in my lifetime.

12. **hide**  The children ________ in the basement yesterday. They ________ in the basement often since they discovered a secret place there.

13. **hit**  The baseball player ________ the ball out of the stadium yesterday. He ________ a lot of home runs since he joined our team.

14. **hold**  My husband ________ the door open for me when he entered the restaurant. He ________ a door open for me many times since we met each other.

15. **keep**  During the discussion yesterday, I ________ my opinion to myself. I ________ my opinions to myself a lot of times in my lifetime.

16. **lead**  Mary ________ the group discussion at the conference. She ________ group discussions many times since she started going to conferences.

17. **lose**  Eddie ________ money at the racetrack yesterday. He ________ money at the racetrack lots of times in his lifetime.
18. meet I ______ two new people in my class yesterday. I ______ a lot of new people since I started going to school here.

19. ride I ______ the bus to work yesterday. I ______ the bus to work many times since I got a job downtown.

20. ring The doorbell ______ a few minutes ago. The doorbell ______ ______ three times so far today.

21. see I ______ a good movie yesterday. I ______ a lot of good movies in my lifetime.

22. steal The fox ______ a chicken from the farmer's yard. The fox ______ ______ three chickens so far this month.

23. stick I ______ a stamp on the corner of the envelope. I ______ ______ lots of stamps on envelopes in my lifetime.

24. sweep I ______ the floor of my apartment yesterday. I ______ ______ the floor of my apartment lots of times since I moved in.

25. take I ______ a test yesterday. I ______ ______ lots of tests in my life as a student.

26. upset The Smith children ______ Mr. Jordan when they broke his window. Because they are careless and noisy, they ______ ______ Mr. Jordan many times since they moved in next door.

27. withdraw I ______ ______ some money from my bank account yesterday. I ______ ______ ______ more than three hundred dollars from my bank account so far this month.

28. write I ______ a letter to a friend last night. I ______ ______ lots of letters to my friends in my lifetime.

◊ PRACTICE 7. The present perfect vs. the simple past. (Chart 4-4)

Directions: Fill in the blanks with the present perfect or simple past form of the verb.

1. I ______ ______ ______ to Toronto last year for business. I ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ there several times since then.


4. Before Joe (move) ____________ to Vancouver, he (work) ____________ on cruise ships as a cook.

5. My college roommate came from Ghana. We (room) ________________ together for three years, and then she (return) ________________ home.

6. My grandfather (be) ________________ a great golfer for most of his life, but he (die) ________________ last year.

7. My father (play) ________________ competitive golf for most of his life and really enjoys it.

8. Since my husband began working the night shift, he (sleep, not) ________________ very well.

9. When I lived in Alaska, the long daylight hours (make) ________________ it difficult for me to sleep.

10. Since I was a child, I (enjoy) ________________ collecting rocks from the beach.

11. When I was a child, my friends (collect) ________________ rocks with me.

◊ PRACTICE 8. Review: irregular verbs. (Charts 2-6, 2-7, and 4-1)

Directions: This is a review of irregular verbs. Complete the sentences with the simple past or the present perfect of the given verbs and any words in parentheses.

1. go
   a. I ____________ to every play at the local theater so far this year.
   b. My whole family ____________ to the play last weekend.

2. give
   a. Jane ____________ me a ride home from work today.
   b. (she, ever) ____________ Has she ever given ____________ you a ride home since she started working in your department?

3. fall
   a. I ________________ down many times in my lifetime, but never hard enough to really hurt myself or break a bone.
   b. Mike ________________ down many times during football practice yesterday.

4. break
   a. (you, ever) ________________ a bone in your body?
   b. I ________________ my leg when I was ten years old. I jumped off the roof of my house.

5. shake
   a. In my entire lifetime, I (never) ________________ hands with a famous movie star.
   b. In 2000, I ________________ hands with a famous soccer player.
6. hear  
   a. I ____________ you practicing your trumpet late last night.  
   b. In fact, I ______________ you practicing every night for two weeks. 

7. fly  
   a. Mike is a commercial airline pilot. Yesterday he ____________ from  
      Tokyo to Los Angeles.  
   b. Mike ________________ to many places in the world since he became a  
      pilot. 

8. wear  
   a. Carol really likes her new leather jacket. She ________________ it every  
      day since she bought it.  
   b. She ________________ her new leather jacket to the opera last night. 

9. build  
   a. (you, ever) ____________________________ a piece of furniture?  
   b. My daughter ________________ a table in her woodworking class at the high  
      school last year. 

10. teach  
    b. She ________________ in Hungary last year on an exchange program. 

11. find  
    a. In your lifetime, (you, ever) ____________________________ something  
       really valuable?  
    b. My sister ________________ a very expensive diamond ring in the park last  
       year. 

12. drive  
    a. After I took Danny to school, I ________________ straight to work.  
    b. I'm an experienced driver, but I (never) ____________________________  
       a bus or a big truck.
13. sing  
a. I ____________ a duet with my mother at the art benefit last night.
b. We _______________ together ever since I was a small child.

14. run  
a. I (never) ________________ in a marathon race, and I don’t intend to.
b. I’m out of breath because I _______________ all the way over here.

15. tell  
a. Last night, my brother _____________ me a secret.
b. He ______________ me lots of secrets in his lifetime.

16. stand  
a. When I visited the United Nations last summer, I _______________ in the main gallery and felt a great sense of history.
b. Many great world leaders _______________ there over the years.

17. spend  
a. I _______________ all of my money at the mall yesterday.
b. I don’t have my rent money this month. I (already) ________________ it on other things.

18. make  
a. I consider myself fortunate because I _______________ many good friends in my lifetime.
b. I _______________ a terrible mistake last night. I forgot that my friend had invited me to his apartment for dinner.

19. rise  
a. The price of flour _______________ a lot since February.
b. When his name was announced, Jack _______________ from his seat and walked to the podium to receive his award.

20. feel  
a. I _______________ terrible yesterday, so I stayed in bed.
b. I _______________ terrible for a week now. I’d better see a doctor.

◊ PRACTICE 9. SINCE vs. FOR. (Chart 4-5)
Directions: Complete the sentences with since or for.

1. David has worked for the power company __________ 1999.
2. His brother has worked for the power company __________ five years.
3. I have known Peter Gow ___________ September.
4. I’ve known his sister ___________ three months.
5. Jonas has walked with a limp ___________ many years.
6. He’s had a bad leg ___________ he was in the war.
7. Rachel hasn’t been in class ___________ last Tuesday.
8. She hasn’t been in class ___________ three days.
9. My vision has improved ___________ I got new reading glasses.
10. I've had a toothache ___________ yesterday morning.
11. I've had this toothache ___________ thirty-six hours.
12. I've had a cold ___________ almost a week.
13. Jane hasn’t worked ___________ last summer when the factory closed down.

◊ PRACTICE 10. Present perfect with SINCE and FOR. (Chart 4-5)
Directions: Rewrite the sentences using since or for.

1. I was in this class a month ago, and I am in this class now.
   → I have been in this class for a month.
2. I knew my teacher in September, and I know her now.
3. Sam wanted a dog two years ago, and he wants one now.
4. Sara needed a new car last year, and she still needs one.
5. Our professor was sick a week ago, and she is still sick.
6. They live in Canada. They moved there in December.
8. Tom works at a fast-food restaurant. He got the job three weeks ago.

◊ PRACTICE 11. Present perfect and simple past with time words. (Charts 4-1 → 4-5)
Directions: Check all the phrases that correctly complete the sentences. Mark those that don’t with a dash. The first item has been started for you.

1. The Petersons took a trip
    __✓__ two weeks ago.
    ___ since yesterday.
    __✓__ yesterday.
    ___ last year.
    ___ since last year.
    ___ several months ago.
    ___ since last month.
    ___ the day before yesterday.
    ___ in March.

2. The Petersons have been out of town
    ___ the day before yesterday.
    ___ one month ago.
    ___ since Friday.
    ___ last week.
    ___ since last week.
    ___ in April last year.
    ___ several weeks ago.
    ___ for several weeks.
PRACTICE 12. SINCE-clauses. (Chart 4-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. Use the present perfect or the simple past.

1. Carol and I are old friends. I (know) ______ have known ______ her since I (be) ______ was ______
a freshman in high school.

2. Maria (have) ______________________ a lot of problems since she (come) ______________________ to this country.

3. I (experience, not) __________________________________ any problems since I (come) ______________________ here.

4. Since the semester (begin) ______________________, our teacher (give) ______________________ four tests.

5. Mike (be) ______________________ in school since he (be) ______________________ six years old.

6. My mother (be, not) ______________________ in school since she (graduate) ______________________ from college in 1978.

7. Since I (start) ______________________ doing this exercise, I (complete) ______________________ six sentences.

8. Since soccer season (begin) ______________________, our son (have, not) ______________________
   ______________________ much free time.

9. Our long-distance phone calls (become) ______________________ less expensive since we (change) ______________________ to a different telephone company.

10. Our phone bill (rise) ______________________ since we (buy) ______________________ a cell phone.

PRACTICE 13. The present perfect progressive. (Charts 4-6 and 4-7)

Directions: Use the given information to complete the dialogues. Use the present perfect progressive.

1. Eric is studying. He started to study at seven o’clock. It is now nine o’clock.
   A: How long ______ has Eric been studying ______?
   B: He’s been studying ______________ for __________ two hours ______________________.

2. Kathy is working at the computer. She began to work at the computer at two o’clock. It is
   now three o’clock.
   A: How long ______ has Kathy been working at the computer ______?
   B: She’s been working ______________ since __________ two o’clock ______________________.
3. It began to **rain** two days ago. It is still raining.
   A: How long ____________________________ for ____________________________.
   B: It ____________________________ for ____________________________.

4. Liz is reading. She began to **read** at ten o’clock. It is now ten-thirty.
   A: How long ____________________________ for ____________________________.
   B: She ____________________________ for ____________________________.

5. Boris began to **study** English in 2001. He is still studying **English**.
   A: How long ____________________________ since ____________________________.
   B: He ____________________________ since ____________________________.

6. Three months ago, Nicole started to **work** at the Silk Road Clothing Store.
   A: How long ____________________________ for ____________________________.
   B: She ____________________________ for ____________________________.

7. Ms. Rice started to **teach** at this school in September 2001.
   A: How long ____________________________ since ____________________________.
   B: She ____________________________ since ____________________________.

8. Mr. Fisher **drives** a Chevy. He bought it twelve years ago.
   A: How long ____________________________ for ____________________________.
   B: He ____________________________ for ____________________________.

9. Mrs. Taylor is **waiting** to see her doctor. She arrived at the waiting room at two o’clock. It is now three-thirty.
   A: How long ____________________________ for ____________________________.
   B: She ____________________________ for ____________________________.

10. Ted and Erica started to **play** tennis at two o’clock. It’s now four-thirty.
    A: How long ____________________________ for ____________________________.
    B: They ____________________________ since ____________________________.

◊ **PRACTICE 14. The present perfect progressive.** (Charts 4-6 and 4-7)

*Directions*: Choose the correct verb form.

1. Where have you been? I ______ for you for over an hour!
   A. am waiting  B. have been waiting

2. I’m exhausted! I ______ for the last eight hours without a break.
   A. am working  B. have been working

3. Shhh! Susan ______. Let’s not make any noise. We don’t want to wake her up.
   A. is sleeping  B. has been sleeping
4. Annie, go upstairs and wake your brother up. He _____ for over ten hours. He has chores to do.
   A. is sleeping        B. has been sleeping

5. Erin has never gone camping. She _____ in a tent.
   A. has never slept     B. has never been sleeping

6. This is a great shirt! I _____ it at least a dozen times, and it still looks like new.
   A. have washed         B. have been washing

7. Aren’t you about finished with the dishes? You _____ dishes for thirty minutes or more. How long can it take to wash dishes?
   A. have washed         B. have been washing

8. We _____ to the Steak House restaurant many times. The food is excellent.
   A. have gone           B. have been going

Practice 15. Already, Still, Yet, Anymore. (Chart 4-8)
Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. I haven’t finished my homework yet. I’m _____ working on it.
   A. already  B. still  C. yet  D. anymore

2. Top Rock Videos used to be my favorite TV show, but I have stopped watching it. I don’t watch it _____.
   A. already  B. still  C. yet  D. anymore

3. I don’t have to take any more math classes. I’ve _____ taken all the required courses.
   A. already  B. still  C. yet  D. anymore

4. I used to nearly choke in an airplane because of all the smoke in the cabin. But smoking is now forbidden by law on all domestic flights. You can’t smoke in an airplane _____.
   A. already  B. still  C. yet  D. anymore

5. I’m not quite ready to leave. I haven’t finished packing my suitcase _____.
   A. already  B. still  C. yet  D. anymore

6. “Don’t you have a class at two?”
   “Yeah, why?”
   “Look at your watch.”
   “Oh my gosh, it’s _____ past two! Bye!”
   A. already  B. still  C. yet  D. anymore

7. Don’t sit there! I painted that chair yesterday, and the paint isn’t completely dry _____.
   A. already  B. still  C. yet  D. anymore

8. 1448 South 45th Street is Joe’s old address. He doesn’t live there _____.
   A. already  B. still  C. yet  D. anymore

9. Mr. Wood is eighty-eight years old, but he _____ goes into his office every day.
   A. already  B. still  C. yet  D. anymore
"Are you going to drive to Woodville with us for the street festival Saturday?"

"I don't know. I might. I haven't made up my mind _______.”

A. already  B. still  C. yet  D. anymore

◊ PRACTICE 16. ALREADY, STILL, YET, ANYMORE. (Chart 4-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with already, yet, still, or anymore.

1. A: Has Dennis graduated _______?
   B: No. He's still in school.

2. A: I'm hungry. How about you? Did you eat _______?
   B: No. Did you?
   A: Nope. Let's go eat lunch.

3. A: Do you _______ live on Fifth Street?
   B: Not anymore. I moved.

4. A: Has Karen found a new apartment _______?
   B: Not that I know of. She's still living on Elm Street.

5. A: Do you _______ love me?
   B: Of course I do! I love you very much.

6. A: Is the baby _______ sleeping?
   B: Yes. Shhh. We don't want to wake him up.

7. A: Is the baby asleep _______?
   B: I think so. I don't hear anything from the nursery. I put him down for his nap fifteen minutes ago, so I'm pretty sure he's asleep by now.

8. It started raining an hour ago. We can't go for a walk because it's _______ raining. I hope it stops soon.

9. Look! The rain has stopped. It isn't raining _______. Let's go for a walk.

10. I didn't understand this chapter in my biology book when I read it yesterday. Since then, I've read it three more times, but I _______ don't understand it.

11. A: Is Anne home _______?
    B: No, she isn't. I'm getting worried. She was supposed to be home at eight. It's almost nine, and she _______ isn't here.
    A: Don't worry. She'll probably be here any minute.
12. A: I’m going to have another sandwich.
   B: What? You just ate three sandwiches!
   A: I know, but I’m not full ____________ . I’m ____________ hungry.

13. A: Would you like to see today’s newspaper?
   B: Thanks, but I’ve ____________ read it.

14. A: Did you try to call Peter again?
   B: Yes, but the line was ____________ busy. I’ll try again in a few minutes.

15. A: How does Dick like his job at the cafe?
   B: He doesn’t work there ____________ . He found a new job.

16. A: Is your younger sister a college student?
   B: No. She’s ____________ in high school.

17. A: When are you going to make Tommy’s birthday cake?
   B: I’ve ____________ made it.

18. A: How did you do on your calculus exam?
   B: I haven’t taken it ____________ . The exam is tomorrow. I’m ____________ studying for it.

◊ PRACTICE 17. Verb tense review. (Chapters 1 → 4)
Directions: Read the conversation between Ann and Ben. Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

BEN: I (need) __________ need to find a job. Where (be) __________ a good place for a
student to work?

ANN: (you, work, ever) __________ at a restaurant?

BEN: Yes. I (work) __________
   at several restaurants. I (have) __________ a job as a
dishwasher last fall.
ANN: Where?

BEN: At The Bistro, a little cafe on First Street.

ANN: How long (you, work) ________________ there?

BEN: For two months.

ANN: I (work) ________________ in a lot of restaurants, but I (have, never) ________________ a dishwashing job. How (you, like) ________________ your job as a dishwasher?

BEN: I (like, not) ________________ it very much. It (be) ________________ hard work for low pay.

ANN: Where (you, work) ________________ at present?

BEN: I (have, not) ________________ a job right now. I (have, not) ________________ a job since I (quit) ________________ the dishwashing one.

ANN: (you, look) ________________ for a part-time or a full-time job?

BEN: A part-time job, maybe twenty hours a week.

ANN: I (go) ________________ to Al’s Place tomorrow to see about a job. The restaurant (look) ________________ for help. Why don’t you come along with me?

BEN: Thanks. I think I (do) ________________ that. I (look, never) ________________ for a job at Al’s Place before. Maybe the pay (be) ________________ better than at The Bistro.

ANN: I (know, not) ________________ . We (find) ________________ out when we (go) ________________ there tomorrow.

ª PRACTICE 18. The present perfect vs. the past perfect. (Chart 4-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the word in parentheses. Use the present perfect or the past perfect.

1. I am not hungry. I (eat, already) ________________ have already eaten ________________.

2. I was not hungry. I (eat, already) ________________ had already eaten ________________.

3. It’s ten o’clock. I (finish, already) ________________ my homework, so I’m going to go to bed.
4. Last night I went to bed at ten o'clock. I (finish, already) ____________________________ my homework.

5. By the time* I went to bed last night, I (finish, already) ____________________________ my homework.

6. Sam's parties usually start late, so I was surprised that his party (start, already) ____________________________ by the time I got there.

7. Look at all the people who are here! The party (start, already) ____________________________

8. Carol missed her plane yesterday because of a traffic jam on her way to the airport. By the time she got to the airport, her plane (leave, already) _____________________________.

◊ PRACTICE 19. The past progressive vs. the past perfect. (Chart 4-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. Use the past progressive or the past perfect.

1. When I left for school this morning, it (rain) ____________________________, so I used my umbrella.

2. By the time class was over this morning, the rain (stop) ____________________________, so I didn't need my umbrella anymore.

3. Last night I started to study at 7:30. Dick came at 7:35. I (study) ____________________________ when Dick came.

4. Last night I started to study at 7:30. I finished studying at 9:00. Dan came at 9:30. By the time Dan came, I (finish) ____________________________ my homework.

5. When I walked into the kitchen after dinner last night, my wife (wash) ____________________________ the dishes, so I picked up a dish towel to help her.

6. By the time I walked into the kitchen after dinner tonight, my husband (wash, already) ____________________________ the dishes and (put) ____________________________ them away.

*by the time = before.
PRACTICE 20. The past perfect. (Chart 4-9)

Directions: Read the passage and underline the past perfect verbs and their modifying adverbs always and never. Then complete the sentences that follow the passage. Use the past perfect in your completions.

(1) Alan Green got married for the first time at age 49. His new life is very different because he has had to change many old habits. For example, before his marriage, he had always watched TV during dinner, but his wife likes to talk at dinnertime, so now the TV is off.

(2) Until his marriage, Alan had always read the front page of the newspaper first, but his wife likes to read the front page first, too, so now Alan reads the sports page first.

(3) Until he got married, he had never let anyone else choose the radio station in the car. He had always listened to exactly what he wanted to listen to. But his wife likes to choose what’s on the radio when she’s in the car with him.

(4) When he was a bachelor, Alan had always left his dirty socks on the floor. Now he picks them up and puts them in the laundry basket.

(5) Before he was married, he’d never put the cap back on the toothpaste. He left it off. His wife prefers to have the cap back on. She also squeezes from the bottom of the tube, and Alan doesn’t. Alan can’t remember to put the cap back on, so now they have separate toothpaste tubes.

(6) Alan had never shared the TV remote control with anyone before he got married. He still likes to have control of the TV remote, but he doesn’t say anything when his wife uses it.

Complete these sentences.

1. Until Alan got married, he __________ had always watched __________ TV during dinner.

2. Before his marriage, he _______________ the front page of the newspaper first.

3. Prior to getting married, he _______________ other people choose the station on his car radio.

4. Until he began married life, he _______________ his dirty socks on the floor.

5. Before getting married, he _______________ the toothpaste cap back on.

6. Until he had a wife who also liked to use the TV remote control, he _______________ _______________ the remote with anyone.
PRACTICE 21. Verb tense review. (Chapters 2 and 4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses.

1. A: (you, enjoy) Did you enjoy the concert last night?
   B: Very much. I (go, not) hadn’t gone to a concert in a long time.

2. A: (you, see) John yesterday?
   B: Yes, I did. It (be) good to see him again. I (see, not)_____________________ him in a long time.

3. A: Hi, Jim! It’s good to see you again. I (see, not)____________________ you in weeks.
   B: Hi, Sue! It (be) good to see you again, too. I (see, not)____________________ you since the end of last semester. How’s everything going?

4. A: (you, get) to class on time yesterday morning?
   B: No. By the time I (get) there, it (begin, already)____________________

5. A: I called Ana, but I couldn’t talk to her.
   B: Why not?
   A: She (go, already)____________________ to bed, and her sister didn’t want to wake her up for a phone call.

6. A: You’re a wonderful artist. I love your watercolor paintings of the river valley.
   B: Thank you. I (paint)_____________________ the same valley many times because it has such interesting light at different times of the day.

7. A: I had a scare yesterday. I (watch)____________________ the news when a tornado warning flashed on the screen.
   B: What (you, do)____________________?
   A: I (run)____________________ to the basement of the house.

8. A: (you, go)____________________ out to eat last night?
   B: No. By the time I (get)____________________ home, my husband (make, already)____________________ dinner for us.
   A: How (be)____________________ it?
   B: Terrific! We (have)____________________ chicken, rice, and a salad. While we (eat)____________________, George Drake (stop)____________________ by to visit us, so we (invite)____________________ him to join us for dinner.
PRACTICE 22. Error analysis. (Chapters 1 – 4)

Directions: Correct the errors.

1. Where have you been? I've been waiting for you for an hour.

2. Anna have been a soccer fan since a long time.

3. Since I have been a child, I liked to solve puzzles.

4. Have you ever want to travel around the world?

5. The family is at the hospital since they hear about the accident.

6. My sister is only 30 years old, but her hair has began to turn gray.

7. Jake has been working as a volunteer at the children's hospital several times.

8. Steve has worn his black suit only once since he has bought it.

9. My cousin is studying for medical school exams since last month.

10. The students are hearing rumors about their teacher's engagement for a week.

11. I don't know the results of my medical tests already. I'll find out soon.

12. Jean has been try to get online to go Internet shopping for an hour.

13. By the time Michelle unlocked the door and got into her apartment, the phone already stopped ringing.
CHAPTER 5
Asking Questions

PRACTICE 1. Preview: asking questions. (Charts 5-1 → 5-13)

Directions: Pretend that you are interviewing Anna, a member of your class. Write your name on
the first line, and then complete the dialogue with appropriate questions.

1. ME: Hi. My name is _________________________________. Our teacher
has asked me to interview you so that I can practice asking questions. Could I ask
you a few questions about yourself?
ANNA: Sure.

2. ME: Well, first of all, ______what is your name_________?
ANNA: Anna.

3. ME: ________________________________?
ANNA: Yes, that’s my first name.

4. ME: ________________________________?
ANNA: Polanski.

5. ME: ________________________________?
ME: Let me make sure I have that right. Your first name is Anna, A-N-N-A. And your last
name is Polanski, P-O-L-A-N-S-K-I. Right?
ANNA: That’s right.

6. ME: ________________________________?
ANNA: Poland.

7. ME: ________________________________?
ANNA: Warsaw. My hometown is Warsaw.

8. ME: ________________________________?
ANNA: Two weeks ago. I came to this country two weeks ago.

9. ME: ________________________________?
ANNA: To study. I came here because I wanted to study at this school.

10. ME: ________________________________?
ANNA: Biochemistry.
11. ME: ____________________________?
ANNA: I'm going to stay here for four years, or until I graduate.

12. ME: ____________________________?
ANNA: I'm living at my aunt and uncle's house.

13. ME: ____________________________?
ANNA: No, it isn't far from school.

14. ME: ____________________________?
ANNA: I'd say about ten blocks.

15. ME: ____________________________?
ANNA: Sometimes I take the bus, but usually I walk.

16. ME: You're lucky. I live far away from the school, so it takes me a long time to get here every day. But that's my only big complaint about living here. Otherwise, I like going to this school a lot. ____________________________?
ANNA: Very much.
ME: Well, thanks for the interview. I think I have enough information for the assignment. Nice to meet you.
ANNA: Nice to meet you, too.

◊ PRACTICE 2. Yes/no questions. (Chart 5-1)*

Directions: Write the correct question form. Use the information in B's response to create each question.

1. SIMPLE PRESENT
A: ____________________________
B: Yes, I like coffee.

2. SIMPLE PRESENT
A: ____________________________
B: Yes, Tom likes coffee.

3. PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
A: ____________________________
B: Yes, Ann is watching TV.

4. PRESENT PROGRESSIVE
A: ____________________________
B: Yes, I'm having lunch with Rob.

*Question forms of tenses and modals can be found in the following charts in the FEG 3e student book:
Simple present and present progressive: Chart 1-2, p. 4
Simple past: Chart 2-2, p. 26
Past progressive: Chart 2-9, p. 39
Simple future: Charts 3-2, p. 56, and 3-3, p. 59
Modal can: Chart 7-2, p. 191
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SIMPLE</th>
<th>PAST</th>
<th>A:</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Main Verb</th>
<th>Rest of Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B:</td>
<td>Sara walked to school.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PAST</th>
<th>PROGRESSIVE</th>
<th>A:</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Main Verb</th>
<th>Rest of Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B:</td>
<td>Ann was taking a nap.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SIMPLE</th>
<th>FUTURE</th>
<th>A:</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Main Verb</th>
<th>Rest of Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B:</td>
<td>Ted will come to the meeting.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>MODAL: CAN</th>
<th>A:</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Main Verb</th>
<th>Rest of Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B:</td>
<td>Rita can ride a bicycle.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>MAIN VERB: BE</th>
<th>SIMPLE</th>
<th>PRESENT</th>
<th>A:</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Rest of Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B:</td>
<td>Ann is a good artist.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>MAIN VERB: BE</th>
<th>SIMPLE</th>
<th>PAST</th>
<th>A:</th>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Rest of Sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B:</td>
<td>I was at the wedding.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRACTICE 3. Yes/no questions and short answers. (Charts 5-1 and 5-2)**

**Directions:** Complete Speaker A's questions with *do, does, is,* or *are.* Complete Speaker B's short answers.

1. A: I need a flashlight. _______ you have one?
   B: No, _______ don't.

2. A: _______ Africa the largest continent?
   B: No, _______ Asia is.

3. A: _______ ants eat other insects?
   B: Yes, _______.

4. A: _______ you going to be in class tomorrow?
   B: Yes, _______.

5. A: _______ all snakebites poisonous?
   B: No, _______.

6. A: _______ crocodiles lay eggs?
   B: Yes, _______.

Asking Questions 87
A: ________ it raining right now?
B: No, ________.

A: ________ that pen belong to you?
B: No, ________.

A: ________ you working on English grammar right now?
B: Yes, ________.

A: Mercury is a liquid metal used in thermometers. ________ mercury have a boiling point?
B: Yes, ________. It boils at 356.58°C.

◊ PRACTICE 4. Yes/no questions and short answers. (Charts 5-1 and 5-2)

Directions: Answer the questions honestly. Use short answers.

1. Do you know how to swim? __ [Yes, I do, OR No, I don’t.]
2. Does your mother speak Chinese? ____________________________
3. Are you going downtown tomorrow? __________________________
4. Will you be in class tomorrow? _____________________________
5. Can you play the guitar? _________________________________
6. Do you know how to play the violin? ______________________
7. Are we going to have a test on grammar tomorrow? ______
8. Can turtles swim? ________________________________
9. Should people smoke cigarettes? _________________________
10. Did you watch TV last night? ____________________________
11. Do you have a bicycle? _________________________________
12. Will class begin on time tomorrow? _______________________
13. Does class begin on time every day? _____________________
14. Were all of the students in class yesterday? ______________
15. Should the teacher speak more slowly? __________________
16. Is English grammar easy? ______________________________
17. Was this exercise difficult? _____________________________
PRACTICE 5. Yes/no questions and short answers. (Charts 5-1 and 5-2)

Directions: Complete Speaker A’s questions. Complete Speaker B’s short answers.

1. A: ______ Does Jane eat ______ lunch at the cafeteria every day?
   B: Yes, ______ she does. (Jane eats lunch at the cafeteria every day.)

2. A: ______ Do ______ your parents live nearby?
   B: No, ________ ________ (My parents don’t live nearby.)

3. A: ____________________________ to class yesterday?
   B: No, ____________________________ (Ann and Jim didn’t come to class yesterday.)

4. A: ____________________________ in your grammar workbook?
   B: Yes, ____________________________ (I’m writing in my grammar workbook.)

5. A: ____________________________ home last night?
   B: No, ____________________________ (I wasn’t home last night.)

6. A: ____________________________ in your astronomy class?
   B: Yes, ____________________________ (Tim Wilson is in my astronomy class.)

7. A: ____________________________ her work before she goes to bed?
   B: Yes, ____________________________ (Karen will finish her work before she goes to bed.)

8. A: ____________________________ under water?
   B: Yes, ____________________________ (Some birds can swim under water.)

9. A: ____________________________ at your homework for tomorrow yet?
   B: No, ____________________________ (I haven’t looked at my homework for tomorrow yet.)

PRACTICE 6. Yes/no and information questions. (Charts 5-1 and 5-2)

Directions: Complete the dialogues by writing Speaker A’s questions. Write Ø if no word is needed in a space.

1. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence
   A: Ø Did you hear the news yesterday?
   B: Yes, I did. (I heard the news yesterday.)

2. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence
   A: When did you hear the news?
   B: Yesterday. (I heard the news yesterday.)

3. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence
   A: Ø ____________________________
   B: Yes, he is. (Eric is reading today’s paper.)

4. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence
   A: ____________________________ Ø
   B: Today’s paper. (Eric is reading today’s paper.)
5. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence
A: ____________________________
B: Yes, I did. (I found my wallet.)

6. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence
A: ____________________________
B: On the floor of the car. (I found my wallet on the floor of the car.)

7. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence
A: ____________________________
B: Because he enjoys the exercise. (Mr. Li walks to work because he enjoys the exercise.)

8. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence
A: ____________________________
B: Yes, he does. (Mr. Li walks to work.)

9. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence
A: ____________________________
B: Yes, she will. (Ms. Cook will return to her office at one o'clock.)

10. (question word) helping verb subject main verb rest of sentence
A: ____________________________
B: At one o'clock. (Ms. Cook will return to her office at one o'clock.)

11. (question word) form of be subject rest of sentence
A: ____________________________
B: Yes, it is. (The orange juice is in the refrigerator.)

12. (question word) form of be subject rest of sentence
A: ____________________________
B: In the refrigerator. (The orange juice is in the refrigerator.)

◊ PRACTICE 7. Information questions. (Charts 5-1 → 5-3)
Directions: Create questions for the given answers. Use the information in parentheses. Use when, what time, where, or why. Pay special attention to the word order in the questions.

1. A: ____________________________ this evening?
   B: 9:30. (The fireworks start at 9:30 this evening.)

2. A: ____________________________ to see the principal?
   B: Because I need to get his signature on this application form. (I'm waiting to see the principal because I need to get his signature on this application form.)

3. A: ____________________________ her new job?
   B: Next Monday morning. (Rachel starts her new job next Monday morning.)
4. A: ________________________ home for work?
   B: Usually around 6:00. (I usually leave home for work around 6:00.)

5. A: ________________________ to the meeting?
   B: Because I fell asleep after dinner and didn’t wake up until 9:00. (I didn’t get to the meeting because I fell asleep after dinner and didn’t wake up until 9:00.)

6. A: ________________________ razor blades?
   B: At many different kinds of stores. (You can find razor blades at many different kinds of stores.)

7. A: ________________________ for home?
   B: Next Saturday. (I’m leaving for home next Saturday.)

8. A: ________________________ to finish this project?
   B: Next month. (I expect to finish this project next month.)

9. A: ________________________ Chinese?
   B: In Germany. (I studied Chinese in Germany.)
   A: ________________________ Chinese in Germany?
   B: Because there is a good Chinese language school there. (I studied Chinese in Germany because there is a good Chinese language school there.)
   A: ________________________ to China to study Chinese?
   B: Because I had a scholarship to study in Germany. (I didn’t go to China to study Chinese because I had a scholarship to study in Germany.)

◊ PRACTICE 8. Information questions. (Charts 5-1 → 5-3)

Directions: Create information questions. Use where, why, when, or what time.

1. A: ________________________ get up this morning?
   B: At 7:30. (I got up at 7:30 this morning.)

2. A: ________________________ today?
   B: At the cafeteria. (I ate lunch at the cafeteria today.)

3. A: ________________________ lunch?
   B: At 12:15. (I ate lunch at 12:15.)

4. A: ________________________ at the cafeteria?
   B: Because the food is good. (I eat lunch at the cafeteria because the food is good.)
5. A: ____________________________?  
   B: In Chicago. (My aunt and uncle live in Chicago.)

6. A: ____________________________ your aunt and uncle?  
   B: Next week. (I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle next week.)

7. A: ____________________________ tonight?  
   B: Around six. (I'll get home around six tonight.)

8. A: ____________________________ tonight?  
   B: At the library. (George is going to study at the library tonight.)

9. A: ____________________________ at the library?  
   B: Because it's quiet. (George studies at the library because it's quiet.)

10. A: ____________________________ a bus?  
    B: At that corner. (You can catch a bus at that corner.)

11. A: ____________________________?  
    B: Ten o'clock. (I have to leave at ten o'clock.)

    B: In Japan. (I was living in Japan in 1998.)

13. A: ____________________________ in their books?  
    B: Because they're working on an exercise. (The students are writing in their books because they're working on an exercise.)

14. A: ____________________________ you?  
    B: Around seven. (You should call me around seven.)

15. A: ____________________________ absent?  
    B: Because she's flying her kite in the park. (Yoko is absent because she's flying her kite in the park.)

◊ PRACTICE 9. Information questions with WHY. (Charts 5-1 → 5-3)  
Directions: Practice questions with why.

1. A: I was absent from class yesterday.  
    B: Why _______ ________ absent from class yesterday?  

2. A: I can't come to your party this weekend.  
    B: Why _______ ________ to my party this weekend?  

3. A: Tom went downtown yesterday.  
    B: Why _______ ________ downtown yesterday?
4. A: Ann won’t be in class tomorrow.
   B: Why ____________________________ in class tomorrow?

5. A: I need to go to the drugstore.
   B: Why ____________________________ to go to the drugstore?

6. A: I’m going to buy a new dictionary.
   B: Why ____________________________ a new dictionary?

7. A: I didn’t do my homework last night.
   B: Why ____________________________ your homework last night?

8. A: Anita is not coming to class tomorrow.
   B: Why ____________________________ to class tomorrow?

9. A: Joe and I are going to the bank after class.
   B: Why ____________________________ to the bank after class?

10. A: I didn’t eat breakfast this morning
    B: Why ____________________________ breakfast this morning?

11. A: Jack took a taxi to school today.
    B: Why ____________________________ a taxi to school today?

12. A: I don’t like the weather in this city.
    B: Why ____________________________ the weather in this city?

◊ PRACTICE 10. WHO, WHO(M), and WHAT. (Chart 5-4)
Directions: Create questions with who, who(m), and what.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUESTION</th>
<th>ANSWER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. Who(m) does Tom know?</td>
<td>Tom knows someone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ____________________________</td>
<td>Someone will help us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. ____________________________</td>
<td>I will ask someone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. ____________________________</td>
<td>Eric is talking to someone on the phone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. ____________________________</td>
<td>Someone is knocking on the door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. ____________________________</td>
<td>Something surprised them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. ____________________________</td>
<td>Jack said something.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. ____________________________</td>
<td>Sue talked about something.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. ____________________________</td>
<td>Ann talked about someone.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Directions: Complete the dialogues by creating questions. Use the information in the long answer in parentheses to create each question.

1. A: Who taught you to play chess?
   B: My mother. (My mother taught me to play chess.)

2. A: ____________________________
   B: A bank robbery. (Robert saw a bank robbery.)

3. A: ____________________________ a good look at the bank robber?
   B: Robert did. (Robert got a good look at the bank robber.)

4. A: ____________________________?
   B: A toy for my brother’s children. (I’m making a toy for my brother’s children.)

5. A: ____________________________ to?
   B: Joe. (That calculator belongs to Joe.)

6. A: ____________________________ in your pocket?
   B: A bag of candy. (I have a bag of candy in my pocket.)

7. A: ____________________________?
   B: A mouse. (The cat killed a mouse.)

8. A: ____________________________?
   B: Curiosity. (Curiosity killed the cat.)

9. A: ____________________________ an apple fall to the ground from a tree?
   B: Gravity. (Gravity makes an apple fall to the ground from a tree.)

10. A: ____________________________ on the envelope?
    B: My sister. (My sister wrote a note on the envelope.)

11. A: ____________________________ from?
    B: My father. (I got a letter from my father.)

*Curiosity is the desire to learn about something. “Curiosity killed the cat” is an English saying that means we can get into trouble when we want to know too much about something that doesn’t really concern us.
PRACTICE 12. Asking for the meaning of a word. (Charts 5-3 and 5-4)

Directions: Ask for the meaning of the words in italics. Complete the dialogue.

1. Captain Cook explored many islands in the Pacific Ocean.
   A: __________________________
   B: It means __________________

2. Alice put her hand underneath the blanket.
   A: __________________________
   B: It means __________________

3. How many times a minute do people blink?
   A: __________________________
   B: It means __________________

4. The food was absolutely delicious!
   A: __________________________
   B: It means __________________

PRACTICE 13. WHAT + a form of DO. (Chart 5-6)

Directions: Use the information in parentheses to make questions with what + a form of do to complete each dialogue. Use the same verb tense or modal that is used in the parentheses.

1. A: __________________________?
   B: Watching a movie on TV. (Alex is watching a movie on TV.)

2. A: __________________________ if someone calls while you’re out?
   B: Just take a message. (You should take a message if someone calls while I’m out.)

3. A: __________________________?
   B: They explore space. (Astronauts explore space.)

4. A: __________________________ Saturday morning?
   B: Play tennis at Waterfall Park. (I’m going to play tennis at Waterfall Park Saturday morning.)

5. A: __________________________ when you get sick?
   B: I see my doctor. (I see my doctor when I get sick.)

6. A: __________________________ to help you?
   B: Carry this suitcase. (You can carry this suitcase to help me.)

7. A: __________________________ when she heard the good news?
   B: She smiled. (Sara smiled when she heard the good news.)

8. A: I spilled some juice on the floor. __________________________?
   B: Wipe it up with a paper towel. (You should wipe it up with a paper towel.)
9. A: ____________________ after she graduates?
   B: I think she plans to look for a job in hotel management. (Emily is going to look for a job in hotel management after she graduates.)

10. A: ____________________ when the fire alarm sounded?
    B: Ran down the stairs and out of the building. (I ran down the stairs and out of the building when the fire alarm sounded.)

11. A: ____________________ after school today?
    B: Let's go to the shopping mall, okay? (I would like to go to the shopping mall after school today.)

12. A: ____________________?
    B: Make this coin stand on edge. (I’m trying to make this coin stand on edge.)

13. A: ____________________?
    B: He needs to hand in all of his homework. (Kevin needs to hand in all of his homework if he wants to pass advanced algebra.)

14. A: ____________________?
    B: He’s an airplane mechanic. (Nick repairs airplanes for a living.)

15. A: Did you say something to that man over there? Why does he look angry?
    B: I accidentally ran into him and stepped on his foot.
    A: ____________________?
    B: Said something nasty. (He said something nasty when I bumped into him.)
    A: ____________________?
    B: Apologized. (I apologized.)
    A: Then ____________________?
    B: Walked away without saying a word. (Then he walked away without saying a word.)
    A: What an unpleasant person!
    B: I didn’t mean to step on his foot. It was just an accident.

◊ PRACTICE 14. WHAT KIND OF. (Chart 5-7)
Directions: Ask questions with what kind of.

1. A: ____________________ do you like best?
   B: Rock ’n roll.

2. A: ____________________ do you like to wear?
   B: Jeans and a T-shirt.

3. A: ____________________ do you like best?
   B: Fresh fruit and vegetables.
4. A: ________________________ do you like to read?
   B: Romance novels.

5. A: ________________________ should I buy?
   B: A four-door sedan with good gas mileage.

6. A: ________________________ does your country have?
   B: It’s a democratic republic.

7. A: ________________________ would you like to have?
   B: I’d like to have one that pays well, is interesting, and allows me to contribute to society. I’ve often thought I’d like to be a doctor or an architect.

8. A: ________________________ would you like to marry?
   B: Someone who is kind-hearted, loving, funny, serious, and steady.

9. A: ________________________ can we recycle?
   B: Paper, wood, plastic, and aluminum.

◊ PRACTICE 15. WHICH vs. WHAT. (Chart 5-8)
   Directions: Complete the questions with which or what.

   1. A: I have two pens. ______ Which ______ one do you want?
      B: That one.

   2. A: I’m hungry.
      B: So am I. ______ What ______ are you going to order?
      A: I think I’ll have the fish.

   3. A: There are two good movies on TV tonight, a spy movie and a comedy. ______ one do you want to watch?
      B: Let’s watch the spy movie.

   4. A: Did you go out last night?
      B: No. I stayed home and watched TV.
      A: ______ what ______ did you watch?
      B: A movie.

   5. A: These shoes are comfortable, and so are those shoes. ______ should I buy, these or those? I can’t decide.
      B: These.
6. A: There are flights to Atlanta at 7:30 A.M. and 8:40 A.M. ________ one are you going to take?
   B: The 7:30 flight.

7. A: ________ does “huge” mean?
   B: “Very big.”

   B: ________ can I do to help?
   A: Please hand me that bowl.
   B: Sure.

9. A: Would you please hand me a sharp knife?
   B: I’d be happy to. There are several in this drawer. ________ one would you like?
   A: That one.

◊ PRACTICE 16. WHO vs. WHOSE. (Chart 5-9)
   Directions: Complete the questions with who or whose.

1. A: ________ is driving to the game tonight?
   B: Heidi is.

2. A: ________ car are we taking to the game?
   B: Heidi’s.

3. A: This notebook is mine. ________ is that? Is it yours?
   B: No, it’s Sara’s.

4. A: There’s Ms. Adams. ________ is standing next to her?
   B: Mr. Wilson.

5. A: ________ was the first woman doctor in the United States?
   B: Elizabeth Blackwell, in 1849.

6. A: Okay. ________ forgot to put the ice cream back in the freezer?
   B: I don’t know. Don’t look at me. It wasn’t me.

7. A: ________ motorcycle ran into the telephone pole?
   B: Bill’s.

8. A: ________ suitcase did you borrow for your trip?
   B: Andy’s.
**PRACTICE 17. WHO vs. WHOSE. (Chart 5-9)**

*Directions: Create the questions.*

1. A: Whose house is that?  
   B: Pat's. (That's Pat's house.)

2. A: Who's living in that house?  
   B: Pat. (Pat is living in that house.)

3. A:  
   B: Pedro's. (I borrowed Pedro's umbrella.)

4. A:  
   B: Linda's. (I used Linda's book.)

5. A:  
   B: Nick's. (Nick's book is on the table.)

6. A:  
   B: Nick. (Nick is on the phone.)

7. A:  
   B: Sue Smith. (That's Sue Smith.) She's a student in my class.

8. A:  
   B: Sue's. (That's Sue's.) This one is mine.

**PRACTICE 18. Using HOW. (Chart 5-10)**

*Directions: Complete the sentences with any of the words in the list.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>busy</th>
<th>fresh</th>
<th>safe</th>
<th>soon</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>expensive</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>hot</td>
<td>serious</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A: How ______ hot ______ does it get in Chicago in the summer?  
   B: Very ______ hot ______. It can get over 100°. (100°F = 37.8°C)

2. A: How ______ will dinner be ready? I'm really hungry.  
   B: In just a few more minutes.

3. A: Look at that beautiful vase! Let's get it.  
   B: How ______ is it?  
   A: Oh my gosh! Never mind. We can't afford it.

4. A: Sorry to interrupt, Ted, but I need some help. How ______ are you today? Do you have time to read over this report?  
   B: Well, I'm always ______, but I'll make time to read it.
5. A: How ____________ is Toshi about becoming an astronomer?
   B: He’s very _____________. He already knows more about the stars and planets
      than his high school teachers.

6. A: How ____________ is a car with an airbag?
   B: Well, there have been bad accidents where both drivers walked away without injuries
      because of airbags.

7. A: Tomatoes for sale! Hey, lady! Do you want to buy some tomatoes? Tomatoes for sale!
   B: Hmmm. They look pretty good. How ____________ are they?
   A: What do you mean “How ____________ are they?” Would I sell something
      that wasn’t ____________? They were picked from the field just this morning.

8. A: Do you know Jack Young?
   B: Yes.
   A: Oh? How ____________ do you know him?
   B: Very _____________. He’s one of my closest friends. Why?
   A: He’s applied for a job at my store.

◊ PRACTICE 19. Using HOW FAR, HOW LONG, and HOW OFTEN. (Charts 5-11 → 5-13)

Directions: Complete the questions with far, long, or often.

1. A: How ____________ is it to the nearest police station?
   B: Four blocks.

2. A: How ____________ does it take you to get to work?
   B: Forty-five minutes.

3. A: How ____________ do you see your family?
   B: Once a week.

4. A: How ____________ is it to your office from home?
   B: About twenty miles.

5. A: How ____________ is it from here to the airport?
   B: Ten kilometers.

6. A: How ____________ do you see your dentist?
   B: Every six months.

7. A: How ____________ does it take to get to the airport?
   B: Fifteen minutes.

8. A: How ____________ above sea level is Denver, Colorado?
   B: One mile. That’s why it’s called the Mile High City.
9. A: How __________ does it take to fly from Chicago to Denver?
   B: About three hours.

10. A: How __________ does your department have meetings?
    B: Twice a week.

11. A: How __________ did it take you to build your own boat?
    B: Four years.

12. A: How __________ did you walk?
    B: Two miles.

13. A: How __________ did you walk?
    B: Two hours.

14. A: How __________ does the bus come?
    B: Every two hours.

15. A: How __________ is it from here to the bus stop?
    B: About two blocks.

16. A: How __________ does the ride downtown take?
    B: About 20 minutes.

17. A: How __________ do you take the bus?
    B: Every day.

◊ PRACTICE 20. Cumulative review. (Charts 5-1 → 5-13)

Directions: Complete the dialogues by writing questions for the given answers. Use the information in parentheses to form the questions.

1. A: ______ What is Jack doing _______?
   B: He’s playing tennis. (Jack is playing tennis.)

2. A: __________________________ with?
   B: Anna. (He is playing tennis with Anna.)
3. A: _______________?  
B: Serving the ball. (Anna is serving the ball.)

4. A: _______________ in the air?  
B: A tennis ball. (She is throwing a tennis ball in the air.)

5. A: _______________?  
B: Rackets. (Anna and Jack are holding rackets.)

6. A: _______________ between them?  
B: A net. (A net is between them.)

7. A: _______________?  
B: On a tennis court. (They are on a tennis court.)

8. A: _______________?  
B: For an hour and a half. (They have been playing for an hour and a half.)

9. A: _______________ right now?  
B: Jack. (Jack is winning right now.)

10. A: _______________ the last game?  
B: Anna. (Anna won the last game.)

◊ PRACTICE 21. Cumulative review. (Charts 5-1 → 5-13)

Directions: Complete the dialogues by writing questions for the given answers. Use the information in parentheses to form the questions.

1. A: _______________?  
   B: In about an hour. (The clean clothes will be dry in about an hour.)

2. A: _______________ Saturday afternoon?  
   B: I went to a baseball game. (I went to a baseball game Saturday afternoon.)

3. A: _______________?  
   B: The small paperback. (I bought the small paperback dictionary, not the hardcover one.)

4. A: _______________ to clean your apartment before your parents visited?  
   B: Four hours. (It took me four hours to clean my apartment before my parents visited.)

5. A: _______________ the top shelf?  
   B: Stand on a chair. (You can reach the top shelf by standing on a chair.)

6. A: _______________ the best?  
   B: Whole wheat bread. (I like whole wheat bread the best.)

7. A: _______________ the phone when it rang?  
   B: Because I was in the middle of dinner with my family. (I didn’t answer the phone when it rang because I was in the middle of dinner with my family.)
8. A: __________________________ to the show with?
   B: Maria and her sister. (I'm going to the show with Maria and her sister.)

9. A: __________________________ the radio?
   B: Eric. (Eric repaired the radio.)

10. A: __________________________ in your hometown in the winter?
    B: It's not bad. It rarely gets below zero. (It rarely gets below zero in my hometown in the winter.)

◊ PRACTICE 22. Tag questions. (Chart 5-16)

Directions: Complete the tag questions with the correct verbs.

1. SIMPLE PRESENT
   a. You like strong coffee, don't you?
   b. David goes to Ames High School, doesn't he?
   c. Kate and Sara live on Tree Road, don't they?
   d. Jane has the keys to storeroom, doesn't she?
   e. Jane's in her office, isn't she?
   f. You're a member of this class, aren't you?
   g. Jack doesn't have a car, does he?
   h. Ann isn't from California, is she?

2. SIMPLE PAST
   a. Paul went to Florida, didn't he?
   b. You didn't talk to the boss, did you?
   c. Tom's parents weren't at home, were they?
   d. That was Pat's idea, wasn't it?

3. PRESENT PROGRESSIVE, BE GOING TO, and PAST PROGRESSIVE
   a. You're studying hard, are you?
   b. Tom isn't working at the bank, isn't he?
   c. It isn't going to rain today, isn't it?
   d. Susan and Kevin were waiting for us, weren't they?
   e. It wasn't raining, wasn't it?

4. PRESENT PERFECT
   a. It has been warmer than usual, hasn't it?
   b. You've had a lot of homework, have you?
c. We **haven't spent** much time together, ________________ we?
d. Lisa **has started** her new job, ________________ she?
e. Bill **hasn't finished** his sales report yet, ________________ he?

5. MODAL AUXILIARIES
   
a. You **can** answer these questions, ________________ you?
b. Kate **won't tell** anyone our secret, ________________ she?
c. Sam **should come** to the meeting, ________________ he?
d. Alice **would like** to come with us, ________________ she?
e. I **don't have to come** to the meeting, ________________ I?
f. Steve **had to leave** early, ________________ he?

◊ PRACTICE 23. Tag questions. (Chart 5-16)

*Directions:* Add tag questions to the following and give the expected responses.

1. A: You’ve already seen that movie, __________ haven’t you?
   B: Yes, I have.

2. A: Alex hasn’t called, __________ has he?
   B: No, he hasn’t.

3. A: You talked to Mike last night, __________ didn’t you?
   B: Yes, I did.

4. A: You usually bring your lunch to school, ________________
   B: ________________

5. A: Rita and Philip have been married for five years, ________________
   B: ________________

6. A: Kathy has already finished her work, ________________
   B: ________________

7. A: This isn’t a hard exercise, ________________
   B: ________________

8. A: We have to hand in our assignments today, ________________
   B: ________________

9. A: Tony Wah lives in Los Angeles, ________________
   B: ________________

10. A: You used to live in Los Angeles, ________________
    B: ________________
11. A: Tomorrow isn’t a holiday, _________________
   B: _________________

12. A: Jack doesn’t have to join the army, _________________
   B: _________________

13. A: I don’t have to be at the meeting, _________________
   B: _________________

14. A: This isn’t your book, _________________
   B: _________________

15. A: Jack and Elizabeth were in class yesterday, _________________
   B: _________________

16. A: Jennifer won’t be here for dinner tonight, _________________
   B: _________________

◊ PRACTICE 24. Error analysis. (Chapter 5)

Directions: Correct the errors in the sentences.

1. Who saw the car accident?

   Whom saw the car accident?

2. Why you didn’t say “good-bye” when you left?

   Why didn’t you say “good-bye” when you left?

3. How about ask Julie and Tim to come for dinner Friday night?

   How about asking Julie and Tim to come for dinner Friday night?

4. What time class begins today?

   What time does class begin today?

5. Why he have no shoes on his feet?

   Why does he have no shoes on his feet?

6. Where you can get a drink of water in this building?

   Where can you get a drink of water in this building?

7. What kind of music you like best?

   What kind of music do you like best?

8. How long it takes to get to the beach from here?

   How long does it take to get to the beach from here?

9. She is working late tonight, doesn’t she?

   She is working late tonight, isn’t she?

10. Who’s glasses are those?

   Who’s glasses are those?

11. How much tall your father?

   How tall is your father?

12. Who you talked to about registration for next term?

   Who did you talk to about registration for next term?
13. How about we go to see the baby elephant at the zoo tomorrow?

14. How far from here to the nearest gas station?

◊ PRACTICE 25. Review: questions. (Chapter 5)

Directions: Using the information in parentheses, complete the questions for the given answers.

1. A: ____________________ a new bicycle?  
   B: Next week. (I’m going to buy a new bicycle next week.)

2. A: ____________________ for it?  
   B: With my credit card. (I’m going to pay for it with my credit card.)

3. A: ____________________ your old bike?  
   B: Ten years. (I had my old bike for ten years.)

4. A: ____________________ your bike?  
   B: Four or five times a week. (I ride my bike four or five times a week.)

5. A: ____________________ to work?  
   B: I usually ride my bike. (I usually get to work by riding my bike.)

6. A: ____________________ your bike to work tomorrow?  
   B: Yes. (I’m going to ride my bike to work tomorrow.)

7. A: ____________________ your bike to work today?  
   B: I decided I would rather walk. (I didn’t ride my bike to work today because I decided I would rather walk.)

8. A: ____________________ a comfortable seat?  
   B: Yes, it does. (My bike has a comfortable seat.)

9. A: ____________________?  
   B: A ten-speed. (I have a ten-speed bicycle.)

10. A: ____________________ his new bike?  
    B: Two weeks ago. (Jason got his new bike two weeks ago.)

11. A: ____________________ Jason’s new bike?  
    B: Billy. (Billy broke Jason’s new bike.)

12. A: ____________________?  
    B: The front wheel on Jason’s new bike. (Billy broke the front wheel on Jason’s new bike.)

13. A: ____________________?  
    B: Jason’s new bike. (Jason’s new bike is broken.)
14. A: __________________________ Jason's bike?
   B: He ran into a brick wall. (Billy broke Jason's bike by running into a brick wall.)

15. A: __________________________ yours?
   B: The blue one. (The blue bicycle is mine, not the red one.)

16. A: __________________________ your bicycle at night?
   B: Inside my apartment. (I keep my bicycle inside my apartment at night.)

17. A: ___________________________
   B: David. (That bike belongs to David.)

18. A: ___________________________
   B: Suzanne's. (I borrowed Suzanne's bike.)

19. A: ___________________________
   B: In the park. (Rita is in the park.)

20. A: ___________________________
   B: Riding her bike. (She's riding her bike.)

21. A: __________________________ her bike yesterday?
   B: 25 miles. (Rita rode her bike 25 miles* yesterday.)

22. A: __________________________ “bicycle”?
   B: B-I-C-Y-C-L-E. (You spell “bicycle” B-I-C-Y-C-L-E.)

*25 miles = approximately 40 kilometers/kilometres.
CHAPTER 6
Nouns and Pronouns

◊ PRACTICE 1. Preview: plural nouns. (Chart 6-2)
Directions: Underline each noun. Write the correct plural form if necessary. Do not change any other words.

1. Airplane has wings.
2. Child like to play on swing.
4. Tree grow branch and leaf.
5. I saw three duck and several goose in a pond at the park.
6. Some baby are born with a few tooth.
7. I eat a lot of potato, bean, pea, and tomato.
8. Opinion are not the same as fact.
9. Each country has its own custom.

◊ PRACTICE 2. Pronunciation of -S/ES. (Chart 6-1)
Directions: Write the correct pronunciations: /s/, /z/, or /əz/. Practice saying the words.

1. dogs = dog + /z/
2. cups = cup + /
3. desks = desk + /
4. classes = class + /
5. doors = door + /
6. radios = radio + /
7. pages = page + /%
8. spoons = spoon + /
9. sheets = sheet + /
10. wishes = wish + /
11. collars = collar + /
12. shirts = shirt + /

◊ PRACTICE 3. Pronunciation of -S/ES. (Chart 6-1)
Directions: Write the correct pronunciations: /s/, /z/, or /əz/. Practice saying the words.

1. ear /z/
2. cat /%
3. dish /%
4. disk /%
5. table /%
6. lie /%
7. letter /%
8. group /%
9. nose /%
10. date /%
11. purse /%
12. fox /%
PRACTICE 4. Pronunciation of -S/-ES. (Chart 6-1)
Directions: Write the correct pronunciations for the underlined words: /s/, /z/, or /æz/. Read the sentences aloud.

1. My friends raise chickens and cows.
   /z/ / / / / /

2. Boxes come in many different sizes.
   / / / / / / /

3. The doctor checked the child's eyes, ears, and nose.
   / / / / / / /

4. Most businesses need to have computers.
   / / / / / / /

5. Apples and oranges are my favorite fruits.
   / / / / / / /

6. Sam's faxes have several mistakes.
   / / / / / / /

7. We heard loud voices from the houses down the street.
   / / / / / / /

8. Do you prefer to watch videos or go to movies on weekends?
   / / / / / / /

PRACTICE 5. Plural nouns. (Chart 6-2)
Directions: Write the correct singular or plural form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mouse</td>
<td>mice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pocket</td>
<td>pockets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>teeth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tomatoes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fish/fishes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>women</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>branch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friend</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>highway</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thief</td>
<td>thieves</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belief</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nouns and Pronouns 109
13. potato
14. radio
15. offspring
16. ________________ children
17. season
18. custom
19. business
20. ________________ centuries
21. occurrence
22. ________________ phenomena
23. sheep
24. ________________ loaves
25. glass
26. problem
27. family
28. wife
29. shelf
30. roof
31. ________________ feet
32. woman

◊ PRACTICE 6. Plural nouns. (Chart 6-2)

Directions: Write the plural of each word from the box in the correct category.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cow</th>
<th>baby</th>
<th>lily</th>
<th>husband</th>
<th>goose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sheep</td>
<td>rose</td>
<td>tomato</td>
<td>pea</td>
<td>child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apple</td>
<td>horse</td>
<td>daughter</td>
<td>cherry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potato</td>
<td>daisy</td>
<td>strawberry</td>
<td>wife</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poppy</td>
<td>son</td>
<td>mouse</td>
<td>pear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daffodil</td>
<td>grape</td>
<td>banana</td>
<td>bean</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Common farm animals include _____________.
2. Common vegetables include _____________.
3. Common fruits include _____________.
4. Common flowers include _____________.
5. Family members include _____________.
PRACTICE 7. Subjects, verbs, and objects. (Chart 6-3)

Directions: Underline and identify the subject (s) and verb (v) of each sentence. Also identify the object (o) of the verb if the sentence has an object.

1. Children play games.
2. Fish swim.
3. The baby doesn’t like her new toys.
5. Dictionaries give definitions.
6. Teachers correct tests.
7. The cat found a mouse.
8. The sun shines brightly.
10. Do snakes lay eggs?
11. The child petted the dog.
12. Did the phone ring?

PRACTICE 8. Objects of prepositions. (Charts 6-3 and 6-4)

Directions: Underline and identify the preposition (PREP) and object of the preposition (O of PREP).

1. The man opened the door with his key.
2. The little girl put her shoes on the wrong feet.
3. The student added and subtracted with a calculator.
4. My father fixes breakfast for my mother every morning.
5. Librarians work in libraries.
6. The bird flew into the window of the building.
7. I do all my homework on a computer.
8. The artist drew scenes of the beach in his notebook.
9. The children played in the backyard until dinner.
10. It rained for two weeks.
11. The painter splashed paint on the floor of his studio.
12. A man with dark glasses stood near the door.
PRACTICE 9. Subjects, verbs, objects, and prepositions. (Charts 6-3 and 6-4)

Directions: Underline and identify the subjects (S), verbs (V), objects (O), and prepositional phrases (PP) in these sentences.

1. Bridges cross rivers.

2. A terrible earthquake occurred in Turkey.

3. Airplanes fly above the clouds.

4. Trucks carry large loads.

5. Rivers flow toward the sea.

6. Salespeople treat customers with courtesy.

7. Bacteria can cause diseases.

8. Clouds are floating across the sky.

9. The audience in the theater applauded the performers at the end of the show.

10. Helmets protect bicyclists from serious injuries.

PRACTICE 10. Prepositions of time. (Chart 6-5)

Directions: Complete the phrases with the correct time prepositions.

The Jacksons got married . . .

1. _______ the summer.
2. _______ June.
3. _______ June 17th.
4. _______ Saturday.
5. _______ 12:00 P.M.
6. _______ noon.
8. _______ Saturday afternoon.

Their baby was born . . .

9. _______ midnight.
10. _______ 12:00 A.M.
11. _______ the morning.
12. _______ April 12th.
14. _______ April.
15. _______ Wednesday.
Directions: Complete each sentence by arranging the phrases in the correct order. There is only one correct solution for each sentence.

1. The dog chased ___1___ a cat ___2___ around the room ___3___ for several minutes.

2. The policeman stopped ___1___ the driver ___2___ at a busy intersection ___3___ at midnight

3. My friends rented ___1___ on the lake ___2___ last summer ___3___ a houseboat

4. The children caught ___1___ in the river ___2___ several fish ___3___ last weekend

5. Our library shows ___1___ free movies ___2___ every Saturday ___3___ in the children’s section

6. We ate ___1___ at noon ___2___ our lunch ___3___ in the park

7. The little girl always puts ___1___ in bed ___2___ at night ___3___ her dolls

8. The florist delivers ___1___ every Monday ___2___ fresh flowers ___3___ to our office

9. I bought ___1___ at the corner store ___2___ a newspaper ___3___ after work yesterday
PRACTICE 12. Subject-verb agreement. (Chart 6-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences with is or are.

1. These magazines **are** from the library.
2. The magazines on the table **are** for you.
3. Some people **are** wise.
4. Everyone **is** here.
5. Everybody **are** on time for class.
6. Each person in class **is** ready to begin.
7. Every teacher at this school **is** patient.
8. There **are** some money on the table.
9. There **are** some bills for you to pay.
10. This information about taxes **is** helpful.

PRACTICE 13. Subject-verb agreement. (Chart 6-7)

Directions: Circle the correct verb.

1. Bees **make, makes** honey.
2. Tomatoes **needs, need** lots of sunshine to grow.
3. Do, Does the people in your neighborhood help each other?
4. There **is, are** some people already in line for the movie.
5. The vegetables in the bowl on the table **is, are** fresh.
6. Everybody always **comes, come** to class on time.
7. Everyone in the class **is, are** paying attention.
8. The dishes on the counter **is, are** dirty.
9. Each person **needs, need** to bring identification.
10. The people next door **goes, go** hiking every weekend in the summer.
11. My father and mother **works, work** for the same company.
12. The pictures on the wall **is, are** of my father's family.

PRACTICE 14. Adjectives. (Chart 6-8)

Directions: Complete each phrase with an adjective that has the opposite meaning.

1. new cars **old** cars
2. a young man **an** man
3. a **day** day **a warm day**
4. fast trains
5. sad news
6. a good day
7. _________ hair
dry hair
8. _________ exercises
hard exercises
9. a soft pillow
a _________ pillow
10. a _________ street
    a wide street
11. _________ plates
dirty plates
12. _________ cups
    full cups
13. dangerous cities
    _________ cities
14. _________ children
    quiet children
15. shallow water
    _________ water
16. sweet candy
    _________ candy
17. _________ clothes
    expensive clothes
18. a dark color
    a _________ color
19. a heavy box
    a _________ box
20. a _________ place
    a private place
21. my left foot
    my _________ foot
22. the wrong answer
    the _________ answer
23. weak coffee
    _________ coffee
24. a _________ walk
    a short walk

◊ PRACTICE 15. Adjectives and nouns. (Chart 6-8)

Directions: Circle each adjective. Draw an arrow to the noun it describes.

1. Paul has a [loud] voice.
   
2. Sugar is [sweet].

3. The students took an easy test.
4. Air is free.
5. We ate some delicious food at a Mexican restaurant.
6. An encyclopedia contains important facts about a wide variety of subjects.
7. The child was sick.
8. The sick child crawled into his warm bed and sipped hot tea.

9. Our camping equipment looks old and rusty.

10. The hungry bear found food in the garbage cans.

11. My elderly father needs nursing care.

12. May I offer you some fresh coffee and warm cookies?

◊ PRACTICE 16. Nouns as adjectives. (Chart 6-9)

Directions: Use the information in italics to complete the sentences. Each completion should have a noun that is used as an adjective in front of another noun.

1. Articles in newspapers are called ____________.

2. Numbers on pages are called ____________.

3. Money that is made of paper is called ____________.

4. Buildings with apartments are called ____________.

5. Disks for computers are called ____________.

6. Presents for birthdays are called ____________.

7. Gardens with roses are called ____________.

8. Chains for keys are called ____________.

9. Governments in cities are called ____________.

10. Ponds for ducks are called ____________.

11. Walls made of bricks are called ____________.

12. Cartons that hold eggs are called ____________.

13. Views of mountains are called ____________.

14. Knives that people carry in their pockets are called ____________.

15. Lights that control traffic are called ____________.

16. Tables used for outdoor picnics are called ____________.

17. Pies that are made with apples are called ____________.

18. Helmets for bicycle riders are called ____________.

19. Cabins made out of logs are called ____________.

20. Bridges made from steel are called ____________.
Directions: These sentences have many mistakes in the use of nouns. Decide which nouns should be plural and add the correct plural endings to them. Do not change any other words in the sentences.

1. The mountains in Chile are beautiful.
2. Cat hunt mouse.
3. Mosquito are small insect.
4. Everyone has eyelash.
5. Goose are larger than duck.
6. What are your favorite radio program?
7. Forest sometimes have fire. Forest fire endanger wild animal.
8. Sharp kitchen knife can be dangerous weapon.
9. Good telephone manner are important.
10. I bought two theater ticket for the Thursday evening's performance of A Doll’s House.
11. Our daily life have changed in many way in the past one hundred year. We no longer need to use oil lamp or candle in our house, raise our own chicken, or build daily fire for cooking.
12. There are approximately 250,000 different kind of flower in the world.
13. Newspaper reporter have high-pressure job.
14. I applied to several foreign university because I want to study abroad next year.
15. Ted lives with three other university student.
16. The offspring of animal like horse, zebra, and deer can run soon after they are born.
17. Science student do laboratory experiment in their class.
18. Housefly are troublesome pest. They carry germ.
19. I like to read magazine article about true personal experience.
20. Many modern device require battery to work. Some flashlight, pocket calculator, portable radio, tape recorder, and many kind of toy need battery.
PRACTICE 18. Personal pronouns. (Chart 6-10)

Directions: Underline each pronoun. Note how it is used.

- Subject (s)
- Object of a verb (o of v)
- Object of a preposition (o of prep)

1. The teacher helped me with the lesson.
2. I carry a dictionary with me at all times.
3. Mr. Fong has a computer. He uses it for many things. It helps him in many ways.
4. Jessica went to Hawaii with Ann and me. We like her, and she likes us. We had a good time with her.
5. Mike had dirty socks. He washed them in the kitchen sink and hung them to dry in front of the window. They dried quickly.
6. Joseph and I are close friends. No bad feelings will ever come between him and me. He and I share a strong bond of friendship.

PRACTICE 19. Personal pronouns. (Chart 6-10)

Directions: Circle each pronoun, then draw an arrow to the noun or noun phrase it refers to. Enclose the noun or noun phrase in brackets.

1. [Janet] had [a green apple.] (She) ate it) after class.
2. Betsy called this morning. John spoke to her.
3. Nick and Rob are at the market. They are buying fresh vegetables.
4. Eric took some phone messages for Karen. They’re on a pad of yellow paper in the kitchen.
5. When Louie called, Alice talked to him. He asked her for a date. She accepted.
6. Jane wrote a letter to Mr. and Mrs. Moore. She mailed it to them yesterday. They should get her letter on Friday.
PRACTICE 20. Personal pronouns. (Chart 6-10)

Directions: Circle the correct pronoun.

1. You can ride with Jennifer and I, me.

2. Did you see Mark? He, Him was waiting in your office to talk to you.

3. I saw Rob a few minutes ago. I passed Sara and he, him on the steps of the classroom building.

4. Nick used to work in his father's store, but his father and he, him had a serious disagreement. Nick left and started his own business.

5. When the doctor came into the room, I asked she, her a question.

6. The doctor was very helpful. She, Her answered all of my questions.

7. Prof. Molina left a message for you and I, me. He, Him needs to see we, us.

8. Emily is a good basketball player. I watch Betsy and she, her carefully during games.

   They, Them are the best players.

9. Once my little sister and I, me were home alone. When our parents returned, a valuable vase was broken. They, Them blamed we, us for the broken vase, but in truth the cat had broken it, them. We, Us got in trouble with they, them because of the cat.

10. Take these secret documents and destroy it, them.

11. Ron invited Mary and I, me to have dinner with he, him.

12. Maureen likes movies. Ron and she, her go to the movies every chance they get.

13. Tom and I, me both want to marry Ann. She has to choose between he and I, him and me.

14. I talked to Jennifer and Mike. I told they, them about the surprise birthday party for Lizzy.

   They, Them won't tell she, her about it, them. She, Her is really going to be surprised!

15. Ted invited I, me to go to the game with he, him.

16. Ted invited Adam and I, me to go to the game with Tina and he, him.

17. My brother always teases I, me and my sister when he, him comes home from college.

   Our parents laugh and tell he, him to quit picking on we, us. We, Us love the attention.

   We, Us miss he, him when he, him returns to school.
PRACTICE 21. Possessive nouns. (Chart 6-11)

Directions: Use the italicized noun in the first sentence to write a POSSESSIVE NOUN in the second sentence. Pay special attention to where you put the apostrophe.

1. I have one friend. My friend's name is Paul.
2. I have two friends. My friends' names are Paul and Kevin.
3. I have one son. My son's name is Ryan.
4. I have two sons. My sons' names are Ryan and Scott.
5. I have one baby. My baby's name is Joy.
6. I have two babies. My babies' names are Joy and Erica.
7. I have one child. My child's name is Anna.
8. I have two children. My children's names are Anna and Keith.
9. I know one person. This person's name is Nick.
10. I know several people. These people's names are Nick, Karen, and Rita.
11. I have one teacher. My teacher's name is Ms. West.
12. I have two teachers. My teachers' names are Ms. West and Mr. Fox.
13. I know a man. This man's name is Alan Burns.
14. I know two men. These men's names are Alan Burns and Joe Lee.
15. We live on the earth. The earth's surface is seventy percent water.

PRACTICE 22. Possessive nouns. (Chart 6-11)

Directions: Make the nouns possessive if necessary.

1. I met Dan's sister yesterday.
2. I met Dan and his sister yesterday. OK (no change)
3. I know Jack's roommates.
4. I know Jack well. He's a good friend of mine.
5. I have one roommate. My roommate's desk is always messy.
6. You have two roommates. Your roommates' desks are always neat.
7. Jo Ann's and Betty are sisters.
8. Jo Ann is Betty's sister. My sister's name is Sonya.
9. My name is Richard. I have two sisters. My sisters' names are Jo Ann and Betty.
10. There is an old saying: “A woman work is never done.”

11. I read a book about the changes in women roles and men roles in modern society.

12. Jupiter is the largest planet in our solar system. We cannot see Jupiter surface from the earth because thick clouds surround the planet.

13. Mercury is the closest planet to the sun. Mercury atmosphere is extremely hot and dry.

14. Mars* surface has some of the same characteristics as Earth surface, but Mars could not support life as we know it on Earth. The plants and animals that live on Earth could not live on any of the other planets in our solar system.

15. Venus is sometimes called Earth twin because the two planets are almost the same size. But like Mars, Venus surface is extremely hot and dry.

*When a singular noun ends in -s, there are two possible possessive forms, as in the examples below:

SINGULAR NOUNS

| James    | I know James’ brother. OR I know James's brother. |
| Chris    | Chris’ car is red. OR Chris’s car is red.         |
| Carlos   | Carlos’ last name is Rivera. OR Carlos’s last name is Rivera. |
16. The planets English names come from ancient Roman mythology. For example, Mars was the name of the god of war in ancient Rome. Jupiter was the king of the gods. Mercury, who was Jupiter son, was the messenger of the gods. Venus was the goddess of love, beauty, and creativity. Venus son was named Cupid, the god of love and desire.

◊ PRACTICE 23. Possessive pronouns vs. possessive adjectives. (Chart 6-12)

Directions: Complete the sentences with possessive pronouns or possessive adjectives that refer to the words in italics.

1. A: Can I look at your grammar book?
   B: Why? You have ______ your ______ own* book. You have ______ yours _______, and I have mine.

   B: Why? She has ______ own book. She has ______ own book, and I have mine.

   B: Why? He has ______ own book. He has ______ own book, and I have mine.

   B: Why? You have ______ own books. You have ______ own book, and I have mine.

5. A: Tom and Anna want to look at our grammar books.
   B: Why? They have ______ own books. We have ______ own books. They have ______ own books, and we have ______ own books.

◊ PRACTICE 24. Possessive pronouns vs. possessive adjectives. (Chart 6-12)

Directions: Complete the sentences with possessive pronouns or possessive adjectives that refer to the words in italics.

1. Sara asked ______ her ______ mother for permission to go to a movie.

2. I don't need to borrow your bicycle. Sara loaned me ______ hers ______.

3. Ted and I are roommates. ______ apartment is small.

4. Brian and Louie have a huge apartment, but we don't. ______ apartment is small.

5. You can find ______ keys in the top drawer of the desk.

*Own frequently follows a possessive adjective: e.g., my own, your own, their own. The word own emphasizes that nobody else possesses the exact same thing(s); ownership belongs only to me (my own book), to you (your own book), to them (their own books), to us (our own books), etc.
6. The keys in the drawer belong to you. I have _______ in ________ pocket.  
   You should look in the drawer for _________.

7. Tom and Paul talked about ________ experiences in the wilderness areas of Canada. I've had a lot of interesting experiences in the wilderness, but nothing to compare with _________.

8. I know Eric well. He is a good friend of _________. You know him, too, don't you? Isn't he a friend of _________, too?

9. Omar, my wife and I would like to introduce you to a good friend of _________. His name is Dan Lightfeather.

◊ PRACTICE 25. Reflexive pronouns. (Chart 6-13)  
Directions: Complete the sentences with reflexive pronouns that refer to the words in italics.

1. I enjoyed _______ myself ________ at Disney World.
2. Paul enjoyed _______.
3. Paul and I enjoyed _______.
4. Hi, Emily! Did you enjoy ________?  
5. Hi, Emily and Dan! Did you enjoy ________?  
6. Jessica enjoyed _______.
7. Jessica and Paul enjoyed _______.
8. Joe helped _______ to more dessert.
9. Jane helped _______.
10. I helped _______.
11. We helped _______.
12. They helped _______.
13. The new teacher introduced _______ to the students.
14. My friends and I introduced _______.
15. The assistant teacher and school nurse introduced _______.
16. Ann introduced _______.
17. Jack introduced ___________________.

18. The other teachers introduced ___________________.

19. Did you introduce ___________________?

◊ PRACTICE 26. Reflexive pronouns. (Chart 6-13)

Directions: Choose an expression and complete the sentences. Be sure to use the correct reflexive pronoun.

| be proud of | help | talk to |
| blame | introduce | teach |
| cut | take care of | work for |
| enjoy |

1. Ouch! I just ______ cut myself ______ with a knife.

2. You graduated with top honors in your class. Congratulations, Anna! You must ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ _______.

3. John often ______ ______ ______ ______ _______. People think there is more than one person in the room, but there isn’t. It’s only John.

4. When I was young, I ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ to ride a bicycle. Then I taught the other children in the neighborhood.

5. Sheri ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ for the accident, but it wasn’t her fault. There was nothing she could have done when the car came toward her.

6. Eat! Eat! There’s lots more pizza in the oven. Please, all of you, ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ _______.

7. Adam seldom gets sick because he eats nourishing food and exercises regularly. He ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ _______.

8. They went to a party last night. Let’s ask them if they ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ _______.

9. My father never worked for anyone. He always owned his own company. He ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ throughout his entire adult life.

10. At the beginning of each term, my students walk around the room and greet each other. When they finish, they ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ ______ to the whole class.
PRACTICE 27. Review: pronouns. (Charts 6-10 → 6-13)

Directions: Circle the correct pronouns.

1. Nick invited I, (me) to go to dinner with he, (him).
2. Sam and you should be proud of yourself, yourselves. The two of you did a good job.
3. The room was almost empty. The only furniture was one table. The table stood by it, itself in one corner.
4. The bird returned to its, it’s* nest to feed its, it’s offspring.
5. Nick has his tennis racket, and Ann has her, hers, her’s.*
6. Where’s Eric? I have some good news for Joe and he, him, his, himself.
7. Don’t listen to Greg. You need to think for yourself, yourselves, Jane. It’s you, your, your’s* life.
8. We all have us, our, ours own ideas about how to live our, ours, our’s* lives.
9. You have your beliefs, and we have our, ours.
10. People usually enjoy themself, themselves, theirselves** at family gatherings.
11. History repeats himself, herself, itself.
12. David didn’t need my help. He finished the work by him, himself, his, his self.

PRACTICE 28. Review: pronouns. (Charts 6-10 → 6-13)

Directions: Complete the sentences with pronouns that refer to the words in italics.

1. Tom is wearing a bandage on his arm. He hurt himself while he was repairing the roof. I’ll help him with the roof later.
2. I have a sister. ________ name is Kate. ________ and I share a room.
3. My sister and I share a room. ________ room is pretty small. ________ have only one desk.
4. Our desk has five drawers. Kate puts ________ things in the two drawers on the right.

*REMINDER: Apostrophes are NOT used with possessive pronouns. Note that its = possessive adjective; it’s = it is. Also note that her’s, your’s, and our’s are NOT POSSIBLE in grammatically correct English.

**NOTE: Themself and theirselves are not really words—they are NOT POSSIBLE in grammatically correct English. Only themselves is the correct reflexive pronoun form.
5. I keep ________ stuff in the two drawers on the left. She and ________ share the middle drawer.

6. Kate doesn’t open my two drawers, and I don’t open ________.

7. I don’t put things in her drawers, and she doesn’t put things in ___________.

8. Ms. Lake and Mr. Ramirez work together at the advertising company. ________ often work on projects by ________________, but I work with ________ sometimes. My office is next to ________________. ________________ office has ________ names on the door, and mine has my name.

9. I have my dictionary, and Sara has _________. But Nick doesn’t have __________.

10. My friend James enjoyed ________ at Mike’s house yesterday. When I talked to ________ on the phone, ________ told me about ________ day with Mike. ________ and Mike played basketball, ate junk food, and played computer games. I like James a lot. I’m going to spend next Saturday with Mike and ________ at a science fair.

11. Karen has a bandage on ________ thumb because ________ accidentally cut ________ with a hatchet while ________ was cutting wood for ________ fireplace.

12. We don’t agree with you. You have ________ opinion, and we have ________.

◊ PRACTICE 29. Singular forms of OTHER. (Chart 6-14)
Directions: Write another or the other under each picture.

1. Four boxes: one another another the other

2. Three circles: one
3. Five flowers: one

4. Two cups: one

5. Six spoons: one

◊ PRACTICE 30. Singular forms of OTHER. (Chart 6-14)

Directions: Complete the sentences with another or the other.

1. There are many kinds of animals in the world. The elephant is one kind. The tiger is another.

2. There are two colors on this page. One is white. The other is black.

3. There are two women in Picture A. One is Ann. is Sara.

4. There are three men in Picture B. One is Alex. one is Mike.

5. In Picture B, Alex and Mike are smiling. man looks sad.

6. There are three men in Picture B. All three have common first names. One is named Alex.
   a. is named David.
   b. The name of one is Mike.
7. There are many common English names for men. Alex is one.
   a. Mike is ___________________.
   b. David is ___________________.
   c. John is ___________________ common name.
   d. Joe is ___________________.
   e. What is ___________________ common English name for a man?

8. Alex's bicycle was run over by a truck and destroyed. He needs to get ___________ one.

9. The Smiths have two bicycles. One belongs to Mr. Smith. _________________ bike belongs to Mrs. Smith.

10. There are three books on my desk. Two of them are dictionaries. _________________ one is a telephone directory.

11. The puppy chewed up my telephone directory, so I went to the telephone company to get _________________ phone book.

◊ PRACTICE 31. Plural forms of OTHER. (Chart 6-15)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the other, the others, other, or others.

1. There are four common nicknames for "Robert." One is "Bob." Another is "Bobby."
   The others are "Robbie" and "Rob."

2. There are five English vowels. One is "a." Another is "e." _________________ are "i," "o," and "u."

3. There are many consonants in English. The letters "b" and "c" are consonants.
   _________________ are "d," "f," and "g."

4. Some people are tall, and _________________ are short. Some people are neither tall nor short.

5. Some people are tall, and _________________ people are short.

6. Some animals are huge. _________________ are tiny.

7. Some animals are huge. _________________ animals are tiny.

8. Some ships are fueled by petroleum. _________________ are propelled by atomic power.

9. Some boats are used for pleasure. _________________ boats are used for commercial fishing.
10. Of the twenty students in the class, eighteen passed the exam. ________________ failed.

11. Out of the twenty students in the class, only two failed the exam. ________________ students passed.

12. Our physical education class was divided into two groups. Half of the students stayed inside and played basketball. ________________ students went outside and played soccer.

13. The telephone and the automobile are twentieth-century inventions. ________________ are the computer, television, and the airplane. Can you name ________________ twentieth-century inventions?

14. If you really hate your job, why don’t you look for ________________ one? You don’t have to be a dishwasher all your life. There are lots of ________________ jobs in the world.

15. An automobile consists of many parts. The motor is one, and the steering wheel is ________________. ________________ parts are the brakes, the trunk, and the fuel tank.

16. The students in our class had two choices: basketball or soccer. Half of the students played basketball. ________________ played soccer.

17. Here, children. I have two coins. One is for you, Tommy. ________________ is for you, Jimmy.

PRACTICE 32. Summary: forms of OTHER. (Charts 6-14 → 6-16)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

Example: Copper is one kind of metal. Silver is _____.
   A. another   B. the other   C. the others   D. others   E. other

1. Summer is one season. Spring is _____.
   A. another   B. the other   C. the others   D. others   E. other

2. There are four seasons. Summer is one. _____ are winter, fall, and spring.
   A. Another   B. The other   C. The others   D. Others   E. Other

3. What’s your favorite season? Some people like spring the best. _____ think fall is the nicest season.
   A. Another   B. The other   C. The others   D. Others   E. Other

4. My eyes are different colors. One eye is gray, and _____ is green.
   A. another   B. the other   C. the others   D. others   E. other
5. There are two reasons not to buy that piece of furniture. One is that it's expensive. ______
is that it's not well made.
   A. Another  B. The other  C. The others  D. Others  E. Other

6. Alex failed his English exam, but his teacher is going to give him ______ chance to pass it.
   A. another  B. the other  C. the others  D. others  E. other

7. Some people drink tea in the morning. ______ have coffee. I prefer fruit juice.
   A. Another  B. The other  C. The others  D. Others  E. Other

8. There are five digits in the number 20,000. One digit is a 2. ______ digits are all zeroes.
   A. Another  B. The other  C. The others  D. Others  E. Other

◊ PRACTICE 33. Cumulative review. (Chapter 6)
   Directions: Circle the correct answer.

   1. The people at the market ______ friendly.
      A. is  B. are

   2. How many ______ should I cook for dinner tonight?
      A. potato  B. potatoes

   3. I wanted to be alone, so I worked ______.
      A. myself  B. by myself

   4. The twins were born in, on December 25 on, at midnight.
      A. in  B. on

   5. All the workers at our company get ______ vacations.
      A. four-week, four-weeks

   6. The bus driver waited for ______ at the bus stop.
      A. we  B. us

   7. Can you tell a good book by ______?
      A. its  B. it's

   8. This is ______ dessert, and that is ______.
      A. our  B. ours  C. your  D. yours

   9. Jack has so much confidence. He really believes in ______.
      A. him  B. himself

   10. These bananas are OK, but ______ were better.
      A. the other  B. the others

◊ PRACTICE 34. Cumulative review. (Chapter 6)
   Directions: Correct the errors.

   1. Look at those beautiful mountains!

   2. The children played on Saturday afternoon at the park a game.

   3. There are two horse, several sheeps, and a cow in the farmers field.

   4. The owner of the store is busy in the moment.

   5. The teacher met her's students at the park after school.

   6. Everyone want peace in the world.
7. I grew up in a city very large.

8. This apple tastes sour. Here’s some more, so let’s try the other one.

9. Some tree lose their leaf in the winter.

10. I am going to wear my shirt is brown to the party.

11. I hurt meself at work last week.

12. Our neighbors invited my friend and I to visit they.

13. My husband boss works for twelve hour every days.

14. The students couldn’t find they’re books.

15. I always read magazines articles while I’m in the waiting room at my dentists office.
CHAPTER 7
Modal Auxiliaries

◊ PRACTICE 1. Preview: modal auxiliaries. (Chapter 7)

Directions: The words in _boldfaced italics_ are modal auxiliaries. Read the passage and then answer the questions.

(1) Everyone in my family _has to_ contribute to keeping order in our house. My parents
(2) assign chores to my brother Joe and me. _We must_ do these tasks every day. Sometimes if
(3) one of us is busy and _can't_ do a chore, the other one _may_ take care of it.
(4) For example, last Friday it was Joe’s turn to wash the dishes after dinner. He said he
(5) _couldn’t_ wash them because he had to hurry to school for a basketball game. Joe asked me,
(6) “Will you do the dishes for me, please? I promise to do them for you tomorrow when it’s
(7) your turn. I’ve _got to_ get to school for the game.” I reluctantly agreed to do Joe’s chore
(8) and washed the dishes after dinner.
(9) But the next night, Joe “forgot” that we had traded days. When I reminded him to
(10) wash the dishes, he said, “Who, me? It’s not my turn. You _have to_ do the dishes tonight.
(11) It’s your turn.”
(12) I think I’d _better_ write our agreement down when I do my brother Joe’s chores, and I
(13) _ought to_ give him a copy of the agreement. Joe has a short memory, especially if he _has to_
(14) wash dishes or take out the
(15) garbage. _I should_ write
(16) everything down. In fact, I
(17) _might_ write out a weekly
(18) schedule. Then, we _could_
(19) write our names in and change
(20) assignments if necessary. That
(21) _ought to_ solve the problem.
(22) I _must_ remember to do that.
What is the meaning of these modal auxiliaries from the sentences in the passage? Circle the answer that is closest in meaning to the modal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MODAL AUXILIARY</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Everyone <strong>has to</strong> contribute ....</td>
<td><strong>must</strong> should is able to might</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) ... and <strong>can't</strong> do a chore ....</td>
<td><strong>must not</strong> should not is not able to might not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) ... the other one <strong>may</strong> take care of it.</td>
<td><strong>must</strong> should is able to might</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5) He <strong>couldn't</strong> wash them ....</td>
<td><strong>must not</strong> should not was not able to might not</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7) I've <strong>got to</strong> get to school ....</td>
<td><strong>must</strong> should are able to might</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(10) You <strong>have to</strong> do the dishes ....</td>
<td><strong>must</strong> should are able to might</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(12) I think I'd better write ....</td>
<td><strong>must</strong> should am able to might</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(13) ... and I <strong>ought to</strong> give him ....</td>
<td><strong>must</strong> should am able to <strong>may</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(13) ... especially if he <strong>has to</strong> ....</td>
<td><strong>must</strong> should is able to <strong>may</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(17) In fact, I <strong>might</strong> write out ....</td>
<td><strong>must</strong> should am able to <strong>may</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(21) ... That <strong>ought to</strong> solve the problem.</td>
<td><strong>must</strong> should is able to <strong>may</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

◊ **PRACTICE 2. The form of modal auxiliaries.** (Chart 7-1)

*Directions*: Add the word to where necessary. Write Φ if to is not necessary.

1. Mr. Alvarez spilled tea on his shirt. He **must** Φ change clothes before dinner.
2. Mr. Alvarez has **to** change his shirt before dinner.
3. Tom and I **might** play tennis after work tomorrow.
4. You had better **see a doctor**.
5. Would you **speak more slowly**, please?
6. The students have **take a test** next Friday.
7. Everyone **should** pay attention to local politics.
8. Everyone **ought** participate in local government.
9. May I please **have the salt and pepper**? Thanks.
10. You'd better **not come** to the meeting late. The boss will **be angry** if you're late.
11. I've had a lot of trouble sleeping the last few nights. I've **got** get a good night's sleep! I can barely **stay awake** in class.
12. We **may** go to Argentina for our vacation.
13. Will you please **mail** this letter for me?
PRACTICE 3. Expressing ability. (Chart 7-2)

Directions: Choose one of the words in parentheses to complete each sentence.

1. (giraffe, zebra) A _______ can’t stretch its neck to reach the tops of trees.

2. (bee, cat) A single _______ can kill a thousand mice in a year.

3. (Rabbits, Elephants) _______ can crush small trees under their huge feet.

4. (Monkeys, Chickens) _______ can climb trees with ease.

5. (ducks, camels) Did you know that _______ can survive seventeen days without any water at all?

6. (cow, bull) One _______ can produce as much as 8,500 lbs. (3,860 kgs) of milk in a year.

7. (horse, cat) A person _______ on a _______ without hurting it.

8. (donkey, snake) A _______ can carry heavy loads on its back.

9. (squirrel, polar bear) A _______ can stay high up in the trees for weeks, leaping from branch to branch.

10. (people, ants) Most _______ can lift objects that are ten times heavier than their own bodies.

11. (baby, student) When I was a _______ , I could sleep most of the day.

12. (men, women) One hundred years ago, _______ couldn’t vote in many countries, but now they can.

PRACTICE 4. Expressing ability and possibility. (Charts 7-2 and 7-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with can/can’t, may/might, or may not/might not.

1. Jessica hasn’t made up her mind about where to go to school. She ________
attend Duke University, or she ________ . She just doesn’t know yet.

2. Alice is a runner. She likes to compete, but two days ago she broke her ankle when she fell. She ________ run in the race tomorrow.

3. A: Carol’s in New York now. Is she going to return to school in Chicago in September?
B: It depends. If she ________ find a job in New York, she’ll stay there this fall. Who knows? She ________ stay there through the winter and spring, too. If she likes her job, she ________ want to return to school in Chicago next year at all. We’ll have to wait and see.
4. A: Do you remember a famous actor named Basil Rathbone? Is he still making movies?
   B: I think he be dead.

5. Jodie finished law school last month, but she hasn't taken her exams yet. She practice law until she passes them.

6. Jack and Jenny haven't decided what kind of wedding to have. They have a large, formal celebration, or they have a small, quiet ceremony.

7. My roommate is planning to go sailing tomorrow, but he needs at least one other person to help him sail the boat. If no one is available, he take it out.

◊ PRACTICE 5. Expressing possibility. (Chart 7-3)
Directions: Rewrite the sentences using the words in parentheses.

1. Maybe I will take a nap. (might) → I might take a nap.
2. She might be sick. (maybe) → Maybe she is sick.
3. There may be time later. (maybe) → Maybe she is sick.
4. Maybe our team will win. (may) → Maybe our team will win.
5. You may be right. (might) → You may be right.
6. Maybe we'll hear soon. (may) → Maybe we'll hear soon.
7. It might rain. (may) → It might rain.
8. Maybe it will snow. (might) → It might rain.
9. She might come tomorrow. (maybe) → She might come tomorrow.
10. She might be at home right now. (maybe) → She might be at home right now.

◊ PRACTICE 6. Expressing possibility and permission. (Chart 7-3)
Directions: Decide if the meaning of the modal verb is possibility or permission.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MODAL VERB</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Both of my grandparents are retired. They like to travel. They may travel overseas next summer.</td>
<td>possibility permission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. They may take their two grandchildren with them.</td>
<td>possibility permission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. A: Yes, Tommy, you may play outdoors until dinner. B: Okay, Mom.</td>
<td>possibility permission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. A: What's wrong with the dog's foot? B: He may have an infection.</td>
<td>possibility permission</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. The dog has an infected foot. He **might need** to go to the vet.

6. A: Susie, no, you **can't stay** overnight at your friend's house tonight.
   B: Then how about my friend staying overnight here?
   A: No.

7. It **may be** hot and humid all weekend.

8. Johnny, you **may not stay** up until midnight. Your bedtime is nine o'clock.

9. I **might not stay** up to watch the end of the game on TV. I'm sleepy.

10. Children, you **cannot go** out now. It's dark outside, and dinner is ready.

**PRACTICE 7. Meanings of COULD.** (Charts 7-2 and 7-4)

*Directions:* Choose the expression that has the same meaning as the *italicized* verb.

1. “How long will it take you to paint two small rooms?”
   “I'm not sure. If the job is not complicated, I **could finish** by Thursday.”
   a. was able to finish  b. **might finish**

2. I think I'll take my umbrella. It **could rain** today.
   a. was able to rain  b. **might rain**

3. My niece **could read** by the time she was four years old.
   a. was able to read  b. **might read**

4. You **could see** that the little boy was unhappy because of the sad expression in his eyes.
   a. were able to see  b. **might see**

5. Sally is in excellent condition. I think she **could win** the 10-kilometer race on Saturday.
   a. was able to win  b. **might win**

6. John **couldn't drive** for a month because of a broken ankle, but now it's healed.
   a. wasn't able to drive  b. **might not drive**

7. Jane **could arrive** before dinner, but I don’t really expect her until nine or later.
   a. was able to arrive  b. **might arrive**

8. John was in an accident, but he **couldn't remember** how he had hurt himself.
   a. wasn't able to remember  b. **might not remember**
PRACTICE 8. Polite questions. (Charts 7-5 and 7-6)

Directions: Circle the correct completion.

1. A: This desk is too heavy for me. **May, Can** you help me lift it?
   B: Sure. No problem.

2. A: Ms. Milano, **may, will** I be excused from class early today? I have a doctor’s appointment.
   B: Yes. You may leave early. That would be fine.

3. A: I’m having trouble with this word processor. **Would, May** you show me how to set the margins one more time?
   B: Of course.

4. A: Andrew, **would, could** I speak to you for a minute?
   B: Sure. What’s up?

5. A: I can’t meet David’s plane tonight. **Can, May** you pick him up?
   B: Sorry. I have to work tonight. Call Uncle Frank. Maybe he can pick David up.

6. A: **Could, May** you please take these letters to the post office before noon?
   B: I’d be happy to, sir. Hmmm. It’s almost eleven-thirty. **May, Will** I leave for the post office now and then go to lunch early?
   A: That would be fine.

7. A: Marilyn, are you feeling okay? **Would, Can** I get you something?
   B: **May, Will** you get me a glass of water, please?
   A: Right away.

8. A: Darn these medicine bottles! I can never get the cap off! **Would, Could** I open that for you?
   B: **Thanks. I’d really appreciate it.**

PRACTICE 9. Polite questions. (Charts 7-5 and 7-6)

Directions: Check all the modal auxiliaries that correctly complete each question.

1. It’s cold in here. ______ you please close the door?
   **May**          **Could**          **Can**          **Would**

2. Oh, my pen’s out of ink. ______ I borrow yours?
   **Could**       **May**          **Will**         **Can**

3. I can’t lift this box by myself. ______ you help me carry it?
   **Would**      **Could**       **May**          **Will**

4. Hello. ______ I help you find something in the store?
   **Can**        **Would**      **May**          **Could**

5. The store closes in ten minutes. ______ you please bring all your purchases to the counter?
   **Will**      **May**          **Can**          **Could**
PRACTICE 10. Expressing advice. (Chart 7-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences. Use should or shouldn’t and the expressions in the list or your own words.

be cruel to animals  
always be on time for an appointment  
✔ drive a long distance  
exceed the speed limit  
give too much homework  
miss any classes  
quit  
throw trash out of your car window

1. If you are tired, you shouldn’t drive a long distance.
2. Cigarette smoking is dangerous to your health. You
3. A good driver
4. A teacher
5. A student
6. Animals have feelings, too. You
7. It is important to be punctual. You
8. Littering is against the law. You

PRACTICE 11. Expressing advice. (Chart 7-7)

Directions: Choose the completion from the given list that seems best to you.

call the landlord and complain  
eat it  
find a new girlfriend  
get a job  
send it back to the kitchen  
✔ soak it in cold water  
take it back to the store  
try to fix it herself  
✔ wash it in hot water

1. A: I cut my finger. I got blood on my shirt. My finger is okay, but I’m worried about my shirt. What should I do?
   B: You should soak it in cold water
   You shouldn’t wash it in hot water

2. A: Ann bought a new tape recorder. After two days, it stopped working. What should she do?
   B: She ought to
   She shouldn’t
3. A: I don’t have any money. I’m broke and can’t pay my rent. I don’t have enough money to pay my bills. What should I do?
   B: You’d better

4. A: There’s no hot water in my apartment. What should I do?
   B: You should

5. A: I asked Mary to marry me five times. She said no every time. What should I do?
   B: Maybe you should

6. A: Helen is in a restaurant. She has ordered a salad. There’s a big dead fly in it. What should she do?
   B: She should
   She shouldn’t

◊ PRACTICE 12. Expressing advice. (Charts 7-7 and 7-8)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. Danny doesn’t feel well. He _____ see a doctor.
   A. should       B. ought       C. had

2. Danny doesn’t feel well. He _____ better see a doctor.
   A. should       B. ought       C. had

3. Danny doesn’t feel well. He _____ to see a doctor.
   A. should       B. ought       C. had

4. It’s extremely warm in here. We _____ open some windows.
   A. should       B. ought       C. had

5. It’s really cold in here. We _____ to close some windows.
   A. should       B. ought       C. had

6. There’s a police car behind us. You _____ better slow down!
   A. should       B. ought       C. had

7. People who use public parks _____ clean up after themselves.
   A. should       B. ought       C. had

8. I have no money left in my bank account. I _____ better stop charging things on my credit card.
   A. should       B. ought       C. had

9. It’s going to be a formal dinner and dance. You _____ to change clothes.
   A. should       B. ought       C. had

10. This library book is overdue. I _____ better return it today.
    A. should       B. ought       C. had
PRACTICE 13. Expressing necessity. (Chart 7-9)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. I ______ to wash the dishes after dinner last night. It was my turn.
   A. have  B. has  C. had  D. must

2. Bye! I’m leaving now. I _____ got to take this package to the post office.
   A. have  B. has  C. had  D. must

3. I know you didn’t mean what you said. You ______ think before you speak!
   A. have  B. has  C. had  D. must

4. Yesterday everyone in the office ______ to leave the building for a fire drill. I’m glad it wasn’t a real fire.
   A. have  B. has  C. had  D. must

5. Janet ______ to take an educational psychology course next semester. It’s a required course.
   A. have  B. has  C. had  D. must

6. Pete, Chris, and Anna ______ to stay after class this afternoon. Professor Irwin wants them to help him grade papers.
   A. have  B. has  C. had  D. must

7. Mr. Silva, you ______ not be late today. The vice-president is coming in, and you’re the only one who can answer her questions about the new project.
   A. have  B. has  C. had  D. must

8. Last year our town didn’t have many tourists because of an oil spill. Business was bad. My wife and I own a small souvenir shop near the ocean. We ______ to borrow money from the bank last month to save our business.
   A. have  B. has  C. had  D. must

PRACTICE 14. Expressing necessity. (Chart 7-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with any appropriate forms of have to and must.

1. I can’t go to the movie tonight because I ______ study for final exams.
2. When I was in high school, I ______ work every evening at my parents’ store.
3. If you want to travel to certain countries, you ______ get a visa.
4. I’m sorry I was absent from class yesterday, but I ______ go to a funeral.
5. Erica won’t be in her office tomorrow afternoon because she ______ pick her brother up at the airport.
6. When I worked in my uncle’s restaurant, I ______ wash dishes and clear tables.
7. If you want to enter the university, you ______ take an entrance exam.
8. We wanted to go bike riding along the river yesterday, but we ______ stay home because the weather was awful.
PRACTICE 15. Necessity: MUST, HAVE TO, HAVE GOT TO. (Chart 7-9)

Directions: Circle the correct verb.

1. Last week, John **must, had to** interview five people for the new management position.
2. Professor Drake **had got to, had to** cancel several lectures when she became ill.
3. Why did you **have to, had to** leave work early?
4. I **must, had to** take my daughter to the airport yesterday.
5. Where did John **have to, had to** go for medical help yesterday?
6. We **had to, had got to** contact a lawyer last week about a problem with our neighbors.

PRACTICE 16. Necessity: MUST, HAVE TO, HAVE GOT TO. (Chart 7-9)

Directions: Write the past tense of the verb in italics.

1. I **have to** study for my medical school exams.
   PAST: I **had to study** for my medical school exams.
2. We **have to** turn off our water because of a leak.
   PAST: We **had to turn off** our water because of a leak.
3. Do you **have to work** over the holidays?
   PAST: **Did you have to work** over the holidays?
4. Jerry **has got to see** the dentist twice this week.
   PAST: Jerry **had to see** the dentist twice last month.
5. Who **has got to be** in early for work this week?
   PAST: Who **had to be** in early for work last week?
6. The bank **must close** early today.
   PAST: The bank **had to close** early yesterday.

PRACTICE 17. Expressing lack of necessity and prohibition. (Chart 7-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with **don’t/doesn’t have to** or **must not**.

1. The soup is too hot. You **must not** eat it yet. Wait for it to cool.
2. You **don’t have to** have soup for lunch. You can have a sandwich if you like.
3. The review class before the final exam is optional. We **don’t have to go** unless we want to.
4. Many vegetables can be eaten raw. You **don’t have to** cook them.
5. You **must not use** a pencil to write a check because someone could change the amount you have written on it.
6. When the phone rings, you ________________ answer it. It’s up to you.

7. When you have a new job, you ________________ be late the first day. In fact, it is a good idea to be a few minutes early.


   B: Why do you have to get up at 5:30?

   A: I’m going to meet Ron at 6:00. We’re going fishing.

9. You ________________ play loud music late at night. The neighbors will call the police.

10. This box isn’t as heavy as it looks. You ________________ help me with it.

    Thanks anyway for offering to help.

11. Susan, you ________________ go to the university. Your father and I think you should, but it’s your choice.

12. People ________________ spend their money foolishly if they want to stay out of financial trouble.

13. When you first meet someone, you ________________ ask personal questions.

    For example, it’s not polite to ask a person’s age.

14. The nations of the world ________________ stop trying to achieve total world peace.

15. My husband and I grow all of our own vegetables in the summer. We ________________ buy any vegetables at the market.
PRACTICE 18. Expressing necessity, lack of necessity, and prohibition. (Charts 7-9 and 7-10)

Directions: Complete each sentence with a form of have to or must. Use the negative if necessary to make a sensible sentence.

1. Smoking in this building is prohibited. You ____________ extinguish your cigar.

2. Alan’s company pays all of his travel expenses. Alan ______________ pay for his own plane ticket to the business conference in Amman, Jordan.

3. Our company provides free advice on the use of our products. You __________________ pay us for the advice.

4. Everyone here ______________ leave immediately! The building is on fire!

5. Lynn __________________ attend the meeting tonight because she isn’t working on the project that we’re going to discuss. We’re going to talk about raising money for the new library. Lynn isn’t involved in that.

6. The construction company ______________ finish the building by the end of the month. That’s the date they promised, and they will lose a lot of money if they’re late.

7. Please remember, you __________________ call my house between three and four this afternoon. That’s when the baby sleeps, and my mother will get upset if we wake him up.

PRACTICE 19. Expressing necessity, lack of necessity, and prohibition. (Charts 7-9 and 7-10)

Directions: Write the phrases in the correct columns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>fall asleep while driving</th>
<th>take other people’s belongings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cook every meal themselves</td>
<td>pay taxes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>say “sir” or “madam” to others</td>
<td>stay in their homes in the evening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat and drink in order to live</td>
<td>stop when they see a police car’s lights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drive without a license</td>
<td>behind them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>People have to/must . . . (necessary)</th>
<th>People must not . . . (DON’T!)</th>
<th>People don’t have to . . . (not necessary)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fall asleep while driving</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRACTICE 20. Logical conclusion or necessity. (Charts 7-9 and 7-11)

Directions: Write 1 if the modal must expresses a logical conclusion. Write 2 if the modal expresses necessity.

1 = logical conclusion.
2 = necessity.

1. ___ You must have a passport to travel abroad.
2. ___ You must like to read. You have such a large library.
3. ___ Ellen must like fish. She buys it several times a week.
4. ___ You must take off your shoes before entering this room.
5. ___ The dessert must be good. It’s almost gone.
6. ___ You must try this dessert. It’s wonderful.
7. ___ Children must stay seated during the flight.
8. ___ You must pay in advance if you want a guaranteed seat for the performance.
9. ___ The cat must be afraid. She’s hiding in the flower garden again.

PRACTICE 21. Imperative sentences. (Chart 7-12)

Directions: Pretend that someone says the following sentences to you. Which verbs give you instructions? Underline the imperative verbs.

1. I’ll be right back. Wait here.
2. Don’t wait for Rebecca. She’s not going to come.
3. Read pages thirty-nine to fifty-five before class tomorrow.
4. What are you doing? Don’t put those magazines in the trash. I haven’t read them yet.
5. Come in and have a seat. I’ll be right with you.
6. DON’T CROSS THIS FIELD UNLESS YOU CAN DO IT IN 9.9 SECONDS.
   THE BULL CAN DO IT IN 10.
   (NO TRESPASSING)
7. Don’t just stand there! Do something!

8. A: Call me around eight, okay?
   B: Okay.

9. Here, little Mike. Take this apple to Daddy. That’s good. Go ahead. Walk toward Daddy. That’s great! Now give him the apple. Wonderful!

10. Capitalize the first word of each sentence. Put a period at the end of a sentence. If the sentence is a question, use a question mark at the end.

◊ PRACTICE 22. Polite questions and imperatives. (Charts 7-5, 7-6, and 7-12)
   Directions: Number the sentences in order of politeness. 1 = most polite.
   1. ___ Could you open the door? 3. ___ Can I borrow your eraser?
   2. Can you open the door? 4. ___ Hand me the calculator.
   2. ___ Get the phone, please.
   3. ___ Would you please get the phone?
   4. ___ Get the phone.
   4. ___ Can you get the phone?

◊ PRACTICE 23. LET’S and WHY DON’T. (Chart 7-13)
   Directions: Complete the sentences with verbs from the list. The verbs may be used more than once.

   ask  fly  pick up  see
   call  get  play  stop
   fill up  go  save  take

1. A: There’s a strong wind today. Let’s ___ go ___ to the top of the hill on Cascade Avenue and ___ fly ___ our kite.
   B: Sounds like fun. Why don’t we ___ see ___ if Louie wants to come with us?
   A: Okay. I’ll call him.

2. A: What should we buy Mom for her birthday?
   B: I don’t know. Let’s ___ buy ___ her some perfume or something.
   A: I have a better idea. Why don’t we ___ take ___ her out for dinner and a movie?

3. A: My toe hurts. Let’s not ___ dance ___ dancing tonight.
   B: Okay. Why don’t we ___ play ___ chess instead?
4. A: Let's ____________ a taxi from the airport to the hotel.
   B: Why don't we ____________ a bus and ____________ ourselves some money?
5. A: We're almost out of gas. Why don't we ____________ at a gas station and
   ____________ before we drive the rest of the way to the beach?
   B: Okay. Are you hungry? I am. Let's ____________ something to eat too.
   A: Great.
6. A: Let's ____________ to a movie at the mall tonight.
   B: I've already seen all the good movies there. What else can we do?
   A: Well, Marika has a car. Why don't we ____________ her and ____________
   if she wants to drive us into the city?
   B: Okay. What's her number?

◊ PRACTICE 24. Stating preferences. (Chart 7-14)
Directions: Complete the sentences with prefer, like, or would rather.

1. I ____________ cold weather to hot weather.
2. A: What's your favorite fruit?
   B: I ____________ strawberries better than any other fruit.
3. Mary ____________ save money than enjoy herself.
4. Unfortunately, many children ____________ candy to vegetables.
5. A: Why isn't your brother going with us to the movie?
   B: He ____________ stay home and read than go out on a Saturday night.
6. A: Does Peter ____________ football to baseball?
   B: No. I think he ____________ baseball better than football.
   A: Then why didn't he go to the game yesterday?
   B: Because he ____________ watch sports on TV than go to a ball park.
7. I ____________ jog in the morning than after work.
8. Heidi enjoys her independence. She is struggling to start her own business, but she
   ____________ borrow money from the bank than ask her parents for help.
9. A: Do you want to go out to the Japanese restaurant for dinner?
   B: That would be okay, but in truth I ____________________________ Chinese food to Japanese food.
   A: Really? I ____________________________ Japanese food better than Chinese food. What shall we do?
   B: Let's go to the Italian restaurant.

10. A: Mother, I can't believe you have another cat! Now you have four cats, two dogs, and three birds.
    B: I know, dear. I can't help it. I love having animals around.
    A: Honestly, Mother, I sometimes think you ____________________________ animals to people.
    B: Honestly, dear, sometimes I do.

◊ PRACTICE 25. Stating preferences. (Chart 7-14)

Directions: Use the words in parentheses to create a new sentence with the same meaning.

Example: Alex would rather swim than jog. (prefer)
          → Alex prefers swimming to jogging.

Example: My son likes fish better than beef. (would rather)
          → My son would rather eat/have fish than beef.

1. Kim likes salad better than dessert. (prefer)

2. In general, Nicole would rather have coffee than tea. (like)

3. Bill prefers teaching history to working as a business executive. (would rather)

4. When considering a pet, Sam prefers dogs to cats. (like)

5. On a long trip, Susie would rather drive than ride in the back seat. (prefer)

6. I like studying in a noisy room better than studying in a completely quiet room. (would rather)

7. Alex likes soccer better than baseball. (would rather)
PRACTICE 26. Cumulative review. (Chapter 7)

Directions: Choose the best completion.

1. “I need the milk. ______ you get it out of the refrigerator for me?”
   “Sure.”
   A. May   B. Should   C. Could

2. “______ you hand me that book, please? I can’t reach it.”
   “Sure. Here it is.”
   A. Would   B. Should   C. Must

3. “What do you like the most about your promotion?”
   “I ______ get up at 5:30 in the morning anymore. I can sleep until 7:00.”
   A. must not   B. would rather   C. don’t have to

4. “Do you have a minute? I need to talk to you.”
   “I ______ leave here in ten minutes. Can we make an appointment for another time?”
   A. have to   B. could   C. may

5. “Yes? ______ I help you?”
   “Yes. Do you have these sandals in a size eight?”
   A. Should   B. Can   C. Will

6. “Let’s go bowling Saturday afternoon.”
   “Bowling? I ______ play golf than go bowling.”
   A. had better   B. should   C. would rather

7. “Diane found a library book on a bench at Central Park. Someone had left it there.”
   “She ______ take it to any library in the city. I’m sure they’ll be glad to have it back.”
   A. will   B. should   C. would rather

8. “Beth got another speeding ticket yesterday.”
   “Oh? That’s not good. She ______ be more careful. She’ll end up in serious trouble if she gets any more.”
   A. would rather   B. will   C. ought to

9. “Are you going to take the job transfer when the company moves out of town?”
   “I ______ accept their offer if they are willing to pay all of my moving expenses.”
   A. must not   B. might   C. maybe

10. “Are you going to admit your mistake to the boss?”
    “Yes. I ______ tell her about it than have her hear about it from someone else.”
    A. can   B. should   C. would rather

11. “I just heard that there’s an accident on the freeway. Traffic is a mess.”
    “We ______ leave earlier than we planned.”
    A. maybe   B. had better   C. prefer to

12. “Would you like to go with me to the Williams’ wedding next month?”
    “I’m not sure. I ______ be too busy with school.”
    A. will   B. might   C. maybe
13. “Do you need help washing the dishes?”
   “Oh, no. You ______ help. There are enough people in the kitchen already.”
   A. don’t have to  B. must not  C. may not

14. “Why are you working so many evenings and weekends?”
   “I ______ increase sales or I’m in danger of losing my job.”
   A. may  B. can  C. have got to

15. “Are these gloves necessary?”
   “Yes. You ______ use this chemical without gloves. It will burn your skin.”
   A. must not  B. don’t have to  C. could not

◊ PRACTICE 27. Cumulative review. (Chapter 7)
Directions: Correct the errors.

1. Before I left on my trip last month, I ______ get a passport.

2. Could you ______ bring us more coffee, please?

3. Ben ______ driving, but he prefers take the bus.

4. My roommate ______ at home this evening.

5. A few of our classmates ______ to come to the school picnic.

6. May you ______ our picture, please?

7. Jane’s eyes are red, and she is yawning. She ______ is sleepy.

8. Jim ______ has Fridays off in the summer than a long vacation.

9. I ______ reading several lengthy books for my literature class.

10. Take your warm clothes with you. It ______ snow.

11. When the baby went to the doctor last week, she ______ several shots.

12. It’s very cool in here. Please ______ turn up the heat.

13. You ______ to call us before you come over. We’re often away during the day.

14. The children ______ to see the circus than a baseball game.

15. It’s such a gorgeous day. Why ______ go to a park or the beach?
Directions: The topic of this passage is writing a composition. Read the passage through completely to get the main ideas. Then read it again slowly and choose from the words in boldface italics.

Writing a Composition

(1) “What? Not another composition! I hate writing compositions. I’m not good at it.” Do you ever complain about having to write compositions in English class? A lot of students do. You **may**, **cannot** find it difficult and time-consuming, but you are learning a useful skill. The ability to write clearly **is**, **must be** important. It **can**, **must** affect your success in school and in your job. You **may**, **can** learn to write effectively by practicing. One of the best ways to practice your writing skills is to prepare compositions in a thoughtful, step-by-step process.

(2) The first step in writing a composition is to choose a subject that interests you. You **maybe**, **should** write about a subject you already know about or **can**, **have to** find out about through research. Writers **might**, **should** never pretend to be experts. For example, if you have never bought a car and are not knowledgeable about automobiles, you **should**, **should not** write an essay on what to look for when buying a car—unless, of course, you plan to research the subject in books and magazines and make yourself an expert. There is one topic about which you are the most knowledgeable expert in the world, and that topic **is**, **may be** yourself and your experiences. Many of the most interesting and informative compositions are based simply on a writer’s personal experience and observations. The questions you should ask yourself when choosing a topic are “Do I have any expertise in this subject?” and if not, “**Will**, **Can** I be able to find information about this subject?”

(3) After you have a topic and have researched it if necessary, start writing down your thoughts. These notes **must not**, **do not have to** be in any particular order. You **do not have to**, **could not** worry about grammar at this time. You **can**, **may** pay special attention to that later.

(4) Next, you **have to**, **may** organize your thoughts. You **cannot**, **might not** say everything possible about a subject in one composition. Therefore, you **may**, **must** carefully choose the ideas and information you want to include. Look over your notes, think hard about your topic, and find a central idea. Answer these questions: “What **am**, **do** I want my readers to understand? What **is**, **does** my main idea? How **can**, **am** I put this idea into one sentence?” Good writing depends on clear thinking. Writers **should**, **had better** spend more time thinking than actually writing. After you have a clearly formed main idea, choose relevant information from your notes to include in your composition.
(5) Before you begin to write the actual composition, you ought to, can know exactly what you want to say and how you are going to develop your ideas. Many good writers prepare, prepared an outline before they start. An outline is like a road map to keep you headed toward your destination without getting lost or sidetracked.

(6) There are, ought to be many ways to begin a composition. For example, you might, must begin with a story that leads up to your main idea. Or you may, ought to start with a question that you want your reader to think about, and then suggest an answer. Maybe, May be you could, have to introduce your topic by defining a key word. Simply presenting factual information is, will be another common way of beginning a composition. Your goals in your first paragraph is, are to catch your reader's attention and then state your main idea clearly and concisely. By the end of the first paragraph, your reader may, should understand what you are going to cover in the composition.

(7) If possible, write the entire first draft of your composition in a single sitting. After you have a first draft, the next step is rewriting. Every composition could, should go through several drafts. Rewriting is a natural part of the process of writing. You will, do not have to find many things that you can change, changed and improve when you reread your first draft. As you revise, you will, should be careful to include connecting words such as then, next, for example, after, and therefore. These words connect one idea to another so that your reader will not get lost. Also pay attention to grammar, punctuation, and spelling as you revise and rewrite. Your dictionary should, can be next to you, or if you are working on a computer, you should, must use the “spell checker.”

(8) Writing is, may be a skill. It improves as you gain experience with the process of choosing a subject, jotting down thoughts, organizing them into a first draft, and then rewriting and polishing. At the end of this process, you should, must have a clear and well-written composition.
PRACTICE 1. Connecting ideas with AND. (Chart 8-1)

Directions: Underline the words that are connected with and. Label these words as nouns, verbs, or adjectives.

noun + noun + noun
1. The farmer has a cow, a goat, and a black horse.

adjective + adjective
2. Danny is a bright and happy child.

verb + verb
3. I picked up the telephone and dialed Steve’s number.

4. The cook washed the vegetables and put them in boiling water.

5. My feet were cold and wet.

6. Anita is responsible, considerate, and trustworthy.

7. The three largest land animals are the elephant, the rhinoceros, and the hippopotamus.

8. A hippopotamus rests in water during the day and feeds on land at night.
PRACTICE 2. Punctuating items connected with AND.  (Chart 8-1)

Directions: Add commas where necessary.

1. I opened the door and walked into the room.  (no commas)
2. I opened the door, walked into the room, and sat down at my desk.
3. Their flag is green and black.
4. Their flag is green black and yellow.
5. Tom ate a sandwich and drank a glass of juice.
6. Tom made a sandwich poured a glass of juice and sat down to eat his lunch.
7. Ms. Parker is intelligent friendly and kind.
8. Mr. Parker is grouchy and unhappy.
9. Did you bring copies of the annual report for Sue Dan Joe and Mary?
10. I always read the newspaper and watch the TV news in the morning.
11. Can you watch television listen to the radio and read the newspaper at the same time?
12. Doctors save lives and relieve suffering.
14. The restaurant served a five-course dinner: soup fish entree salad and dessert.
15. I had fish and a salad for dinner last night.
16. An invitation should include your name address the date the time the purpose of the party and any special activities such as swimming or dancing.

PRACTICE 3. Punctuating sentences.  (Chart 8-1)

Directions: Each of these sentences contains two independent clauses. Find the subject (S) and verb (V) of each clause. Add a comma or a period. Capitalize as necessary.

1. Birds fly, and fish swim.
2. Birds fly. Fish swim.
3. Dogs bark lions roar.
4. Dogs bark and lions roar.
5. A week has seven days a year has 365 days.
6. A week has seven days and a year has 365 days.
7. Ahmed raised his hand and the teacher pointed at him.
8. Ahmed raised his hand the teacher pointed at him.
PRACTICE 4. Punctuating sentences. (Chart 8-1)

Directions: Write “C” if the punctuation is correct. Write “I” if it is incorrect.

1. **I** Amy jogged along the road I rode my bicycle.

2. **C** Amy stopped after 20 minutes. I continued on for an hour.

3. ____ Trained dogs can lie down and perform other tricks on command.

4. ____ My mother trained our dog to get the newspaper, my father trained it to bark at strangers.

5. ____ The river rose, it flooded the towns in the valley.

6. ____ The river and streams rose. They flooded the towns and farms in the valley.

7. ____ Astrology is the study of the planets and their effect on our lives.

8. ____ Sharon reads her horoscope every day. She believes her life is shaped by the positions of the stars and planets.

9. ____ Sharon’s children don’t believe in astrology, they dismiss the information she gives them.

PRACTICE 5. Using AND, BUT, and OR. (Chart 8-2)

Directions: Add commas where appropriate.

1. I talked to Amy for a long time, but she didn’t listen.

2. I talked to Tom for a long time and asked him many questions. (no change)

3. Please call Jane or Ted.

4. Please call Jane and Ted.

5. Please call Jane Ted or Anna.

6. Please call Jane Ted and Anna.

7. I waved at my friend but she didn’t see me.

8. I waved at my friend and she waved back.

9. I waved at my friend and smiled at her.

10. Was the test hard or easy?

11. My test was short and easy but Ali’s test was hard.
PRACTICE 6. Using AND, BUT, OR, and SO. (Charts 8-1 → 8-3)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. I was tired, _____ I went to bed.
   A. but B. or C. so

2. I sat down on the sofa _____ opened the newspaper.
   A. but B. and C. so

3. The students were on time, _____ the teacher was late.
   A. but B. or C. so

4. I would like one pet. I’d like to have a dog _____ a cat.
   A. but B. and C. or

5. Our children are happy _____ healthy.
   A. but B. and C. or

6. I wanted a cup of tea, _____ I heated some water.
   A. but B. and C. so

7. The phone rang, _____ I didn’t answer it.
   A. but B. and C. so

8. You can have an apple _____ an orange. Choose one.
   A. but B. and C. or

PRACTICE 7. Using AND, BUT, OR, and SO. (Charts 8-1 → 8-3)

Directions: Add commas where appropriate. Some sentences need no commas.

1. I washed and dried the dishes. (no change)

2. I washed the dishes, and my son dried them.

3. I called their house but no one answered the phone.

4. He offered me an apple or a peach.

5. I bought some apples peaches and bananas.

6. I was hungry so I ate an apple.

7. Carlos was hungry and ate two apples.

8. My sister is generous and kind-hearted.

9. My daughter is affectionate shy independent and smart.

10. It started to rain so we went inside and watched television.
PRACTICE 8. Using AND, BUT, OR, and SO. (Chart 8-1 → 8-3)

Directions: Add commas where appropriate. Some sentences need no commas.

1. Gina wants a job as an air traffic controller. Every air traffic controller worldwide uses English so it is important for Gina to become fluent in the language.

2. Gina has decided to take some intensive English courses at a private language institute but she isn't sure which one to attend. There are many schools available and they offer many different kinds of classes.

3. Gina has also heard of air traffic control schools that include English as part of their coursework but she needs to have a fairly high level of English to attend.

4. Gina needs to decide soon or the classes will be full. She's planning to visit her top three choices this summer and decide on the best one for her.

PRACTICE 9. Using AND, BUT, OR, and SO. (Charts 8-1 → 8-3)

Directions: Add periods and capital letters as necessary.

1. There are over 100,000 kinds of flies they live throughout the world.
   → There are over 100,000 kinds of flies. They live throughout the world.

2. I like to get mail from my friends and family mail is important to me.

3. We are all connected by our humanity we need to help each other we can all live in peace.

4. There was a bad flood in Hong Kong the streets became raging streams luckily no one died in the flood.

5. People have used needles since prehistoric times the first buttons appeared almost two thousand years ago zippers are a relatively recent invention the zipper was invented in 1890.
PRACTICE 10. Using AND, BUT, OR, and SO. (Charts 8-1 → 8-3)

Directions: Add periods, commas, and capital letters as appropriate. Don’t change any of the words or the order of the words.

1. James has a cold. **He** needs to rest and drink plenty of fluids, so **he** should go to bed and drink water, fruit juices, or soda pop. **He** needs to sleep a lot, so **he** shouldn’t drink fluids with caffeine, such as tea or coffee.

2. My friend and I were tired so we went home early we wanted to stay until the end of the game but it got too late for us both of us had to get up early in the morning and go to our jobs.

3. The normal pulse for an adult is between 60 and 80 beats per minute but exercise nervousness excitement and a fever will all make a pulse beat faster the normal pulse for a child is around 80 to 90.

4. Many famous explorers throughout history set out on their hazardous journeys in search of gold silver jewels or other treasures but some explorers wanted only to discover information about their world.

5. Edward Fox was a park ranger for thirty-five years during that time, he was hit by lightning eight times the lightning never killed him but it severely burned his skin and damaged his hearing.

6. The Indian Ocean is bordered on four sides by the continents of Africa Asia Australia and Antarctica some of the important ports are Aden Bombay Calcutta and Rangoon.

7. The Indian Ocean has many fish and shellfish but it has less commercial fishing than the Atlantic or the Pacific the climate of the Indian Ocean is tropical so fish spoil quickly out of the water it is difficult and expensive for commercial fishing boats to keep fish fresh.

PRACTICE 11. Using auxiliary verbs after BUT and AND. (Chart 8-4)

Directions: Practice using auxiliary verbs after **but** and **and**.

1. Dan didn’t study for the test, but Amy __________.

2. Alice doesn’t come to class every day, but Julie ______________.

3. Jack went to the movie last night, but I ______________.
4. I don’t live in the dorm, but Rob and Jim ________________.
5. Rob lives in the dorm, and Jim ________________ too.
6. I don’t live in the dorm, and Carol ________________ either.
7. My roommate was at home last night, but I ________________.
8. Mr. Wong isn’t here today, but Miss Choki ________________.
10. The teacher is listening to the tape, and the students ________________ too.
11. Susan won’t be at the meeting tonight, but I ________________.
12. Susan isn’t going to go to the meeting tonight, but I ________________.
13. I’ll be there, but she ________________.
14. I’ll be there, and Mike ________________ too.
15. I can speak French, and my wife ________________ too.
16. I haven’t finished my work yet, but Erica ________________.
17. I didn’t finish my work last night, but Erica ________________.
18. Jane would like a cup of coffee, and I ________________ too.
19. I like rock music, and my roommate ________________ too.
20. My son enjoys monster movies, but I ________________.
21. Paul can’t speak Spanish, and Larry ________________ either.
22. My neighbor walks to work every morning, but I ________________.
23. I am exhausted from the long trip, and my mother ________________ too.
24. I don’t have a dimple in my chin, but my brother ________________.
25. I visited the museum yesterday, and my friend ________________ too.
26. Water isn’t solid, but ice ________________.
27. Clouds aren’t solid, and steam ________________ either.

◇ PRACTICE 12. Auxiliary verbs after BUT and AND. (Chart 8-4)
Directions: Complete the sentences by using the word in italics and an appropriate auxiliary.

1. **Tom**  
   Jack has a mustache, and so ___________ does Tom ________________.
   Jack has a mustache, and ___________ Tom does ________________ too.

2. **Brian**  
   Alex doesn’t have a mustache, and neither ________________.
   Alex doesn’t have a mustache, and ________________ either.

3. **I**  
   Mary was at home last night, and so ________________.
   Mary was at home last night, and ________________ too.
4. Oregon
California is on the West Coast, and so ________________.
California is on the West Coast, and ________________ too.

5. Jean
I went to a movie last night, and so ________________.
I went to a movie last night, and ________________ too.

6. Jason
I didn’t study last night, and neither ________________.
I didn’t study last night, and ________________ either.

7. Rick
Jim can’t speak Arabic, and neither ________________.
Jim can’t speak Arabic, and ________________ either.

8. Laura
I like to go to science fiction movies, and so ________________.
I like to go to science fiction movies, and ________________ too.

9. Alice
I don’t like horror movies, and neither ________________.
I don’t like horror movies, and ________________ either.

10. porpoises
Whales are mammals, and so ________________.
Whales are mammals, and ________________ too.

11. I
Karen hasn’t seen that movie yet, and neither ________________.
Karen hasn’t seen that movie yet, and ________________ either.

12. my brother
I have a car, and so ________________.
I have a car, and ________________ too.

13. Erin
Rob won’t join us for lunch, and neither ________________.
Rob won’t join us for lunch, and ________________ either.

BLUE WHALE
porpoise
PART I. Complete the sentences with an auxiliary + TOO or EITHER.

1. I can't cook, and my roommate _____ can't either _____.
2. I like movies, and my wife _____.
3. I don't like salty food, and my wife _____.
4. Sugar is sweet, and honey _____.
5. Rosa Gomez wasn't in class yesterday, and Mr. Nazari _____.
6. Andy didn't know the answer to the question, and Tina _____.
7. I couldn't understand the substitute teacher, and Yoko _____.
8. Everyone in the room laughed at my foolish mistake, and I _____.
9. Fish can't walk, and snakes _____.
10. I like to fix things around the house, and Ted _____.
11. I'd rather stay home this evening, and my husband _____.

PART II. Complete the sentences with SO or NEITHER + an auxiliary.

12. Pasta is a famous Italian dish, and so is pizza.
13. Anteaters don't have teeth, and neither do most birds.
14. I didn't go to the bank, and _____.
15. Turtles are reptiles, and _____.
16. My sister has dark hair, and I.
17. I'm studying English, and Mr. Chu.
18. I'm not a native speaker of English, and Mr. Chu.
19. Wood burns, and _____ paper.
20. Mountain climbing is dangerous, and auto racing.
21. I've never seen a monkey in the wild, and my children.
22. When we heard the hurricane warning, I nailed boards over my windows, and all of my neighbors.
23. My brother and I studied chemistry together. I didn't pass the course, and he.
PRACTICE 14. Adverb clauses with BECAUSE. (Chart 8-6)
Directions: Underline the adverb clauses. Find the subject (S) and verb (V) of each adverb clause.

1. Mr. Tanaka was late for work because [he] [missed] the bus.
2. I closed the door because the room was cold.
3. Because I lost my umbrella, I got wet on the way home.
4. Joe didn’t bring his book to class because he couldn’t find it.
5. The teacher couldn’t hear the question because the class was so noisy.
6. Because the ice cream was beginning to melt, I put it back in the freezer.

PRACTICE 15. Adverb clauses with BECAUSE. (Chart 8-6)
Directions: Add periods, commas, and capital letters as necessary.

1. I opened the window because the room was hot. We felt more comfortable then.
2. Because his coffee was cold, Jack didn’t finish it. He left it on the table and walked away.
3. Because the weather was bad we canceled our trip into the city we stayed home and watched TV.
4. Debbie is a cheerleader she woke up in the morning with a sore throat because she had cheered loudly at the basketball game.
5. Francisco is an intelligent and ambitious young man because he hopes to get a good job later in life he is working hard to get a good education now.

PRACTICE 16. Adverb clauses with BECAUSE. (Chart 8-6)
Directions: Read each pair of phrases and circle the one that gives the reason (explains “why”). Then check the correct sentence.

1. go on a diet
   lose weight
   ✓ Eric went on a diet because he wanted to lose weight.
   ___ Because Eric went on a diet, he wanted to lose weight.

2. didn’t have money
couldn’t buy food
   ___ The family couldn’t buy food because they didn’t have money.
   ___ Because the family couldn’t buy food, they didn’t have money.
3. have several children  
be very busy  
____  Because our neighbors are very busy, they have several children.  
____  Our neighbors are very busy because they have several children.

4. go to bed  
be tired  
____  I am tired because I am going to bed.  
____  Because I am tired, I am going to bed.

5. be in great shape  
exercise every day  
____  Because Susan exercises every day, she is in great shape.  
____  Susan exercises every day because she is in great shape.

6. have a high fever  
go to the doctor  
____  Because Jennifer has a high fever, she is going to the doctor.  
____  Jennifer has a high fever because she is going to the doctor.

◊ PRACTICE 17. Adverb clauses with BECAUSE. (Chart 8-6)  
Directions: Complete the sentences with so or because. Add commas where appropriate. Capitalize as necessary.

1. a. He was hungry  ____ he ate a sandwich.  
   b.  _____ Because _____ he was hungry, he ate a sandwich.  
   c. He ate a sandwich  ____ because _____ he was hungry.

2. a.  ____ my sister was tired she went to bed.  
   b. My sister went to bed  ____ she was tired.  
   c. My sister was tired  ____ she went to bed.

3. a.  ____ human beings have opposable thumbs they can easily pick things up and hold them.  
   b. Human beings have opposable thumbs  ____ they can easily pick things up and hold them.  
   c. Human beings can easily pick things up and hold them  ____ they have opposable thumbs.
4. a. Schoolchildren can usually identify Italy easily on a world map it is shaped like a boot.
   b. Italy has the distinctive shape of a boot schoolchildren can usually identify it easily.
   c. Italy has the distinctive shape of a boot schoolchildren can usually identify it easily on a map.

◊ PRACTICE 18. Adverb clauses with EVEN THOUGH and ALTHOUGH. (Chart 8-6)

Directions: Complete each sentence with the correct form of the verb in italics. Some verbs will be negative.

1. Even though I (like) fish, I don’t eat it much.
2. Even though I (like) vegetables, I eat them every day.
3. Although my hairdresser (be) expensive, I go to her once a week.
4. Even though the basketball game was over, the fans (stay) in their seats cheering.
5. Although my clothes were wet from the rain, I (change) them.
6. Even though Po studied for weeks, he (pass) his exams.
7. Even though the soup was salty, everyone (eat) it.
8. Although the roads (be) icy, no one got in an accident.
Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. Even though I was hungry, I ______ a lot at dinner.
   A. ate    B. didn’t eat

2. Because I was hungry, I ______ a lot at dinner.
   A. ate    B. didn’t eat

3. Because I was cold, I ______ my coat.
   A. put on  B. didn’t put on

4. Even though I was cold, I ______ my coat.
   A. put on  B. didn’t put on

5. Even though Mike ______ sleepy, he stayed up to watch the end of the game on TV.
   A. was    B. wasn’t

6. Because Linda ______ sleepy, she went to bed.
   A. was    B. wasn’t

7. Because Kate ran too slowly, she ______ the race.
   A. won    B. didn’t win

8. Even though Jessica ran fast, she ______ the race.
   A. won    B. didn’t win

9. I ______ the test for my driver’s license because I wasn’t prepared.
   A. failed  B. didn’t fail

10. I went to my daughter’s school play because she ______ me to be there.
    A. wanted  B. didn’t want

11. I bought a new suit for the business trip even though I ______ it.
    A. could afford  B. couldn’t afford

12. Even though I had a broken leg, I ______ to the conference in New York.
    A. went    B. didn’t go
PRACTICE 20. Adverb clauses with BECAUSE. (Chart 8-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using **even though** or **because**.

1. Yuko went to a dentist ____________ she had a toothache.
2. Colette didn’t go to a dentist ____________ she had a toothache.
3. Jennifer went to a dentist ____________ she didn’t have a toothache. She just wanted a checkup.
4. ____________ Dan is fairly tall, he can’t reach the ceiling.
5. ____________ Matt is very tall, he can reach the ceiling.
6. ____________ Tim isn’t as tall as Matt, he can’t reach the ceiling.
7. ____________ Nick isn’t tall, he can reach the ceiling by standing on a chair.

8. Louie didn’t iron his shirt ____________ it was wrinkled.
9. Eric ironed his shirt ____________ it was wrinkled.
10. I would like to raise tropical fish ____________ it’s difficult to maintain a fish tank in good condition.
11. The baby shoved the pills into his mouth ____________ they looked like candy. ____________ he ingested several pills, he didn’t get sick. Today many pill bottles have child-proof caps ____________ children may think pills are candy and poison themselves.
Example: I gave him the money because _____.
   A. I didn’t have any
   B. he had a lot of money
   C. I owed it to him

1. Although _____, the hungry man ate every bit of it.
   A. an apple is both nutritious and delicious
   B. the cheese tasted good to him
   C. the bread was old and stale

2. The nurse didn’t bring Mr. Hill a glass of water even though _____.
   A. she was very busy
   B. she forgot
   C. he asked her three times

3. When she heard the loud crash, Marge ran outside in the snow although _____.
   A. her mother ran out with her
   B. she wasn’t wearing any shoes
   C. she ran as fast as she could

4. Even though his shoes were wet and muddy, Brian _____.
   A. took them off at the front door
   B. walked right into the house and across the carpet
   C. wore wool socks
5. Robert ate dinner with us at our home last night. Although _____, he left right after dinner.
   A. he washed the dishes
   B. there was a good movie at the local theater
   C. I expected him to stay and help with the dishes

6. Alex boarded the bus in front of his hotel. He was on his way to the art museum. Because he _____, he asked the bus driver to tell him where to get off.
   A. was late for work and didn’t want his boss to get mad
   B. was carrying a heavy suitcase
   C. was a tourist and didn’t know the city streets very well

7. Although _____, Eric got on the plane.
   A. he is married
   B. he is afraid of flying
   C. the flight attendant welcomed him aboard

8. Foxes can use their noses to find their dinners because _____.
   A. they have a keen sense of smell
   B. mice and other small rodents move very quickly
   C. they have keen vision

9. Cats can’t see red even though _____.
   A. it’s a bright color
   B. many animals are color-blind
   C. mice aren’t red

10. When I attended my first business conference out of town, I felt very uncomfortable during the social events because _____.
    A. we were all having a good time
    B. I didn’t know anyone there
    C. I am very knowledgeable in my field

11. Although _____, Sue drives to work every day in the middle of rush hour.
    A. her car is in good condition
    B. she isn’t in a hurry
    C. traffic is always heavy

12. Everyone listened carefully to what the speaker was saying even though _____.
    A. they had printed copies of the speech in their hands
    B. she spoke loudly and clearly
    C. the speech was very interesting

13. Talil works in the city, but once a month he visits his mother, who lives in the country. He must rent a car for these trips because _____.
    A. he rides the local bus
    B. his mother doesn’t drive
    C. he doesn’t own a car
PRACTICE 22. Error analysis. (Chapter 8)

Directions: Correct the sentences.

1. I don’t drink coffee, and my roommate doesn’t either.
2. The flight was overbooked, I had to fly on another airline.
3. Many people use computers for e-mail the Internet and word processing.
4. The room was stuffy and hot but I didn’t close the window.
5. The baby woke up crying. Because her diaper was wet.
6. Even my father works two jobs, he always has time to play soccer or baseball on weekends with his family.
7. I saw a bad accident and my sister too.
8. Oscar always pays his bills on time but his brother wasn’t.
9. Because my mother is afraid of heights, I took her up to the observation deck at the top of the building.
10. Janey doesn’t like to get up early and either Joe.
11. Although it was raining quite hard, but we decided to go for a bike ride.
12. My mother and my father. They immigrated to this country 30 years ago.
13. Even though Maya is very intelligent, her parents want to put her in an advanced program at school.
CHAPTER 9
Comparisons

◇ PRACTICE 1. AS ... AS. (Chart 9-1)
Directions: Make comparisons using as ... as.

1. Rita is very busy. Jason is very busy.
   → Rita is ______ (just) as busy as Jason (is)

2. Rita is not very busy at all. Jason is very, very busy.
   → Rita isn’t ______ (nearly) as busy as Jason (is)

3. I was tired. Susan was very tired.
   → I was ____________________________________________.

4. Adam wasn’t tired at all. Susan was very tired.
   → Adam wasn’t ________________________________________.

5. My apartment has two rooms. Po’s apartment has two rooms.
   → My apartment is _____________________________________.

6. My apartment has two rooms. Anna’s apartment has six rooms.
   → My apartment is not ____________________________________.

◇ PRACTICE 2. AS ... AS. (Chart 9-1)
Directions: Using the given information and the words in parentheses, complete the comparisons
using as ... as. Use not with the verbs as necessary.

1. Dogs make more noise than cats do. (be noisy)
   → Cats ______ aren’t as noisy as ______ dogs.

2. Both Anne and her sister Amanda are lazy. (be lazy)
   → Anne ______ is as lazy as ______ her sister Amanda.

3. Adults have more strength than children. (be strong)
   → Children __________________________________________ adults.

4. Tom and Jerry are the same height. (be tall)
   → Tom _____________________________ Jerry.
5. It's more comfortable to live at home than in a dormitory. (be comfortable)
   → Living in a dormitory ________________________________ living at home.

6. A basketball is bigger than a soccer ball. (be big)
   → A soccer ball ________________________________ a basketball.

7. The bride and the groom were equally nervous before the wedding. (be nervous)
   → The bride ________________________________ the groom.

8. The air in a big city is more polluted than the air in the countryside. (be fresh and clean)
   → The air in a big city ________________________________ the air in the countryside.

9. My sister wants to be a successful businesswoman. I don’t have any plans for my future.
   (be ambitious)
   → I ________________________________ my sister.

10. Some school subjects interest me, and others don’t. (be interesting)
    → Some school subjects ________________________________ others.

◊ PRACTICE 3. AS . . . AS. (Chart 9-1)
   Directions: Complete the sentences with one of the following:
   • just as . . . as
   • almost as . . . as/not quite as . . . as
   • not nearly as . . . as

   ![Practice Diagram]
**PART I.**

1. Building B is _______ not nearly as _______ high as Building D.
2. Building A is ___________________________ high as Building B.
3. Building C is ___________________________ high as Building D.
4. Building A is ___________________________ high as Building C.

**PART II.** Meeting time: 9:00 A.M. Compare the arrival times.

*Arrival times:*

- David 9:01 A.M.
- Julia 9:14 A.M.
- Laura 9:15 A.M.
- Paul 9:15 A.M.
- James 9:25 A.M.

5. Paul was _______ just as _______ late as Laura.
6. David was ___________________________ late as James.
7. Julia was ___________________________ late as Laura and Paul.
8. Julia was ___________________________ late as James.

**PART III.** Compare world temperatures.

- Bangkok 92°F / 33°C
- Cairo 85°F / 30°C
- Madrid 90°F / 32°C
- Moscow 68°F / 20°C
- Tokyo 85°F / 30°C

9. Tokyo is ___________________________ hot as Cairo.
10. Moscow is ___________________________ hot as Bangkok.
11. Madrid is ___________________________ hot as Bangkok.

**PART IV.** Compare world temperatures today and yesterday.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Yesterday</th>
<th>Today</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bangkok</td>
<td>95°F / 35°C</td>
<td>92°F / 33°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cairo</td>
<td>95°F / 35°C</td>
<td>85°F / 30°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Madrid</td>
<td>90°F / 32°C</td>
<td>90°F / 32°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moscow</td>
<td>70°F / 21°C</td>
<td>68°F / 20°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tokyo</td>
<td>81°F / 27°C</td>
<td>85°F / 30°C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12. Cairo was ___________________________ hot as Bangkok yesterday.
13. It's ___________________________ warm in Moscow today as yesterday.
14. Madrid is ___________________________ hot today as yesterday.
15. It was ___________________________ hot in Tokyo yesterday as in Bangkok.
16. It’s ___________________________ hot in Bangkok today as yesterday.
PRACTICE 4. AS . . . AS.  (Chart 9-1)
Directions: Choose the best sentence completion from the list.

| A. as bad as she said it was | E. as much as possible |
| B. as easy as it looks | F. as often as I can |
| C. as fast as I could | G. as often as I used to |
| D. as good as they looked | H. as soon as possible |

1. I have a lot of homework. I will finish **E** before I go to bed.

2. I'm sorry I'm late. I drove ______.

3. I saw some chocolates at the candy store. They looked delicious, so I bought some. They tasted just ______.

4. When I was in college, I went to at least two movies every week. Now I'm very busy with my job and family, so I don't go to movies ______.

5. It took Julie years of lessons to be able to play the piano well. She makes it look easy, but we all know that playing a musical instrument isn't ______.

6. I need to finish working on this report, so go ahead and start the meeting without me. I'll be there ______.

7. Even though I'm very busy, I'm usually just sitting at my desk all day. I need more exercise, so I try to walk to and from work ______.

8. My friend told me the movie was terrible, but I went anyway. My friend was right. The movie was just ______.

PRACTICE 5. AS . . . AS.  (Chart 9-1)
Directions: Write your completions in the blanks.

PART 1. Complete each expression with the correct phrase.

| as a bat | as ice | as a pillow |
| as a bird | as a mouse | as a wink |
| as a bone | as a picture | |
| as pie | |

1. very white: as white ______ as snow.

2. very cold: as cold ____________.

3. very pretty: as pretty ____________.

4. can't see anything: as blind ____________.
5. very dry: as dry ____________________.
6. very soft: as soft ____________________.
7. very quick: as quick ____________________.
8. very quiet: as quiet ____________________.
9. very free: as free ____________________.
10. very easy: as easy ____________________.

**PART II.** Complete the sentences with the given adjectives and the phrases from Part I.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>blind</th>
<th>cold</th>
<th>dry</th>
<th>free</th>
<th>pretty</th>
<th>quick</th>
<th>quiet</th>
<th>soft</th>
<th>white</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

11. Brrrr! Come inside. Your hands are freezing. They are as **cold as ice**.
12. I'm just running down to the corner store. I'll be back in a few minutes. I'll be as ____________.
13. I can't see anything without my glasses on. I'm as ____________________________.
14. What laundry detergent do you use? Your white shirts were covered with dirt, and now they're so clean and bright. They're as ____________________________.
15. Shhhh! Don't wake up Janet. She's sleeping on the couch. Be as ____________________________.
16. Your little girl looks darling in that pink dress and hat. She looks as ____________________________.
17. Don't worry. You'll pass the swimming test. It's not hard at all. It'll be as ____________________________ for you.
18. Charles looks so relaxed since he quit his job. He has no responsibilities for the next month. He must feel as ____________________________.
19. I have back problems and need to sleep on a bed that has a very firm mattress. My husband can sleep on anything, even something that is as ____________________________.
20. It hasn't rained in weeks. The grass is brown, and the flowers are dead. The ground is as ____________________________. 

Comparisons 173
PRACTICE 6. Comparative and superlative forms. (Charts 9-2 and 9-3)

Directions: Write the comparative and superlative forms of these words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COMPARATIVE</th>
<th>SUPERLATIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. strong</td>
<td>stronger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. important</td>
<td>more important</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. soft</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. lazy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. wonderful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. calm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. tame</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. dim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. convenient</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. clever</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. good</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. bad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. far</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. slow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. slowly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRACTICE 7. Comparative forms. (Charts 9-2 and 9-3)

Directions: Complete each sentence with the correct form of the word in parentheses.

1. Siberia is \( \text{cold} \) \( \text{colder than} \) South Africa.
2. My mother is a few years \( \text{old} \)
3. An airplane is \( \text{expensive} \)
4. Which is \( \text{large} \) : Greenland or Iceland?
5. Red or cayenne pepper tastes \( \text{hot} \)
6. A typewriter is \( \text{slow} \)
7. White chocolate is \( \text{creamy} \)
8. Is smoking \( \text{bad} \)
9. A jaguar is \( \text{fast} \)
10. Which is \( \text{important} \) : happiness or wealth?
11. For long-distance trips, flying is \( \text{quick} \) driving or taking a train.
12. Which is (heavy) ___________________ : a kilo of wood or a kilo of rocks?*

13. Driving in a car equipped with a seatbelt and an airbag is (safe) ___________________
   driving in a car with just a seatbelt.

14. Calculus is (difficult) ___________________ arithmetic.

◊ PRACTICE 8. Comparatives. (Charts 9-2 and 9-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct comparative form (more/-er) of the given
adjectives and adverbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>careful</th>
<th>generous</th>
<th>soft</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✔ cold</td>
<td>lazy</td>
<td>softly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comfortable</td>
<td>pretty</td>
<td>slowly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friendly</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The average temperature in Moscow is _______ colder _______ than the average
temperature in Hong Kong.

2. Your father seems to give you plenty of money for living expenses. He is _______ more
   _______ generous _______ than mine.

3. Children seem to be able to appear out of nowhere. When I’m near a school, I always drive
   _______ than I have to.

4. In my experience, old shoes are usually a lot _______ than new shoes.

5. People in villages often seem to enjoy talking to strangers. They seem to be _______ more
   _______ than people in large cities.

6. Babies don’t like loud noises. Most people speak _______ than usual when
   they’re talking to a baby.

7. I like to sit on pillows. They are a lot _______ than a hardwood seat.

8. Sandy, when you drive to the airport today, you have to be _______ than you were the last
time you went. You almost had an accident because you weren’t paying
   attention to your driving.

9. I like to grow flowers in my garden. They’re a lot _______ than bushes.

10. I don’t like to work hard, but my sister does. I’m a lot _______ than my sister.

*This is a trick question. Answer: They weigh the same.
PRACTICE 9. Comparatives and superlatives. (Charts 9-2 and 9-3)

Directions: Complete the sentences with better, the best, worse, or the worst.

1. I just finished a terrible book. It’s the worst book I’ve ever read.

2. The weather was bad yesterday, but it’s terrible today. The weather is worse today than it was yesterday.

3. This cake is really good. It’s the best cake I’ve ever eaten.

4. My grades this term are great. They’re much better than last term.

5. Being separated from my family in time of war is one of the worst experiences I can imagine.

6. I broke my nose in a football game yesterday. Today it’s very painful. For some reason, the pain is worse today than it was yesterday.

7. The fire spread and burned down an entire city block. It was the worst fire we’ve ever had in our town.

8. I think my cold is almost over. I feel a lot better than I did yesterday. I can finally breathe again.

PRACTICE 10. FARTHER and FURTHER. (Chart 9-3)

Directions: Choose the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1. The planet Earth is ______ from the sun than the planet Mercury is.
   A. farther   B. further

2. I have no ______ need of this equipment. I’m going to sell it.
   A. farther   B. further

3. I’m tired. I walked ______ than I should have.
   A. farther   B. further

4. A: Tell us more.
   B: I have no ______ comment.
   A. farther   B. further

5. I’ll be available by phone if you have any ______ questions.
   A. farther   B. further

6. A: I heard that you and Tom are engaged to be married.
   B: Nothing could be ______ from the truth!
   A. farther   B. further
PRACTICE 11. Adjectives vs. adverbs in the comparative. (Chart 9-3)

Directions: Complete each sentence with the comparative + the correct adjective or adverb. If it is an adjective, circle ADJ. If it is an adverb, circle ADV.

1. slow
   slowly
   I like to drive fast, but my brother William doesn’t. As a rule, he drives ______ more slowly ______ than I do. ADJ ADV

2. slow
   slowly
   Alex is a ______ slower ______ driver than I am. ADJ ADV

3. serious
   seriously
   Some workers are ______ more seriously ______ about their jobs than others. ADJ ADV

4. serious
   seriously
   Some workers approach their jobs ______ more seriously ______ than others. ADJ ADV

5. polite
   politely
   Why is it that my children behave ______ more politely ______ at other people’s houses than at home? ADJ ADV

6. polite
   politely
   Why are they ______ more politely ______ at Mrs. Miranda’s house than at home? ADJ ADV

7. careful
   carefully
   I’m a cautious person when I express my opinions, but my sister will say anything to anyone. I’m much ______ more carefully ______ when I speak to others than my sister is. ADJ ADV

8. careful
   carefully
   I always speak ______ more carefully ______ in public than my sister does. ADJ ADV

9. clear
   clearly
   I can’t understand Mark’s father very well when he talks, but I can understand Mark. He speaks much ______ more clearly ______ than his father. ADJ ADV

10. clear
    clearly
    Mark is a much ______ more clearly ______ speaker than his father. ADJ ADV

PRACTICE 12. Completing a comparative. (Chart 9-4)

Directions: Complete the comparisons with a pronoun and an appropriate auxiliary verb.

1. Bob arrived at ten. I arrived at eleven.
   → He arrived earlier than ______ I did ______.

2. Linda is a good painter. Steven is better.
   → He is a better painter than ______ she is ______.

3. Alex knows a lot of people. I don’t know many people at all.
   → He knows a lot more people than ______ ______.
4. I won the race. Anna came in second.
   → I ran faster than ___________.

5. My parents were nervous about my motorcycle ride. I was just a little nervous.
   → They were a lot more nervous than ___________.

6. My aunt will stay with us for two weeks. My uncle has to return home to his job after a
couple of days.
   → She will be here with us a lot longer than ___________.

   → She speaks a lot more clearly than ___________.

8. I've been here for two years. Sam has been here for two months.
   → I've been here a lot longer than ___________.

9. I had a good time at the picnic yesterday. Mary didn't enjoy it.
   → I had a lot more fun at the picnic than ___________.

10. I can reach the top shelf of the bookcase. Tim can only reach the shelf next to the top.
    → I can reach higher than ___________.

◊ PRACTICE 13. Completing comparisons with pronouns. (Chart 9-4)

Directions: Complete the comparisons both formal and informal pronouns: subject pronoun + verb OR object pronoun.

1. I have a brother. His name David. He’s really tall. I’m just medium height.
   → He’s taller than ___________ I am (formal) OR ___________ me (informal).

2. My brother is sixteen. I’m seventeen.
   → I’m older than ___________.

3. My sister is really pretty. I’ve never thought I was pretty.
   → She’s a lot prettier than ___________.

4. I’m pretty smart, though. My sister isn’t interested in school.
   → I’m smarter than ___________.

5. My mom tells me that I shouldn’t compare myself to my sister. She says we are both individuals in our own right and have many fine qualities. My mom is wise. I don’t think I’m wise yet.
   → My mom is much wiser than ___________.

6. My cousin Rita was born two days after I was.
   → She is two days younger than ___________.

178 CHAPTER 9
PRACTICE 14. VERY vs. A LOT / MUCH / FAR. (Chart 9-5)

Directions: Circle the correct answer or answers. More than one answer may be correct.

1. This watch is not ______ expensive.
   A. very  B. a lot  C. much  D. far

2. That watch is ______ more expensive than this one.
   A. very  B. a lot  C. much  D. far

3. My nephew is ______ polite.
   A. very  B. a lot  C. much  D. far

4. My nephew is ______ more polite than my niece.
   A. very  B. a lot  C. much  D. far

5. Ted is ______ taller than his brother.
   A. very  B. a lot  C. much  D. far

6. Ted is ______ tall.
   A. very  B. a lot  C. much  D. far

7. I think astronomy is ______ more interesting than geology.
   A. very  B. a lot  C. much  D. far

8. I think astronomy is ______ interesting.
   A. very  B. a lot  C. much  D. far

9. It took me a lot longer to get over my cold than it took you to get over your cold. My cold was ______ worse than yours.
   A. very  B. a lot  C. much  D. far

PRACTICE 15. NOT AS ... AS and LESS ... THAN. (Chart 9-6)

Directions: All of the sentences contain not as ... as. If possible, change them to sentences with the same meaning using less ... than.

1. I don't live as close to my brother as I do to my sister.
   (no change possible using less)

2. I don't visit my brother as often as I visit my sister.
   → I visit my brother less often than I visit my sister.

3. Sam isn't as nice as his brother.

4. Sam isn't as generous as his brother.

5. I'm not as eager to go to the circus as the children are.

6. A notebook isn't as expensive as a textbook.

7. Wood isn't as hard as metal.

8. Some people think that life in a city isn't as peaceful as life in a small town.

9. The moon isn't nearly as far away from the earth as the sun is.

10. I don't travel to Europe on business as frequently as I used to.
PRACTICE 16. Unclear comparisons. (Chart 9-7)

Directions: Check the sentences that have unclear comparisons. Make the necessary corrections.

1. ✓ Sam enjoys football more than his best friend.
2. ___ Andy writes better financial reports than his boss.
3. ___ The coach helped Anna more than Nancy.
4. ___ Sara likes tennis more than her husband.
5. ___ Cathy leaves more generous tips at restaurants than her husband.
6. ___ Kelly eats more organic food than his roommate.
7. ___ Charles knows Judy better than Kevin.

PRACTICE 17. Using MORE with nouns. (Charts 9-3 and 9-8)

Directions: Choose from the given words to complete the sentences with the comparative (more/-er). If the word you use in the comparative is an adjective, circle ADJ. If it is an adverb, circle ADV. If it is a noun, circle NOUN.

books carefully easily newspapers friends homework pleasant loud snow

1. My husband always wants to know everything that is going on in the world. He reads many more newspapers than I do. ADJ ADV NOUN
2. University students study hard. They have a lot than high school students. ADJ ADV NOUN
3. There is far in winter in Alaska than there is in Texas. ADJ ADV NOUN
4. I'm lonely. I wish I had to go places with and spend time with. ADJ ADV NOUN
5. A warm, sunny day is than a cold windy day. ADJ ADV NOUN
6. Rob picks up languages with little difficulty. For me, learning a second language is slow and difficult. I guess some people just learn languages a lot than others. ADJ ADV NOUN
7. The New York City Public Library has many than the public library in Sweetwater, Oregon. ADJ ADV NOUN
8. I have been driving since my accident. ADJ ADV NOUN
9. Karen doesn't need a microphone when she speaks to the audience. She's the only person I know whose voice is than mine. ADJ ADV NOUN

180 CHAPTER 9
PRACTICE 18. Repeating a comparative. (Chart 9-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with words from the list. Repeat the comparative.

angry
sleepy
big
expensive
cold
friendly
long
fast
good
loud

1. His health is improving. He's getting __________ better and better __________.
2. They just had their sixth child. Their family is getting __________________________.
3. As we continued traveling north, the weather got __________________________.
   Eventually, everything we saw was frozen.
4. As the soccer game progressed, the crowd became __________________________.
   My ears started ringing!
5. I was really mad! I got __________________________ until my brother touched my arm and told me to calm down.
6. We were so glad we had arrived early at the ticket office. As we waited for it to open, the line got __________________________.
7. Textbooks are costly. They are getting __________________________ every year.
8. We stayed up all night to work on our geology project. We became __________________________ as the night wore on, but we stayed awake and finally finished in time for class.
9. The people I met in my new job became __________________________ as we became better acquainted. Soon I began spending time with them after work.
10. When Joan was training for the marathon race, she was pretty slow in the beginning, but she got __________________________ as time went by. Eventually her time was so good that her coach thought she might have a chance to win.

PRACTICE 19. Double comparatives. (Chart 9-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with double comparatives.

1. I exercise every day. Exercise makes me strong. __The more________ I exercise, __the stronger________ I get.
2. If butter is soft, it is easy to spread on bread. The ________ the butter is, the ________ it is to spread on bread.

3. I know many things now that I wasn’t aware of when I was younger. It seems that the ________ I get, the ________ I get.

4. I’m trying to make my life simpler. It makes me feel more relaxed. The ________ my life, the ________ I feel.

5. I spend a long time each day looking at a computer screen. My eyes get very tired. The ________ I look at a computer screen, the ________ my eyes get.

6. When the wind blows hard, it whistles through the trees a lot. The ________ the wind blows, the ________ it whistles through the trees.

◇ PRACTICE 20. Double comparatives. (Chart 9-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences with double comparatives, using the ideas in parentheses.

1. (I became bored. He talked.)
I met a man at a party last night. I tried to be interested in what he was saying, but the more he talked, the more bored I became.

2. (You understand more. You are old.)
There are many advantages to being young, but the ________

3. (I became confused. I thought about it.)
At first I thought I understood what she’d said, but the ________

4. (The air is very polluted. The chances of developing respiratory diseases are great.)
Pollution poses many dangers. For example, the ________

5. (Bill talked very fast. I became confused.)
Bill was trying to explain some complicated physics problems to help me prepare for an exam. He kept talking faster and faster. The ________

6. (The fans clapped and cheered. The basketball team made more shots.)
The fans in the stadium were excited and noisy, and it seemed to make their team play better. The ________
Directions: Complete the sentences with the given ideas. Use the superlative. If you don’t know the right answer, guess.

1. Kangaroos are **the most familiar** of all Australian grassland animals.
2. Giraffes have _______________________ of all animals.
3. African elephants have _______________________ of all animals.
4. Horses have _______________________ of all four-legged animals.
5. Bottle-nosed dolphins are _______________________ animals that live in water. Apes and monkeys are _______________________ animals that live on land (besides human beings).

Directions: Make comparisons.

**PART I.** Complete the sentences with superlatives and the appropriate word: *in, of, or ever.*

1. Physics is (difficult) **the most difficult** course I have **ever** taken.
2. Isn’t my hometown (friendly) **the friendliest** place **of** all the towns you have visited?
3. What is (embarrassing) **the most embarrassing** experience you have had **in** your life?
4. My friends say that my grandmother is (wise) _______________________ person they have **ever** met.
5. My wife is (good) _______________________ cook **in** the world.
6. My three children all have artistic talent, but Jimmy is (artistic) _______________________ **all.**
7. My bedroom on the third floor is (hot) _______________________ room **in** the house.
8. July is (warm) _______________________ month **in** the year.
9. Min-Sok is one of (bright) _______________________ students I’ve **ever** taught.
10. Which is (high) _______________________ mountain **in** the world, K2 or Mt. Everest?
11. My mother found Dr. John to be (knowledgeable) __________________________ doctor ________ all the doctors she has gone to.

12. What is (important) __________________________ thing you could do _____ your life?

PART II. Complete with least and the appropriate word: in, of, or ever.

13. Ed is not lazy, but he is certainly (ambitious) ______the least ambitious of____ all the people I have worked with.

14. That painting didn’t cost much. It is (expensive) __________________________ work of art we have ________ bought.

15. Antarctica is (populated) __________________________ continent ________ the world.

16. Kim seems addicted to the Internet. I think (amount) __________________________ of time she has ________ spent on it is four hours.

◊ PRACTICE 23. AS . . . AS, MORE/-ER, and MOST/-EST. (Charts 9-1 – 9-11)

**Directions:** Make comparisons.

PART I. Compare the cost of the items in parentheses. Use the given expressions.

1. (a pencil vs. a telephone)
   A pencil ________ is less expensive than ______ a telephone ________.

2. (a paper clip vs. a diamond ring)
   __________________________ is much more expensive than __________________________.

3. (a cup of coffee vs. a can of coffee beans)
   __________________________ is not as expensive as __________________________.

4. (radios vs. CD players vs. big screen TVs)
   __________________________ and __________________________ are both less expensive than __________________________.

5. (a compact car vs. a house)
   __________________________ is not nearly as expensive as __________________________.

6. (footballs vs. soccer balls vs. ping-pong balls vs. basketballs)
   __________________________, __________________________, and __________________________ are all more expensive than __________________________.

*vs. is an abbreviation for versus, which means “as opposed to, as compared to.”

184 CHAPTER 9
PART II. Compare the waterfalls by using the given expressions.

7. **Angel Falls** is much higher than Niagara Falls\(^*\).

8. ___________________ is almost as high ___________________.

9. ___________________ is the highest ___________________.

10. ___________________ is not nearly as high ___________________.

11. ___________________ is not quite as high ___________________.

**Waterfalls of the World**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Waterfall</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Height</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Niagara Falls</td>
<td>United States and Canada</td>
<td>53 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giessbach Falls</td>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>604 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cuquenan Falls</td>
<td>Venezuela</td>
<td>610 meters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angel Falls</td>
<td>Venezuela</td>
<td>807 meters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PART III. Compare the weight of the items in parentheses. Use the given expressions.

12. *(air, iron)* Air is lighter than iron.

13. *(iron, wood)* _______________ is heavier ___________________.

14. *(water, iron, wood, air)* Of the four elements, _______________ is the heaviest _______________.

15. *(water, air)* _______________ is not as heavy _______________.

16. *(water, iron, wood, air)* Of the four elements, _______________ is the lightest _______________.

17. *(water, air)* _______________ is not nearly as light _______________.

18. *(water, iron, wood)* _______________ and _______________ are both heavier _______________.

\(^*\)A singular verb is used after Angel Falls because it is the name of a place. Angel Falls is in Venezuela. Similarly, the United States takes a singular verb because it is the name of a place: *The United States is a big country.*
PRACTICE 24. Using NEVER with comparatives. (Chart 9-4)

Directions: Circle the letter of the sentence that is closest in meaning to the given sentence.

1. I've never taken a harder test in this class.
   a. The test was hard.
   b. The test wasn't hard.

2. I've never taken a hard test in this class.
   a. The tests in this class are hard.
   b. The tests in this class aren't hard.

3. Professor Jones has never given a difficult test.
   a. The test was difficult.
   b. The test wasn't difficult.

4. Professor Smith has never given a more difficult test.
   a. His tests are difficult.
   b. His tests aren't difficult.

5. I've never heard of a worse economic situation in Leadville.
   a. Leadville has a bad economic situation.
   b. Leadville doesn't have a bad economic situation.

6. I've never heard of a bad economic situation in Leadville.
   a. Leadville has bad economic situations.
   b. Leadville doesn't have bad economic situations.

7. We've never stayed in a more comfortable hotel room.
   a. The room was comfortable.
   b. The room wasn't comfortable.

8. We've never stayed in a comfortable room at that hotel.
   a. The rooms are comfortable.
   b. The rooms aren't comfortable.

PRACTICE 25. Using EVER and NEVER in comparisons. (Charts 9-4 and 9-11)

Directions: Complete the sentences with comparatives and superlatives.

1. Pierre told a really funny story. It is the funniest story I've ever heard
   (in my life). I've never heard a funnier story (than that one).

2. John felt very sad when he saw the child begging for money. In fact, he has never felt
   ______________________________________ (than he did then). That is __________________________ he has
   ever felt (in his life).

3. Jan just finished a really good book. She thinks it was __________________________ book she has
   ever read. She says that she has never read a __________________________.
4. The villagers fought the rising flood all through the night. They were exhausted when the river finally crested. They have never had an experience. That was an experience they have ever had.

5. When her daughter was born, Rachel felt extremely happy. In fact, she has never felt happier than she did then. That was the happiest she has ever felt (in her life).

6. Oscar told a very entertaining story after dinner. In fact, he has never told a more entertaining story. It is one of the stories I have ever heard in my life.

7. Mari studied very hard for her college entrance exams. In fact, she has never studied harder. That was the hardest she has ever studied in her life.

8. The weather is really hot today! In fact, so far this year the weather has never been hotter. This is the weather we’ve had so far this year.

◊ PRACTICE 26. Review of comparatives and superlatives. (Charts 9-1 → 9-11)

Directions: Complete the sentences. Use any appropriate form of the words in parentheses and add any other necessary words.

1. Sometimes I feel like all of my friends are intelligent more intelligent than I am, and yet, sometimes they tell me that they think I am smart the smartest person in the class.

2. One of the (popular) holidays in Japan is New Year’s.

3. A mouse is small a rat.

4. Europe is first in agricultural production of potatoes. Potatoes are grown in Europe on any other continent.

5. Mercury is (close) planet to the sun. It moves around the sun (fast) any other planet in the solar system.

6. In terms of area, the United States is large state the United States is Alaska, but it has one of the small populations all the states.

7. Nothing is (important) good health. Certainly, gaining wealth is much (important) enjoying good health.
8. I need more facts. I can’t make my decision until I get (information) ________.

9. Rebecca is a wonderful person. I don’t think I’ve ever met a (kind) ________ and (generous) ________ person.

10. You can trust her. You will never meet a (honest) ________ person ________ she is.

11. I’m leaving! This is (bad) ________ movie I’ve ever seen! I won’t sit through another second of it.

12. One of (safe) ________ places to be during a lightning storm is inside a car.

13. Small birds have a much (fast) ________ heartbeat ________ large birds.

14. Are your feet exactly the same size? Almost everyone’s left foot is (big) ________ ________ their right foot.*

15. Both Bangkok and Venice are famous for their waterways, but Bangkok has (extensive) ________ canals ________ Venice has.

◊ PRACTICE 27. Review of comparatives and superlatives. (Charts 9-1 → 9-11)

Directions: Complete the sentences. Use any appropriate form of the words in parentheses and add any other necessary words.

1. I feel (safe) ________ safer ________ in a plane ________ than ________ I do in a car.

2. Jakarta is (large) ________ ________ city ________ Indonesia.

3. Mountain climbing takes (strength) ________ ________ walking on a level path.

4. Cheese usually tastes (good) ________ ________ at room temperature than ________ it ________ just after you take it out of the refrigerator.

5. The (short) ________ ________ distance between two points is a straight line.

6. The (thin) ________ ________ a lemon’s rind is, the (juicy) ________ ________ the lemon is.

7. Mr. Hochingnauong feels (comfortable) ________ ________ speaking his native language ________ he does speaking English.

*Grammar note: In formal English, a singular pronoun is used to refer to everyone:
Almost everyone’s left foot is bigger than his or her right foot.

In everyday informal usage, a plural pronoun is frequently used:
Almost everyone’s left foot is bigger than their right foot.
8. My friend has studied many languages. He thinks Japanese is (difficult) all the languages he has studied.

9. One of the (bad) nuclear accidents the world occurred at Chernobyl in 1986.

10. I think learning a second language is (hard) learning chemistry or mathematics.

11. The (low) temperature ever recorded in Alaska was minus 80°F (-27°C) in 1971.

12. Computers are complicated machines, but probably (complex) thing the universe is the human brain.

13. I've seen a lot of funny movies over the years, but the one I saw last night was (funny) all.

14. Riding a bicycle can be dangerous. (people) were killed in bicycle accidents last year have been killed in airplane accidents in the last four years.

15. Some people build their own boats from parts that they order from a manufacturer. They save money that way. It is (expensive) to build your own boat to buy a boat.

◊ PRACTICE 28. LIKE, ALIKE. (Chart 9-12)
Directions: Complete the sentences with like or alike.

1. My mother and my father rarely argue because they think alike.

2. The Browns designed their summer cabin to look like the inside of a boat.

3. Joe and John are twins, but they don't look alike.

4. They dress because they have the same taste in clothes.

5. This lamp doesn't look the one I ordered.

6. Mike is 30, but he continually acts a child.

7. Professor Miller's lectures are all repetitive and boring.

8. This coffee doesn't taste the coffee we sampled at the store.

9. The clouds to the east look rain clouds.

10. My grandmother and mother sound on the phone.
PRACTICE 29. THE SAME AS, SIMILAR TO, DIFFERENT FROM. (Chart 9-12)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct preposition: as, to, or from.

1. My coat is different ______ yours.
2. Our apartment is similar ______ my cousin's.
3. The news report was the same ______ the report we heard on Channel Six last night.
4. How is the North Pole different ______ the South Pole?
5. Your jacket is exactly the same ______ mine.
6. I enjoyed reading your letters from China. My experiences in Beijing were similar ______ yours.
7. For many students, their grades in college are similar ______ their grades in high school.
8. The movie on our flight to London was the same ______ the movie on our flight to Paris.
9. Some herbal teas are somewhat similar ______ green tea.
10. Courtship and dating patterns in Europe are very different ______ those in many Middle Eastern and Asian countries.
11. Except for a few minor differences in grammar, spelling, and vocabulary, American English is the same ______ British English.
12. The English spoken in the United States is only slightly different ______ the English spoken in Britain, Canada, and Australia.

PRACTICE 30. LIKE, ALIKE, SIMILAR (TO), DIFFERENT (FROM). (Chart 9-12)

Directions: Make comparisons.

PART I. Compare the figures. Use the words in parentheses.

1. like ______ A is like D ________.
2. alike ____________________________.
3. similar (to) ________________________ and ________.
4. different (from) ________________________ , ________, and ________.
PART II. Compare the figures. Use the same (as), similar (to), or different (from).

5. All of the triangles are __________________ each other.
6. A and D are __________________ each other.
7. A and C are __________________.
8. A isn’t __________________ C.
9. B and C are __________________ D.

◊ PRACTICE 31. THE SAME, SIMILAR, DIFFERENT, LIKE, ALIKE. (Chart 9-12)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the same, similar, different, like, or alike.

1. Dana swims ___________ a fish. She never wants to come out of the water.
2. The lake doesn’t have a ripple on it. It looks ___________ glass.
3. There are six girls in our family, but none of us look ___________. Our brothers also look different.
4. A: Some people can tell we’re sisters. Do you think we look ___________?
   B: Somewhat. The color of your hair is not ___________, but your eyes are exactly ___________ color. You also have ___________ shaped face.
5. A: I’m sorry, but I believe you have my umbrella.
   B: Oh? Yes, I see. It looks almost exactly ___________ mine, doesn’t it?
6. A: How do you like the spaghetti sauce I made? I tried to make it exactly ___________ yours.
   B: I can tell. Your sauce is very ___________ the one I make, but I think it’s missing one spice.
   A: Oh? What’s that?
   B: That’s a secret! But I’ll tell if you promise to keep it a secret.
7. Some people think my sister and I are twins. We look ___________ and talk ___________, but our personalities are quite ___________.
8. Homonyms are words that have ___________ pronunciation but different spelling, such as “pair” and “pear” or “sea” and “see.” For many people, “been” and “bean” are homonyms and have ___________ pronunciation. For other people, however, “been” and “bean” are ___________ words with different pronunciations. These people pronounce “been” like “bin” or “ben.”
PRACTICE 32. Error analysis. (Chapter 9)

Directions: Correct the errors.

1. My brother is older than me.

2. A sea is more deeper than a lake.

3. A donkey isn’t as big to a horse.

4. Ellen is happiest person I’ve ever met.

5. When I feel embarrassed, my face gets red and more red.

6. One of the largest animal in the world is the hippopotamus.

7. The traffic on the highway is more bad from than it was a few months ago.

8. Jack is the same old from Jerry.

9. Peas are similar from beans, but they have several differences.

10. Last winter was pretty mild. This winter is cold and rainy. It’s much rain than last winter.

11. Mrs. Peters, the substitute teacher, is very friendly than the regular instructor.

12. Although alligators and crocodiles are similar, alligators are less big than crocodiles.

13. Mohammed and Tarek come from different countries, but they became friends easily because they speak a same language, Arabic.

14. Mothers of young children are busier than mothers of teenagers.

15. We’d like to go sailing, but the wind is not as strong today that it was yesterday.

16. We asked for a non-smoking room, but the air and furniture in our hotel room smelled cigarette smoke.
PRACTICE 1. Active vs. passive. (Chart 10-1)

**Directions:** Circle **ACTIVE** if the given sentence is active; circle **PASSIVE** if it is passive. **Underline** the verb.

1. **ACTIVE** PASSIVE Farmers grow rice.
2. ACTIVE (PASSIVE) Rice is grown by farmers.
3. ACTIVE PASSIVE Sara wrote the letter.
4. ACTIVE PASSIVE The letter was written by Sara.
5. ACTIVE PASSIVE The teacher explained the lesson.
6. ACTIVE PASSIVE The lesson was explained by the teacher.
7. ACTIVE PASSIVE Bridges are designed by engineers.
8. ACTIVE PASSIVE Engineers design bridges.

PRACTICE 2. Active vs. passive. (Chart 10-1)

**Directions:** Change the active verbs in *italics* to passive.

1. Mr. Catt *delivers* our mail. Our mail *is* *delivered* by Mr. Catt.
2. The children *have eaten* the cake. The cake *is* eaten by the children.
3. Linda *wrote* that letter. That letter *is* *written* by Linda.
4. The jeweler *is going to fix* my watch. My watch *is* *fixed* by the jeweler.
5. Ms. Bond *will teach* our class. Our class *will be taught* by Ms. Bond.
6. Anne *is going to bring* dinner. Dinner *is* *brought* by Anne.
7. Our team won the final game by our team.

8. Dr. Pitt will treat the patient by Dr. Pitt.

9. Ms. Davis has planted several trees by Ms. Davis.

10. The police catch criminals by the police.

◊ PRACTICE 3. Review of past participles. (Charts 2-6 and 2-7)

Directions: Write the past participles of the verbs. The list contains both regular and irregular verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Form</th>
<th>Simple Past</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
<th>Simple Form</th>
<th>Simple Past</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. bring</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>brought</td>
<td>14. play</td>
<td>played</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. build</td>
<td>built</td>
<td></td>
<td>15. read</td>
<td>read*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. buy</td>
<td>bought</td>
<td></td>
<td>16. save</td>
<td>saved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. eat</td>
<td>ate</td>
<td></td>
<td>17. send</td>
<td>sent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. plan</td>
<td>planned</td>
<td></td>
<td>18. speak</td>
<td>spoke</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td></td>
<td>19. spend</td>
<td>spent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td></td>
<td>20. take</td>
<td>took</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td></td>
<td>21. teach</td>
<td>taught</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td></td>
<td>22. go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. leave</td>
<td>left</td>
<td></td>
<td>23. visit</td>
<td>visited</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. lose</td>
<td>lost</td>
<td></td>
<td>24. wear</td>
<td>wore</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. make</td>
<td>made</td>
<td></td>
<td>25. write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td></td>
<td>26. do</td>
<td>did</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

◊ PRACTICE 4. Passive form. (Charts 10-1, 10-2, and 10-5)

Directions: Use the given form of be (was, is, going to be, etc.) and complete the sentences with the past participles of any verbs in the list in Practice 3.

1. was

There's no more candy. All the candy was eaten by the children.

2. is

Arabic ___________________ by the people of Syria and Iraq.

*The simple past and past participle of read are pronounced "red," as the color red.
3. are Books ____________________ by authors.

4. was My friend ____________________ in an accident. He broke his nose.

5. is going to be Bombay, India, ____________________ by thousands of tourists this year.

6. has been War and Peace is a famous book. It ____________________ by millions of people.

7. will be The championship game ____________________ in Milan next week.

8. can be Everyone ____________________ to read. I’ll teach you if you’d like.

9. are going to be Our pictures ____________________ by a professional photographer at the wedding.

10. have been Oranges ____________________ by farmers in Jordan since ancient times.

11. is Special fire-resistant clothing ____________________ by firefighters.

12. will be A new bridge across the White River ____________________ by the city government next year.

◊ PRACTICE 5. Passive vs. active meaning. (Charts 10-1 and 10-2)

Directions: Circle the letter of the sentence that has the same meaning as the given sentence.

1. My grandmother makes her own bread.
   a. This bread is made by my grandmother.
   b. Someone makes my grandmother’s bread.

2. Bob was taken to the hospital by car.
   a. Bob drove to the hospital.
   b. Someone drove Bob to the hospital.

3. Suzanne has just been asked to her first dance.
   a. Suzanne has asked someone to the dance.
   b. Someone has asked Suzanne to the dance.

4. You will be informed of the test results.
   a. You will inform someone of the test results.
   b. Someone will inform you of the test results.

5. You are not allowed to enter.
   a. You do not allow people to enter.
   b. Someone says you cannot enter.
6. The child was saved after five minutes in the water.
   a. Someone saved the child.
   b. The child saved herself.

PRACTICE 6. Tense forms of the passive. (Charts 10-1 and 10-2)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the passive form of the given verbs.

PART I. Use the SIMPLE PRESENT with:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>collect</th>
<th>grow</th>
<th>understand</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>pay</td>
<td>write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Taxes **are collected** by the government.
2. Books **are written** by authors.
3. Rice **are grown** by farmers in Korea.
4. Small fish **are eaten** by big fish.
5. I **pay** for my work by my boss.
6. The meaning of a smile **are understood** by everyone.

PART II. Use the SIMPLE PAST with:

| build | collect | destroy | write |

7. Yesterday the students’ papers **were written** by the teacher at the end of the test.
8. The Great Wall of China **was built** by Chinese emperors more than 2500 years ago.
9. The book *War and Peace* **was written** by Leo Tolstoy, a famous Russian novelist.
10. Several small buildings **were destroyed** by the earthquake in Los Angeles.

PART III. Use the PRESENT PERFECT with:

| read | speak | visit | wear |

11. The pyramids in Egypt **have been read** by millions of tourists.
12. Spanish **have been spoken** by people in Latin America for nearly 600 years.
13. Mark Twain’s books **have been visited** by millions of people through the years.
14. Perfume **have been worn** by both men and women since ancient times.
PART IV. Use will with:

- discover
- visit
- save

15. New information about the universe will be discovered by scientists in the twenty-first century.

16. Hawaii will be visited by thousands of tourists this year.

17. Tigers will be saved from extinction by people who care.

PART V. Use be going to with:

- elect
- hurt
- offer

18. Your friend is going to be hurt by your unkind remark when she hears about it.

19. New computer courses are going to be offered by the university next year.

20. A new leader will be elected by the people in my country next month.

◊ PRACTICE 7. Passive to active. (Charts 10-1 and 10-2)

Directions: Change the passive sentences to active. Keep the same verb tense.

1. Taxes are collected by the government.
   → The government collects taxes.

2. Small fish are eaten by big fish.

3. The meaning of a smile is understood by everyone.

4. War and Peace was written by Leo Tolstoy.

5. The cat was chased by the dog.

6. ABC Corporation is going to be bought by XYZ Inc.

7. The pyramids in Egypt have been visited by millions of tourists.

8. New information about the universe will be discovered by scientists in the twenty-first century.

◊ PRACTICE 8. Passive to active. (Charts 5-2, 10-1, and 10-2)

Directions: Change the passive sentences to active. Keep the same tense. Some of the sentences are questions.

1. The letter was signed by Mr. Rice.
   → Mr. Rice signed the letter.
2. Was the letter signed by Mr. Foster?
   → Did Mr. Foster sign the letter?

3. The fax was sent by Ms. Owens.

4. Was the other fax sent by Mr. Chu?

5. Will Adam be met at the airport by Mr. Berg?

6. Have you been invited to the reception by Mrs. Jordan?

7. I have been invited to the reception by Mr. Lee.

8. Is the homework going to be collected by the teacher?

◊ PRACTICE 9. Transitive vs. intransitive. (Chart 10-3)

Directions: Circle TRANSITIVE if the verb takes an object; circle INTRANSITIVE if it does not. Underline the object of the verb.

1. (TRANSITIVE) INTRANSITIVE Alex wrote a letter.
2. TRANSITIVE (INTRANSITIVE) Alex waited for Amy. (There is no object of the verb.)
3. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE Rita lives in Mexico.
4. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE Sam walked to his office.
5. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE Kate caught the ball.
6. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE My plane arrived at six-thirty.
7. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE Emily is crying.
8. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE A falling tree hit my car.
9. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE I returned the book to the library yesterday.
10. TRANSITIVE INTRANSITIVE A bolt of lightning appeared in the sky last night.

◊ PRACTICE 10. Active and passive. (Charts 10-1 → 10-3)

Directions: Underline the object of the verb if the given sentence has one. Then change the sentence to the passive. Some sentences cannot be changed to the passive.

CREASE 1. A noise awakened me.
   PASSIVE I was awakened by a noise.

2. It rained hard yesterday.
   (no change)

3. Alice discovered the mistake.

4. We stayed at a hotel last night.
ACTIVE

5. I slept only four hours last night.
6. Anita fixed the chair.
7. Did Susan agree with Prof. Hill?
8. Ann’s cat died last week.
9. That book belongs to me.
10. The airplane arrived twenty minutes late.
11. The teacher announced a quiz.
12. I agree with Larry.
13. Do you agree with me?
14. Jack went to the doctor’s office.

PASSIVE

5. Only four hours last night I slept.
6. The chair fixed Anita.
7. Did Prof. Hill agree with Susan?
8. Last week died Ann’s cat.
9. To me belongs that book.
10. Late twenty minutes the airplane arrived.
11. a quiz announced the teacher.
12. Larry agree I with.
13. Do you agree with me?
14. The doctor’s office went to Jack.

(Charts 10-1 → 10-3)
Directions: Check the sentences that are passive.

1. I came by plane.
2. I was invited to the party by Alex.
3. Many people died during the earthquake.
4. Many people were killed by collapsing buildings.
5. The earthquake has killed many people.
6. The game will be won by the Bulls.
7. The Bulls will win the game.
8. Gina’s baby cried for more than an hour.
9. Most of the fresh fruit at the market was bought by customers.
10. Some customers bought boxes full of fresh fruit.
11. Accidents always occur at that intersection.

◊ PRACTICE 12. The BY-phrase. (Chart 10-4)
Directions: Underline the passive verbs. Answer the questions. If you don’t know the exact person or people who performed the action, write “unknown.”

1. Soft duck feathers are used to make pillows.
   Who uses duck feathers to make pillows? unknown

2. The mail was opened by Shelley.
   Who opened the mail? Shelley

3. Eric Wong’s new book will be translated into many languages.
   Who will translate Eric Wong’s new book?
4. Rebecca’s bicycle was stolen yesterday from in front of the library.
   Who stole Rebecca’s bicycle? 

5. Our wedding photos were taken by a professional photographer.
   Who took our wedding photos? 

6. Malawi is a small country in southeastern Africa. A new highway is going to be built in Malawi next year.
   Who is going to build the new highway? 

7. There are no more empty apartments in our building. The apartment next to ours has been rented by a young family with two small children.
   Who rented the apartment next to ours? 

8. The apartment directly above ours was empty for two months, but now it has also been rented.
   Who rented the apartment directly above ours? 

◊ PRACTICE 13. The BY-phrase. (Chart 10-4)
Directions: Cross out the unnecessary by-phrases (those that do not give important information).

1. We were helped right away at the appliance store by someone.

2. We were helped at the appliance store by a friendly and knowledgeable salesperson.
   (no change)

3. Our mail was delivered early today by someone.

4. My favorite lamp was broken by the children when they were playing ball in the house.

5. Our house was built just last year by Baker Construction Company.

6. Our neighbors’ house was built ten years ago by someone who builds houses.

7. The child will be operated on tomorrow by three specialists at Hope Hospital.

8. The child will be operated on tomorrow by someone.

◊ PRACTICE 14. Active to passive. (Charts 10-1 → 10-4)
Directions: Change the active sentences to passive. Use the by-phrase only if necessary.

1. Someone has canceled the soccer game.
   → The soccer game has been canceled.

2. The president has canceled the meeting.
   → The meeting has been canceled by the president.

3. Someone serves beer and wine at that restaurant.

4. Something confused me in class yesterday.
5. The teacher's directions confused me.

6. No one has washed the dishes yet.

7. Someone should wash them soon.

8. Did someone wash this sweater in hot water?

9. No one should wash wool sweaters in hot water.

10. Luis invited me to the party.

11. Has anyone invited you to the party?

---

**PRACTICE 15. Review: active vs. passive. (Charts 10-1 → 10-4)**

*Directions:* Create sentences with the given words. Use the present tense. Some are passive. Some are not.

1. Sometimes keys / hide / under cars
   → Sometimes keys are hidden under cars.

2. Cats / hide / under cars
   → Cats hide under cars.

3. Students / teach / by teachers

4. Students / study / a lot

5. Cereal / often eat / at breakfast

6. Cats / eat / cat food

7. Mice / eat / by cats

8. Songs / sing / to children / by their mothers

9. Children / sing / songs / in school

10. Thai food / cook / in Thai restaurants

11. Chefs / cook / in restaurants

---

**PRACTICE 16. Progressive tenses in passive. (Chart 10-5)**

*Directions:* Underline the progressive verb. Then complete each sentence with the correct passive form.

1. Some people are considering a new plan.
   → A new plan **is being considered**.
2. The grandparents are watching the children.
   → The children ____________________________ by their grandparents.

3. Some painters are painting Mr. Rivera's apartment this week.
   → Mr. Rivera’s apartment ____________________________ this week.

4. We can't use the language lab today because someone is fixing the equipment.
   → We can’t use the language lab today because the equipment ____________________________

5. We couldn’t use the language lab yesterday because someone was fixing the equipment.
   → We couldn’t use the language lab yesterday because the equipment ____________________________

6. Eric's cousins are meeting him at the airport this afternoon.
   → Eric ____________________________ by his cousins at the airport this afternoon.

7. I watched while the movers were moving the furniture from my apartment to a truck.
   → I watched while the furniture ____________________________ from my apartment to a truck.

8. Everyone looked at the flag while they were singing the national anthem.
   → Everyone looked at the flag while the national anthem ____________________________

9. Scientists are still discovering new species of plants and animals.
   → New species of plants and animals ____________________________

◊ PRACTICE 17. Passive forms of progressive verbs. (Chart 10-5)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the given verbs. Use the present progressive or the past progressive. All the sentences are passive.

| build | clean | fly | √play | read | watch |

1. A soccer game ____________________________ in Wellstone Arena today.

2. The office ____________________________ by the janitor when I got there early this morning.

3. A new house ____________________________ in our neighborhood right now.

4. The book ____________________________ aloud to the children by the teacher in the first grade class right now.

5. The protestors ____________________________ by the police during the anti-war demonstration.

6. The small plane ____________________________ by the co-pilot when it crashed.
PRACTICE 18. Passive forms of progressive verbs. (Chart 10-5)

Directions: Circle the letter of the sentence with the same meaning as the given sentence.

1. A mouse is being chased.
   a. A mouse is trying to catch something.
   b. Something is trying to catch a mouse.

2. The soldiers are being trained.
   a. The soldiers are training someone.
   b. Someone is training the soldiers.

3. The earthquake victims are being helped by the medics.
   a. The medics are receiving help.
   b. The victims are receiving help.

4. The children were trying to find their parents after the school play.
   a. The children were looking for their parents.
   b. The parents were looking for their children.

5. The airline passengers were being asked to wait while the plane was cleaned.
   a. The passengers made a request.
   b. Someone asked the passengers to wait.

PRACTICE 19. Review: active vs. passive. (Chart 10-1 – 10-5)

Directions: Write “C” if the sentence is correct. Write “I” if it is incorrect. Make any necessary corrections.

1. It was happened many years ago.
2. Rice is grown in California.
3. I was go to school yesterday.
4. Two firefighters have injured while they were fighting the fire.
5. Sara was accidentally broken the window.
6. Kara was eaten a snack when she got home from school.
7. Timmy was eating when the phone rang.
8. I am agree with you.
9. The little boy was fallen down while he was running in the park.
10. The swimmer was died from a shark attack.
11. The swimmer was killed by a shark.
12. I was slept for nine hours last night.
PRACTICE 20. Passive modals. (Chart 10-6)

Directions: Change the sentences from active to passive. Include the by-phrase only if it contains important information.

1. Someone might cancel class.
   → Class might be canceled.

2. A doctor can prescribe medicine.

3. Mr. Hook must sign this report.

4. Someone may build a new post office on First Street.

5. People have to place stamps in the upper right-hand corner of an envelope.

6. Someone ought to paint that fence.

7. All of the students must do the assignment.

PRACTICE 21. Passive modals. (Chart 10-6)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using the words in the list with the modals in parentheses. All of the completions are passive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>build</th>
<th>kill</th>
<th>put off</th>
<th>teach</th>
<th>write</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>divide</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>sell</td>
<td>tear down</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Don’t postpone things you need to do. Important work shouldn’t be put off until the last minute. (should not)

2. Your application letter in ink, not pencil. (must)

3. Dogs to do tricks. (can)

4. Mrs. Papadopolous didn’t want her son to go to war because he . (could)

5. My son’s class is too big. It into two classes. (ought to)

6. A: Hey, Tony. These bananas are getting too ripe. They today. Reduce the price. (must)
   B: Right away, Mr. Rice.

7. It takes time to correct an examination that is taken by ten thousand students nationwide. The test results for at least four weeks. (will not)

8. The big bank building on Main Street was severely damaged in the earthquake. The structure no longer safe. The building . (has to) Then a new bank in the same place. (can)
PRACTICE 22. Passive modals. (Chart 10-6)
Directions: Complete the sentences by changing the active modals to passive modals.

1. This book (have to return) ________________ to the library today.
   - has to be returned

2. That book (should return) __________________ tomorrow.
   - __________________

3. This letter (must send) __________________ today.
   - __________________

4. This package (could send) __________________ tomorrow.
   - __________________

5. That package (should send) __________________ by express mail.
   - __________________

6. That box (can put away) __________________ now.
   - __________________

7. These boxes (may throw away) __________________ soon.
   - __________________

8. Those boxes (might pick up) __________________ this afternoon.
   - __________________

9. This room (will clean up) __________________ soon.
   - __________________

PRACTICE 23. Summary: active vs. passive. (Charts 10-1 → 10-6)
Directions: Circle ACTIVE if the given sentence is active; circle PASSIVE if it is passive. Underline the verb.

1. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  People have used sundials since ancient times.

2. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  Sundials have been used for almost three thousand years.

3. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  Sundials, clocks, and watches are used to tell time.

4. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  Some watches show the date as well as the time.

5. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  On digital watches, the time is shown by lighted numbers.

6. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  The first watches were made in Europe six hundred years ago.

7. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  The earliest watches were worn around a person’s neck.

8. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  Pocket watches became popular in the 1600s.

9. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  Today most people wear wristwatches.

10. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  Close to seventy million watches are sold in the United States each year.

11. ACTIVE  PASSIVE  How many watches are made and sold throughout the world in one year?
12. ACTIVE PASSIVE Somewhere in the world, a watch is being sold at this very moment.
13. ACTIVE PASSIVE Many different styles of watches can be bought today.
14. ACTIVE PASSIVE Do you own a watch?
15. ACTIVE PASSIVE Where was it made?

◊ PRACTICE 24. Summary: active vs. passive. (Charts 10-1 → 10-6)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses; use active or passive.

1. I don’t have my car today. It’s in the garage. It (repair) _______ is being _______ repaired right now.
2. Kate didn’t have her car last week because it was in the garage. While it (repair) _______ , she took the bus to work.
3. The mechanic (repair) _______ Tina’s car last week.
4. Glass (make) _______ from sand.
5. You (should carry, not) _______ large sums of money with you.
6. Large sums of money (ought to keep) _______ in a bank, don’t you think?
7. At our high school, the students’ grades (send) _______ to their parents four times each year.
8. I’m sorry, but the computer job is no longer available. A new computer programmer (hire, already) _______ .
9. Household cleaning agents (must use) _______ with care. For example, mixing chlorine bleach with ammonium (can produce) _______ toxic gases.
10. What products (manufacture) _______ in your country?
11. Aluminum* is a valuable metal that (can use) _______ again and again. Because this metal (can recycle) _______ , aluminum cans (should throw away, not) _______ .
12. Endangered wildlife (must protect) _______ from extinction.
13. People with the moral courage to fight against injustices (can find) _______ in every corner of the world.

*Aluminum in American English = aluminium in British English.
**PRACTICE 25. Summary: active vs. passive. (Charts 10-1 → 10-6)**

*Directions*: Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses; use active or passive.

1. Flowers *(love)* _______ *are loved* _______ throughout the world. Their beauty *(bring)* _______ *brings* _______ joy to people's lives. Flowers *(use, often)* _______ _______ _______ to decorate homes or tables in restaurants. Public gardens *(can find)* _______ in almost every country in the world.

2. Around 250,000 different kinds of flowers *(exist)* _______ _______ in the world. The majority of these species *(find)* _______ _______ only in the tropics. Nontropical areas *(have)* _______ _______ many fewer kinds of flowering plants than tropical regions.

3. Flowers may spread from their native region to other similar regions. Sometimes seeds *(carry)* _______ _______ by birds or animals. The wind also *(carry)* _______ _______ some seeds. In many cases throughout history, flowering plants *(introduce)* _______ _______ _______ into new areas by humans.

4. Flowers *(appreciate)* _______ _______ mostly for their beauty, but they can also be a source of food. For example, honey *(make)* _______ _______ from the nectar which *(gather)* _______ _______ from flowers by bees. And some flower buds *(eat)* _______ _______ as food; for example, broccoli and cauliflower are actually flower buds.

5. Some very expensive perfumes *(make)* _______ _______ from the petals of flowers. Most perfumes today, however, *(come, not)* _______ _______ from natural fragrances. Instead, they are synthetic; they *(make)* _______ _______ from chemicals in a laboratory.

6. Some kinds of flowers *(may plant)* _______ _______ in pots and *(grow)* _______ _______ indoors. Most flowers, however, *(survive)* _______ _______ best outdoors in their usual environment.

**PRACTICE 26. Using past participles as adjectives. (Chart 10-7)**

*Directions*: Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

**PART 1.** Jack is . . .

1. married _______ to _______ Katie.
2. excited _______ _______ vacation.
3. exhausted _______ _______ work.
4. frightened _______ _______ heights.
5. disappointed _______ _______ his new car.
6. tired _______ rain.
7. pleased _______ his new boss.
8. involved _______ charity work.
9. worried _______ his elderly parents.
10. acquainted _______ a famous movie star.

PART II. Jack's friend is . . .
11. interested _______ sports.
12. done _______ final exams.
13. terrified _______ spiders.
14. related _______ a famous movie star.
15. opposed _______ private gun ownership.
16. pleased _______ his part-time job.
17. divorced _______ his wife.

PART III. Jack's house is . . .
18. made _______ wood.
19. located _______ the suburbs.
20. crowded _______ antique furniture.
21. prepared _______ emergencies.

◊ PRACTICE 27. Using past participles as adjectives. (Chart 10-7)
Directions: Each sentence has errors with the adjectives used as past participles. Correct the errors.

excited about
1. The little girl is excited for her coming birthday party.

2. Mr. and Mrs. Rose devoted each other.


4. The students are boring in their chemistry project.

5. The paper bags at this store is composed in recycled products.

6. Your friend needs a doctor. He hurt.

7. How well are you prepare the driver's license test?

8. Mary has been engaging with Paul for five years. Will they ever get married?
Directions: Complete the sentences with the appropriate -ed or -ing form of the words in parentheses.

Ben is reading a book. He really likes it. He can’t put it down. He has to keep reading.

1. The book is really __________ interest__ . (interest)
2. Ben is really ________________ . (interest)
3. The story is ________________ . (excite)
4. Ben is ________________ about the story. (excite)
5. Ben is ________________ by the characters in the book. (fascinate)
6. The people in the story are ________________ . (fascinate)
7. Ben doesn’t like to read books when he is ________________ and ________________ . (bore, confuse)
8. Ben didn’t finish the last book he started because it was ________________ and ________________ . (bore, confuse)
9. What is the most ________________ book you’ve read lately? (interest)
10. I just finished a ________________ mystery story that had a very ________________ ending. (fascinate, surprise)

Directions: Choose the correct adjective.

1. Don’t bother to read that book. It’s __________ boring, bored.
2. The students are __________, __________ in learning more about the subject.
3. Ms. Green doesn’t explain things well. The students are __________, __________.
4. Have you heard the latest news? It’s really exciting, excited.

5. I don’t understand these directions. I’m confusing, confused.

6. I read an interesting, interested article in the newspaper this morning.

7. I heard some surprising, surprised news on the radio.

8. I’m boring, bored. Let’s do something. How about going to a movie?

9. Mr. Sawyer bores me. I think he is a boring, bored person.

10. Mr. Ball fascinates me. I think he is a fascinating, fascinated person.

11. Most young children are fascinating, fascinated by animals.

12. Young children think that animals are fascinating, fascinated.

13. That was an embarrassing, embarrassed experience.

14. I read a shocking, shocked report yesterday on the number of children who die from starvation in the world every day. I was really shocking, shocked.

15. The children went to a circus. For them, the circus was exciting, excited. The exciting, excited children jumped up and down.
Directions: Choose the correct adjective.

1. The street signs in our city are confused, confusing.

2. The drivers are frustrated, frustrating.

3. The professor's lecture on anatomy was confused, confusing for the students.

4. The student was very embarrassed, embarrassing by all the attention she got for her high test scores.

5. Sophie said it was embarrassed, embarrassing to have so many people congratulate her.

6. I am really interested, interesting in eighteenth-century art.

7. Eighteenth-century art is really interested, interesting.

8. What an exhausted, exhausting day! I am so tired, tiring from picking strawberries.

9. Some of the new horror movies are frightened, frightening because they are so realistic.

10. Young children shouldn't see them. They would become too frightened, frightening.

Directions: In each group, one sentence is incorrect. Write “I” beside the incorrect sentence.

1. a. Science fascinates me.
   b. Science is fascinating to me.
   c. I Science is fascinated to me.

2. a. The baby is exciting about her new toy.
   b. The baby is excited about her new toy.
   c. The new toy is exciting to the baby.

3. a. The book is really interesting.
   b. The book is really interested.
   c. The book interests me.

4. a. I am exhausting from working in the fields.
   b. I am exhausted from working in the fields.
   c. Working in the fields exhausts me.
   d. Working in the fields is exhausting.

5. a. Your grandmother is amazing to me.
   b. Your grandmother amazes me.
   c. Your grandmother is amazed to me.
   d. I am amazed by your grandmother.
PRACTICE 32. GET + adjective and past participle. (Chart 10-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences using words from the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>arrested</th>
<th>bored</th>
<th>invoked</th>
<th>lost</th>
<th>stolen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sick</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dressed</td>
<td>hungry</td>
<td>late</td>
<td>rich</td>
<td>wet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dizzy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Just a few days before the Jensens were going to leave for a family reunion in Hawaii, everyone got sick with the flu. They had to cancel their trip.

2. When Jane gave us directions to her house, I got __________. So I asked her to explain again how to get there.

3. Some people are afraid of heights. They get __________ and have trouble keeping their balance.

4. I didn’t like the movie last night. It wasn’t interesting. I got __________ and wanted to leave early.

5. When’s dinner? I’m getting __________.

6. We should leave for the concert soon. It’s getting __________. We should leave in the next five minutes if we want to be on time.

7. I want to make a lot of money. Do you know a good way to get __________ quick?

8. Jake got __________ for stealing a car yesterday. He’s in jail now.

9. I overslept this morning. When I finally woke up, I jumped out of bed, got __________, picked up my books, and ran to class.

10. Anita got __________ when she stood near the pool of dolphins. They splashed her more than once.

11. Yes, I have an invitation to Joan and Paul’s wedding. Don’t worry. You’ll get __________ to the wedding, too.

12. Tarik was afraid his important papers or his wife’s jewelry might get __________, so he had a wall safe installed in his home.
PRACTICE 33. GET + adjective and past participle. (Chart 10-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with an appropriate form of get.

1. Shake a leg! Step on it! Get busy. There’s no time to waste.
2. Tom and Sue got married last month.
3. Let’s stop working for a while. I am getting tired.
4. I don’t want to get old, but I guess it happens to everybody.
5. I was interested in biology when I was in high school, so I decided to major in it in college.
6. My father started being bald when he was in his twenties. I’m in my twenties, and I’m starting to be bald. It must be in the genes.
7. Brrr. It is cold in here. Maybe we should turn on the furnace.
8. When I was in the hospital, I got a card from my aunt and uncle. It said, “get well soon.”
9. When I went downtown yesterday, I got lost. I didn’t remember to take my map of the city with me.
10. A: Why did you leave the party early?
    B: I was bored.
    B: Okay.
12. A: What happened?
    B: I don’t know. Suddenly I was dizzy, but I’m okay now.
13. A: Do you want to go for a walk?
    B: Well, I don’t know. It is dark outside right now. Let’s wait and go for a walk tomorrow.
14. I always get nervous when I have to give a speech.
15. A: Where’s Bud? He was supposed to be home two hours ago. He always calls when he’s late. I got worried. Maybe we should call the police.
    B: Relax. He’ll be home soon.
16. A: Hurry up and get dressed. We have to leave in ten minutes.
    B: I’m almost ready.
17. A: I'm going on a diet.
   B: Oh?
   A: See? This shirt is too tight. I ____________ fat.

18. A: Janice and I are thinking about ____________ married in June.
   B: That's a nice month for a wedding.

◊ PRACTICE 34. BE USED/ACCUSTOMED TO. (Charts 2-11 and 10-10)
Directions: Choose the correct completion. More than one completion may be correct.

1. Frank has lived alone for twenty years. He ______ alone.
   A. used to live  B. is used to living  C. is accustomed to living

2. I ______ with my family, but now I live alone.
   A. used to live  B. am used to living  C. am accustomed to living

3. Rita rides her bike to work every day. She ______ her bike to work.
   A. used to ride  B. is used to riding  C. is accustomed to riding

4. Tom rode his bike to work for many years, but now he takes the bus. Tom ______ his bike to work.
   A. used to ride  B. is used to riding  C. is accustomed to riding

5. Carl showers every day. He ______ a shower every day.
   A. used to take  B. is used to taking  C. is accustomed to taking

6. Carl ______ a bath only once a week, but now he showers every day.
   A. used to take  B. is used to taking  C. is accustomed to taking

7. Ari ______ a small breakfast every day because he was always in a hurry.
   A. used to eat  B. is used to eating  C. is accustomed to eating

8. Maria ______ a large breakfast because she likes to take her time in the morning.
   A. used to eat  B. is used to eating  C. is accustomed to eating

◊ PRACTICE 35. USED TO vs. BE USED TO. (Chart 10-11)
Directions: Add an appropriate form of be if necessary. If no form of be is needed, write Ø in the blank.

1. Trains Ø used to be the main means of cross-continental travel. Today, most people take airplanes for long-distance travel.

2. Ms. Stanton's job requires her to travel extensively throughout the world. She ______ used to traveling by plane.

3. You and I are from different cultures. You ______ used to having fish for breakfast. I ______ used to having cheese and bread for breakfast.
4. People _______ used to throw away or burn their newspapers after reading them, but now many people recycle them.

5. Jeremy wakes up at 5:00 every morning for work. After a year of doing this, he _______ used to getting up early, even on weekends.

6. Mrs. Hansen _______ used to do all of the laundry and cooking for her family. Now the children are older and Mrs. Hansen has gone back to teaching, so the whole family shares these household chores.

7. Before modern dentistry, people _______ used to pull painful teeth.

8. Cindy swims only in swimming pools. She _______ used to swim in lakes and rivers, but now she finds them too cold.

**PRACTICE 36. USED TO vs. BE USED TO. (Chart 10-11)**

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with used to or be used to and the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

1. Kate grew up on a farm. She (get) _______ used to get up at dawn and go to bed as soon as the sun went down. Now she works in the city at an advertising agency and has different sleeping hours.

2. Hiroki's workweek is seven days long. He (work) _______ on Saturdays and Sundays.

3. Luis spends weekends with his family now. He (attend) _______ soccer games before he was married, but now he enjoys staying home with his young children.

4. Sally went back to school to become a computer programmer. She (work) _______ as a typist, but now she has a job that she likes better.

5. Joan has taught kindergarten for eight years. She (teach) _______ small children and uses many creative techniques with them.

6. Before I went overseas, I had a very simple, uninteresting diet. After visiting many different countries, however, I (eat) _______ much spicier, tastier dishes now.

**PRACTICE 37. BE SUPPOSED TO. (Chart 10-12)**

*Directions:* Create sentences with a similar meaning by using be supposed to.

1. Someone expected me to return this book to the library yesterday, but I didn't.  
   → I was supposed to return this book to the library.

2. Our professor expects us to read Chapter 9 before class tomorrow.
3. Someone expected me to go to a party last night, but I stayed home.

4. The teacher expects us to do Exercise 10 for homework.

5. The weather bureau has predicted rain for tomorrow. According to the weather bureau, it . . . .

6. The directions on the pill bottle say, “Take one pill every six hours.” According to the directions on the bottle, I . . . .

7. My mother expects me to dust the furniture and (to) vacuum the carpet.

◊ PRACTICE 38. BE SUPPOSED TO. (Chart 10-12)

Directions: Complete the sentences with be supposed to and any appropriate verb from the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>take off</th>
<th>register</th>
<th>sweep</th>
<th>give</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>clean</td>
<td>cook</td>
<td>send</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A: What are you doing home? You ____________________________ at work.
    B: I called in sick.

2. A: The floor is still dirty. You ____________________________ it this morning before you left for school, weren’t you?
    B: I know. I forgot.

3. Sarah’s late paying her taxes. She ____________________________ her check to the government last month.

4. When you eat in a restaurant, you ____________________________ your order to the waitress or waiter.

5. I know you’d rather be playing tennis, but you ____________________________ the house today. The house is dirty, and it’s your turn.

6. A: Where ____________________________ I ____________________________ for my English class?
    I’m new here.
    B: Down the hall to your right.

7. Jack ____________________________ dinner tonight, but he didn’t get home until 9:00 P.M.

8. A: You’re tracking mud all over the house.
    B: Sorry. We ____________________________ our shoes at the door, aren’t we?
PRACTICE 39. Error analysis. (Chapter 10)

Directions: Correct the errors.

1. The moving boxes were packed by Pierre.
2. My uncle was died in the war.
3. Miami located in Florida.
4. I was very worried about my son.
5. Mr. Rivera interested in finding a new career.
6. Did you tell everyone the shocked news?
7. After ten years, I finally used to this wet and rainy climate.
8. The newspaper suppose to come every morning before eight.
9. The Millers have been marry with each other for 60 years.
10. I am use to drink coffee with cream, but now I drink it black.
11. What was happen at the party last night?
12. Several people almost get kill when the fireworks exploded over them.
13. A new parking garage being build for our office.
14. I have been living in England for several years, so I accustom driving on the left side of the road.
CHAPTER 11

Count/Noncount Nouns and Articles

◇ PRACTICE 1. A vs. AN: singular count nouns. (Chart 11-1)

Directions: Write a or an in the blanks.

1. _____ game
2. _____ office
3. _____ car
4. _____ friend
5. _____ mountain
6. _____ rock
7. _____ army
8. _____ egg
9. _____ island
10. _____ ocean
11. _____ umbrella
12. _____ university
13. _____ horse
14. _____ hour
15. _____ star
16. _____ eye
17. _____ new car
18. _____ old car
19. _____ used car
20. _____ uncle
21. _____ house
22. _____ honest mistake
23. _____ hospital
24. _____ hand
25. _____ ant
26. _____ neighbor

◇ PRACTICE 2. Preview: count and noncount nouns. (Charts 11-2 → 11-5)

Directions: Draw a line through the expressions of quantity that cannot be used to complete the sentences.

NONCOUNT NOUNS: fruit, mail, traffic
COUNT NOUNS: apples, letters, cars

1. I ate _____ fruit.
   a. some
   b. several
   c. a little
   d. a few
   e. too many
   f. too much
   g. a lot of
   h. two

2. I ate _____ apples.
   a. some
   b. several
   c. a little
   d. a few
   e. too many
   f. too much
   g. a lot of
   h. two
3. I get _____ mail every day.
   a. a lot of
   b. some
   c. a little
   d. a few
   e. too much
   f. too many
   g. several
   h. three

4. I get _____ letters every day.
   a. a lot of
   b. some
   c. a little
   d. a few
   e. too much
   f. too many
   g. several
   h. three

5. There is _____ traffic in the street.
   a. several
   b. some
   c. too many
   d. a little
   e. a lot of
   f. a few
   g. too much
   h. five

6. There are _____ cars in the street.
   a. several
   b. some
   c. too many
   d. a little
   e. a lot of
   f. a few
   g. too much
   h. five

◊ PRACTICE 3. Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 11-2 → 11-4)

Directions: Which of the words can follow one and which can follow some? Write the correct form of the noun in the blanks. If the noun does not have a singular form, write Ø.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>one</th>
<th>some</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. word</td>
<td>word</td>
<td>words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. vocabulary</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td>vocabulary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. slang</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. homework</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. assignment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. grammar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. dress</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. clothes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. clothing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. parent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. family</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. knowledge</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. fact</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. luck</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. garbage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRACTICE 4. Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 11-2 → 11-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words below. Use the plural form as necessary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>apple trees</th>
<th>grass</th>
<th>machine</th>
<th>rice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bracelets</td>
<td>hardware</td>
<td>machinery</td>
<td>ring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bread</td>
<td>jewel</td>
<td>mountain</td>
<td>sandwich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corn</td>
<td>jewelry</td>
<td>pea</td>
<td>scenery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equipment</td>
<td>lake</td>
<td>plant</td>
<td>tool</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I went to the grocery store and bought some _____________

2. I stood on a hill in the countryside and saw some _____________

3. I went to a jewelry store and saw some _____________

4. At the auto repair shop, I saw some _____________

PRACTICE 5. Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 11-2 → 11-5)

Directions: Fill in the blanks with one, much, or many.

1. _______ one chair 14. _______ games
2. _______ much furniture 15. _______ water
3. _______ many vegetables 16. _______ parent
4. _______ clothing 17. _______ sand
5. _______ vegetable 18. _______ professors
6. _______ clothes 19. _______ dust
7. _______ fruit 20. _______ money
8. _______ facts 21. _______ stuff
9. _______ grammar 22. _______ thing
10. _______ word 23. _______ things
11. _______ idioms 24. _______ English
12. _______ vocabulary 25. _______ toast
13. _______ cars
PRACTICE 6. Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 11-2 → 11-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct form, singular or plural, of the given nouns. If a verb is needed, circle the correct one in the parentheses.

1. snow In Alaska in the winter, there (is, are) a lot of snow on the ground.
2. weather There (is, are) a lot of cold ___________ in Alaska.
3. sunshine ___________ (is, are) a source of vitamin D.
4. knowledge Prof. Nash has a lot of ___________ about that subject.
5. fun We had a lot of ___________ on the picnic.
6. factory,* Sometimes ___________ cause ___________.
7. pride, child** Parents take ___________ in the success of their ___________.
8. people, intelligence I admire ___________ who use their ___________ to the fullest extent.
9. peace There have been many conflicts and wars throughout the history of the world, but almost all people prefer ___________.
10. hospitality Thank you for your ___________.
11. beef The ___________ we had for dinner last night (was, were) very good.
12. fog During the winter months along the coast, there (is, are) usually a lot of ___________ in the morning.

*See Chart 6-1, p. 157, in the student book for variations in the pronunciation of words with a final -s.
**Some nouns have irregular plurals. See Chart 6-2, p. 158.
PRACTICE 7. MANY vs. MUCH. (Chart 11-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with much or many and the singular or plural form of the noun. If a verb is needed, circle the correct one in the parentheses.

1. apple How ______ many apples ______ did you buy?
2. fruit How ______ much fruit ______ did you buy?
3. mail How ______ did you get yesterday?
4. letter How ______ did you get yesterday?
5. English Anna’s husband doesn’t know ______.
6. slang Sometimes I can’t understand my roommate because he uses too ______.

7. word How ______ (is, are) there in your dictionary?
8. coffee Louise drinks too ______.
9. sandwich Billy has a stomach ache. He ate too ______.
10. sugar You shouldn’t eat too ______.
11. course How ______ are you taking this semester?
12. homework How ______ do you have to do tonight?
13. news There (isn’t, aren’t) ______ in the paper today.
14. article How ______ (is, are) there on the front page of today’s paper?
15. fun I didn’t have ______ at the party. It was boring.
16. star How ______ (is, are) there in the universe?
17. sunshine There (isn’t, aren’t) ______ in Seattle in winter.
18. pollution (Is, Are) there ______ in Miami?
19. luck We didn’t have ______ when we went fishing.
20. kind There (is, are) ______ of flowers.
21. violence I think there (is, are) too ______ on television.
22. makeup I think that Mary wears too ______.
23. car How ______ pass in front of this building in 30 seconds?
24. traffic (Is, Are) there ______ in front of your apartment building?
Directions: Complete the questions with many or much. Add final -s/-es if necessary to make a noun plural. (Some of the count nouns have irregular plural forms.) If a verb is needed, circle the correct one in the parentheses. If final -s/-es is not necessary, put a slash (/) in the blank.

1. How many letter s (is, are) there in the English alphabet?*
2. How much mail / did you get yesterday?
3. How many man men (has, have) a full beard at least once in their life?
4. How many family ies (is, are) there in your apartment building?
5. How sentence _____ (is, are) there in this exercise?
6. How chalk _____ (is, are) there in the classroom?
7. How English _____ does Stefan know?
8. How English literature _____ have you studied?
9. How English word _____ do you know?
10. How gasoline _____ does it take to fill the tank in your car? (British: How petrol _____ does it take to fill the tank?)
11. How homework _____ did the teacher assign?
12. How grandchild _____ does Mrs. Cunningham have?
13. How page _____ (is, are) there in this book?
14. How library _____ (is, are) there in the United States?†
15. How glass _____ of water do you drink every day?
16. How fun _____ did you have at the amusement park?
17. How education _____ does Ms. Martinez have?
18. How soap _____ should I use in the dishwasher?
19. How island _____ (is, are) there in Indonesia?**
20. How people _____ will there be by the year 2050?††
21. How zero _____ (is, are) there in a billion?***

*Answer: twenty-six (26). There are twenty-six letters in the English alphabet.
†Answer: approximately fifteen thousand (15,000).
**Answer: more than thirteen thousand seven hundred (13,700).
††Answer: estimated at more than thirteen billion (13,000,000,000).
***Answer: nine (9).
PRACTICE 9. Review: count and noncount nouns. (Charts 11-1 → 11-5)

Directions: Circle all the words that can be used with each given noun.

1. flower a an some much many
2. flowers a an some much many
3. coin a an some much many
4. money a an some much many
5. coins a an some much many
6. salt a an some much many
7. error a an some much many
8. mistake a an some much many
9. honest mistake a an some much many
10. mistakes a an some much many
11. dream a an some much many
12. interesting dream a an some much many
13. questions a an some much many
14. soap a an some much many
15. bar of soap a an some much many
16. beauty a an some much many
17. cup of tea a an some much many
18. unsafe place a an some much many
19. fruit a an some much many
20. pieces of fruit a an some much many

PRACTICE 10. A FEW vs. A LITTLE. (Chart 11-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with a few or a little. Add a final -s to the noun if necessary. Otherwise, write a slash (/) in the blank.

1. Let's listen to a little music / during dinner.
2. Let's sing a few song s around the campfire.
3. We all need some help / at times.
4. Ingrid is from Sweden, but she knows some English /.
5. I need more apple / to make a pie.
6. I like honey / in my coffee.
7. I have a problem. Could you give me some advice /?
8. I need some suggestion /.
9. He asked ______________ question _____.
10. We talked to ______________ people _____ on the plane.
11. Please give me ______________ more minute _____.
12. Ann opened the curtains to let in ______________ light _____ from outdoors.
13. I have ______________ homework _____ to do tonight.
14. Pedro already knew ______________ English grammar _____ before he took this course.
15. I picked ______________ flower _____ from my garden.
16. I’ve made ______________ progress _____ in the last couple of weeks.

◊ PRACTICE 11. Error analysis. (Charts 11-1 → 11-5)
Directions: Correct the errors.

1. Kim has applied to an university in England.

2. For Anita’s wedding anniversary, her husband gave her a jewelry and a poetry he wrote.

3. The politician wanted specific suggestion for her speech on the economy.

4. Some of the homeworks for my English class was easy, but many of the assignment were unclear.

5. Diane has been to Rome several time recently. She always has wonderful time.

6. Many parents need advices about raising children.

7. The boys played together in the sands and dirts for hours.

8. A person doesn’t need many equipment to play baseball: just ball and a bat.

9. Many happiness can come from enjoying the simple thing in life.

◊ PRACTICE 12. Count and noncount nouns. (Charts 6-2 and 11-1 → 11-6)
Directions: Add final -s/-es as necessary. Do not make any other changes. The number in parentheses at the end of each item is the number of nouns that need final -s/-es.

1. Plant are the oldest living thing _____ on earth. (2) = [2 nouns need final -s/-es.]

2. Scientist divide living thing into two group: plant and animal. Generally speaking, plant stay in one place, but animal move around. (7)
3. Flower, grass, and tree grow every place where people live. Plant also grow in desert, in ocean, on mountaintop, and in polar region. (7)

4. Plant are useful to people. We eat them. We use them for clothing. We build house from them. Plant are also important to our health. We get many kind of beneficial drug from plant. In addition, plant provide beauty and enjoyment to all our lives. (7)

5. Crop are plant that people grow for food. Nature can ruin crop. Bad weather—such as too much rain or too little rain—can destroy field of corn or wheat. Natural disaster such as flood and storm have caused farmer many problem since people first began to grow their own food. (9)

6. Food is a necessity for all living thing. All animal and plant need to eat. Most plant take what they need through their root and their leaf. The majority of insect live solely on plant. Many bird have a diet of worm and insect. Reptile eat small animal, egg, and insect. (15)

◊ PRACTICE 13. Units of measure with noncount nouns. (Chart 11-7)

Directions: Use the words in the list to complete the sentences. Use the plural form if necessary. Some sentences have more than one possible completion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bar</th>
<th>gallon</th>
<th>piece</th>
<th>sheet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bottle</td>
<td>glass</td>
<td>pound</td>
<td>spoonful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bowl</td>
<td>loaf</td>
<td>quart</td>
<td>tube</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cup</td>
<td>kilo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I drank a ______ cup ______ of coffee.
2. I bought two ______ pounds ______ of cheese.
3. I had a ______ ______ of soup for lunch.
4. I drank a ______ ______ of orange juice.
5. I had a ______ ______ of toast and an egg for breakfast.
6. I put ten ______ ______ of gas in my car.
7. I bought a ______ ______ of milk at the supermarket.
8. I need a ______ ______ of chalk.
9. I drank a ______ ______ of beer.
10. I used two ______ ______ of bread to make a sandwich.
11. There is a ______ ______ of fruit on the table.
12. There are 200 ______ ______ of lined paper in my notebook.
13. I bought one ______________ of bread at the store.
15. I need to buy a new ______________ of toothpaste.
16. There is a ______________ of soap in the bathroom.
17. Let me give you a ______________ of advice.
18. I just learned an interesting ______________ of information.
19. There were a dozen* ______________ of mail in my mailbox today.
20. A three-piece suit is made up of three ___________ of clothing: slacks, a jacket, and a vest.

◊ PRACTICE 14. Units of measure with noncount nouns. (Chart 11-7)

Directions: What units of measure are usually used with the following nouns? More than one unit of measure can be used with some of the nouns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bag</th>
<th>bottle</th>
<th>box</th>
<th>can/tin**</th>
<th>jar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. a __________ of pickles.</td>
<td>6. a __________ of sugar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. a __________ of aspirin.</td>
<td>7. a __________ of peanut butter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. a __________ of laundry detergent</td>
<td>8. a __________ of soy sauce</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. a __________ of instant coffee</td>
<td>9. a __________ of uncooked noodles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. a __________ of sardines</td>
<td>10. a __________ of refried beans</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

◊ PRACTICE 15. MUCH vs. MANY. (Charts 11-5 → 11-7)

Directions: Complete the questions with much or many.

1. A: How ____ many suitcases ____ did you take with you on the plane to Tahiti?
   B: Three. (I took three suitcases on the plane to Tahiti.)

2. A: How ____ much suntan oil ____ did you take with you?
   B: A lot. (I took a lot of suntan oil with me.)

3. A: How ______________ did you take?
   B: Two pairs. (I took two pairs of sandals.)

4. A: How ______________ did you take?
   B: One tube. (I took one tube of toothpaste.)

*A dozen = twelve. It is followed by a plural noun: a dozen eggs.
**a can = a tin in British English.
5. A: How ____________________________ did you have?
   B: Twenty. (I had twenty kilos of luggage.)

6. A: How ____________________________ did you pay in overweight baggage charges?
   B: A lot. (I paid of lot of money for overweight baggage.)

◊ PRACTICE 16. A/AN vs. SOME. (Chart 11-8)

Directions: Complete the sentences with a/an or some.

1. I wrote ______ letter.
2. I got ______ mail.
3. We bought ______ equipment for our camping trip.
4. You need ______ tool to cut wood.
5. I ate ______ food.
6. I had ______ apple.
7. I wore ______ old clothing.
8. I wore ______ old shirt.
9. Jim asked me for ______ advice.
10. I gave Jim ______ suggestion.
11. I read ______ interesting story in the paper.
12. The paper has ______ interesting news today.
13. I read ______ poem after dinner.
15. I know ______ song from India.
16. I know ______ Indian music.
17. I learned ______ new word.
18. I learned ______ new slang.

◊ PRACTICE 17. A vs. SOME. (Chart 11-8)

Directions: Write a or some in the blank before each singular noun. Then write a sentence with the plural form of the noun if possible.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular Objects</th>
<th>Plural Objects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I saw _______ bird.</td>
<td>I saw some birds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. I ate _______ corn.</td>
<td>(none possible)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Would you like _______ tea?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. I picked _______ flower.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. I drank _______ water.
6. I fed grass to _______ horse.
7. Pat is wearing _______ jewelry.
8. I bought _______ honey.
9. Tom bought _______ new shirt.
10. I need _______ soap to wash the dishes.

◊ PRACTICE 18. A/AN vs. THE: singular count nouns. (Chart 11-8)
Directions: Complete the sentences with a/an or the.

1. A: _______ A _______ dog makes a good pet.
   B: I agree.

2. A: Did you feed _______ the _______ dog?
   B: Yes, I did.

3. My dorm room has _______ desk, _______ bed, _______ chest of drawers, and two chairs.

4. A: Jessica, where's the stapler?
   B: On _______ desk. If it's not there, look in _______ top drawer.

5. A: Sara, put your bike in _______ basement before dark.
   B: Okay, Dad.

6. Our apartment building has _______ basement. Sara keeps her bike there at night.

7. Almost every sentence has _______ subject and _______ verb.

8. Look at this sentence: Jack lives in Miami. What is _______ subject, and what is _______ verb?

9. A: I can't see you at four. I'll be in _______ meeting then. How about four-thirty?
   B: Fine.

10. A: What time does _______ meeting start Tuesday?
    B: Eight.

11. Jack's car ran out of gas. He had to walk _______ long distance to find _______ telephone and call his brother for help.

12. _______ distance from _______ sun to _______ earth is 93,000,000 miles.

13. A: Jake, _______ telephone is ringing. Can you get it?
    B: Sure.

14. A: Did you feed _______ cat?
    B: Yes. I fed him a couple of hours ago.
15. A: Does Jane have ______ cat?
   B: No, she has ______ dog. She doesn’t like cats.

16. A: I wrote ______ poem. Would you like to read it?
   B: Sure. What’s it about?

17. A: Was ______ lecture interesting?
   B: Yes. ______ speaker gave ______ interesting talk.

18. A: Where should we go for ______ cup of coffee after class?
   B: Let’s go to ______ cafe around ______ corner from the First National Bank.

19. A: Where do you live?
   B: We live on ______ quiet street in the suburbs.

20. A: I’m hungry, and I’m tired of walking. How much farther is it to ______ restaurant?
   B: Just a couple of blocks. Let’s cross ______ street here.
   A: Are you sure you know where you’re going?

21. A: Did Bob find ______ job?
   B: Yes. He’s working at ______ restaurant.
   A: Oh? Which one?

◊ PRACTICE 19. Ø vs. THE. (Chart 11-8)
   Directions: Write Ø or the in the blanks. Add capital letters as necessary.

   1. A: ______ Ø dogs make good pets.
      B: I agree.

   2. A: Did you feed ______ the dogs?
      B: Yes, I did.

   3. A: ______ Ø fruit is good for you.
      B: I agree.

   4. A: ______ The fruit in this bowl is ripe.
      B: Good. I think I’ll have a piece.

   5. John, where’s ______ milk? Is it in ______ refrigerator or on ______ table?

   6. ______ milk comes from cows and goats.

   7. Tom usually has ______ wine with dinner.

   8. Dinner’s ready. Shall I pour ______ wine?

   9. We usually have ______ meat for dinner.
10. _______ meat we had for dinner last night was tough.

11. A: Mom, please pass _______ potatoes.
    B: Here you are. Anything else? Want some more chicken, too?

12. _______ potatoes are _______ vegetables.

13. _______ frogs are _______ small animals without _______ tails that live on land or in water. _______ turtles also live on land or in water, but they have _______ tails and _______ hard shells.

14. A: Nicole, what are those animals doing in here!?
    B: We’re playing. _______ frogs belong to Jason. _______ turtles are mine.

15. Do you like _______ weather in this city?

16. _______ copper is used in electrical wiring.

17. People used to use _______ candles for _______ light, but now they use _______ electricity.

18. There are many kinds of _______ books. We use _______ textbooks and _______ workbooks in school. We use _______ dictionaries and _______ encyclopedias for reference. For _______ entertainment, we read _______ novels and _______ poetry.

19. _______ books on this desk are mine.

20. Using THE for second mention. (Charts 11-6→11-8)
   Directions: Use a/an, some, or the in the sentences. REMINDER: Use the when a noun is mentioned for the second time.

   1. I drank _______ coffee and _______ milk. _______ coffee was hot. _______ milk was cold.

   2. I had _______ soup and _______ sandwich for lunch. _______ soup was too salty, but _______ sandwich was pretty good.
3. Yesterday I bought _______ clothes. I bought _______ suit, _______ shirt, and _______ tie. _______ suit is gray and comes with a vest. _______ shirt is pale blue, and _______ tie has black and gray stripes.

   B: Oh? Where?
   A: On Grand Avenue. _______ man in _______ Volkswagen drove through a stop sign and hit _______ bus.
   B: Was anyone hurt in _______ accident?
   A: I don’t think so. _______ man who was driving _______ Volkswagen got out of his car and seemed to be okay. His car was only slightly damaged. No one in _______ bus was hurt.

5. Yesterday I saw _______ man and _______ woman. They were having _______ argument. _______ man was yelling at _______ woman, and _______ woman was shouting at _______ man. I don’t know what _______ argument was about.

6. Yesterday while I was walking to work, I saw _______ birds in _______ tree. I also saw _______ cat under _______ tree. _______ birds didn’t pay any attention to _______ cat, but _______ cat was watching _______ birds intently.
One day last month while I was driving through the countryside, I saw a man and a truck next to a covered bridge. The bridge crossed a small river. I stopped and asked the man, “What’s the matter? Can I be of help?”

“Well,” said the man, “my truck is about a half-inch* too tall. Or the top of the bridge is a half-inch too short. Either way, my truck won’t fit under the bridge.”

“Hmmm. There must be a solution to this problem,” I said.

“I don’t know. I guess I’ll have to turn around and take another route,” he replied.

After a few moments of thought, I said, “Aha! I have a solution!”

“What is it?” asked the man.

“Let a little air out of your tires. Then the truck won’t be too tall and you can cross the bridge over the river.”

“Hey, that’s a great idea. Let’s try it!” So the man let a little air out of the tires and was able to cross the river and go on his way.

*One-half inch = 1.2 centimeters.
Directions: Complete the sentences with a/an, the, or Ø. Add capital letters as necessary.

1. A: What would you like for breakfast?
   B: An egg and some toast.
   A: How would you like the egg?
   B: Fried, sunny side up.

2. Ø eggs are nutritious.

3. It is a scientific fact: steam rises when water boils.

4. gas is expensive nowadays.

5. gas I got yesterday cost more than I’ve ever paid.

6. newspapers are an important source of information.

7. sun is a star. We need sun for heat, light, and energy.

8. ducks are my favorite farm animals.

9. pizza originated in Italy. It is a pie with cheese, tomatoes, and other things on top. “pizza” means “pie” in Italian.

    B: There are only two pieces left. You take big piece, and I’ll take small one.

11. gold is an excellent conductor of electricity. It is used in many of the electrical circuits on a spaceship.

12. A: Where’s Alice?
    B: She’s in kitchen making sandwich.

    B: Relax. He went to shut off water supply to house. He’ll fix leak when he gets back.
14. A: Do you see _______ man who is standing next to Janet?
   B: Yes. Who is he?
   A: He's _______ president of this university.

15. A one-dollar bill has a picture of _______ president of the United States. It's a picture of George Washington.

16. A: What did you buy when you went shopping?
   B: I bought _______ blouse and _______ jewelry.
   A: What color is _______ blouse?
   B: Red.

17. A: Where's my bookbag?
   B: It's on _______ floor over there, in _______ corner next to _______ sofa.

18. We need to buy _______ furniture. I'd like to get _______ sofa and _______ easy chair.

19. _______ furniture is expensive these days.

20. _______ vegetarian doesn't eat _______ meat.

21. Only one of _______ continents in _______ world is uninhabited. Which one?

22. Last week, I took _______ easy exam. It was in my economics class. I had _______ right answers for all of _______ questions on _______ exam. My score was 100%.

23. Anyone who goes to _______ job interview should wear _______ nice clothes.

24. A mouse has _______ long, thin, almost hairless tail. _______ rats also have _______ long, skinny tails.

25. Years ago, people used _______ wood or _______ coal for _______ heat, but now most people use _______ gas, _______ oil, or _______ electricity.

26. I had _______ interesting experience yesterday. _______ man in _______ blue suit came into my office and handed me _______ bouquet of _______ flowers. I had never seen _______ man before in my life, but I thanked him for _______ flowers. Then he walked out _______ door.

27. A: What is your favorite food?
   B: _______ ice cream—it's cold, sweet, and smooth.

28. We had _______ steamed rice, _______ fish, and _______ vegetables for lunch yesterday. _______ rice was cooked just right. _______ fish was very tasty. _______ vegetables were fresh.
29. Karen is _______ exceptionally talented person.

30. A: Where's _______ letter I wrote to Ted?
   B: It's gone. _______ strong wind blew it on _______ floor, and _______ dog tore it up. I threw _______ scraps in _______ wastebasket.

31. A: I'm looking for _______ tape player. Where is it?
   B: It's on one of _______ shelves next to my desk.
   A: Ah! There it is. Thanks.
   B: You're welcome.
   A: Hmmm. I don't think it works. Maybe _______ batteries are dead.

32. _______ chalk is _______ necessity in a classroom.

33. _______ efficient transportation system is _______ essential part of a healthy economy.

◊ PRACTICE 23. Using THE or Ø with names. (Chart 11-9)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the or Ø.

1. Although Ingrid has been to Orly Airport several times, she has never visited _______ Paris.

2. _______ Atlantic Ocean is smaller than ______ Pacific.

3. _______ Dr. James was the youngest person at her university to get a Ph.D.

4. _______ Mt. Rainier in Washington State is in _______ Cascade Mountain Range.

5. _______ Nile is the longest river in _______ Africa.

6. Is _______ Toronto or _______ Montreal the largest city in Canada?

7. During her tour of Africa, Helen climbed _______ Mt. Kilimanjaro and visited several national parks in _______ Kenya.

8. _______ New Zealand is made up of two islands: North Island and South Island.

9. _______ Himalayas extend through several countries: _______ Pakistan, ________ India, _______ Tibet, and _______ Nepal.

10. _______ President Davis was surprised to be elected to a fourth term.

11. _______ Ho Chi Minh City in _______ Vietnam was formerly called _______ Saigon.

12. _______ Andes Mountains in South America extend for 5000 miles.
Directions: Answer the questions. Choose from the list below. Use the if necessary. (Not all names on the list will be used.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Africa</th>
<th>Europe</th>
<th>Mont Blanc</th>
<th>Shanghai</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alps</td>
<td>Gobi Desert</td>
<td>Mt. Vesuvius</td>
<td>South America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon River</td>
<td>Indian Ocean</td>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>Taipei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beijing</td>
<td>Lagos</td>
<td>Nile River</td>
<td>Thames River</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Black Sea</td>
<td>Lake Baikal</td>
<td>North America</td>
<td>Tibet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dead Sea</td>
<td>Lake Tanganyika</td>
<td>Sahara Desert</td>
<td>United Arab Emirates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elbe River</td>
<td>Lake Titicaca</td>
<td>Saudi Arabia</td>
<td>Urals</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GEOGRAPHY TRIVIA**

**Question**

1. What is the lowest point on Earth?
2. What is the second-longest river in the world?
3. What is the most populated city in China?
4. What is the largest desert in the world?
5. What river runs through London?
6. On what continent is the Volga River?
7. What mountains border France and Italy?
8. What lake is in East Central Africa?
9. On what continent is Mexico?
10. What is the third-largest ocean in the world?
11. What country is also known as Holland?
12. What is the third-largest continent in the world?
13. What country is located in the Himalayas?
14. What mountains are part of the boundary between Europe and Asia?
15. What is the capital of Nigeria?
16. What country consists of seven kingdoms?

**Answer**

---

the Dead Sea

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---
PRACTICE 25. Capitalization. (Chart 11-10)

Directions: Add capital letters where necessary.

1. I'm taking biology 101 this semester.
2. I'm taking history, biology, english, and calculus this semester.
3. Some lab classes meet on saturday.
4. Marta lives on a busy street. Marta lives at 2358 olive street.
5. We went to canada last summer. we went to montreal in july.
6. My roommate likes vietnamese food, and i like thai food.
7. The religion of saudi arabia is islam.
8. Shelia works for the xerox corporation. it is a very large corporation.
9. Pedro is from latin america.
10. My uncle lives in st. louis. I'm going to visit uncle bill next spring.
11. We went to a park. we went to waterfall park.
12. Are you going to the university of oregon or oregon state university?
13. Alice goes to a university in oregon.
14. The next assignment in literature class is to read the adventures of tom sawyer.
15. Many countries have holidays to celebrate the date they became independent. In france, they call it “bastille day.”

PRACTICE 26. Capitalization. (Chart 11-10)

Directions: Add capital letters where necessary.

1. Do you know robert yones?
2. Do you know my uncle? (no change)
3. I like uncle joe and aunt sara.
4. I'd like you to meet my aunt.
5. susan w. miller is a professor.
6. I am in prof. miller’s class.
7. The weather is cold in january.
8. The weather is cold in winter.
9. I have three classes on monday.
10. I would like to visit Los Angeles.
11. It's the largest city in California.
12. I like to visit large cities in foreign countries.
13. There are fifty states in the United States of America.
14. It used to take weeks or months to cross an ocean.
15. Today we can fly across the Atlantic Ocean in hours.
16. Mark lives on a busy street near the local high school.
18. Our family stayed at a very comfortable hotel.
19. Our family stayed at the Hilton Hotel in Bangkok.
20. Yoko is Japanese, but she can also speak German.

◊ Practice 27. Error analysis. (Chapter 11)
Directions: Correct the errors.

1. The mail carrier brought only one -mail- today.
2. Mr. Dale gave his class long history assignment for the weekend.
3. Tariq speaks several language, including Arabic and Spanish.
4. Dr. Kim gives all her patients toothbrush and toothpaste at their dental appointments.
5. I usually have glass water with my lunch.
6. A helpful policeman gave us an information about the city.
7. This cookie recipe calls for two cup of nut.
8. Much vegetable are believed to have cancer-fighting ingredients.
9. Only applicants with the necessary experiences should apply for the computer position.
10. When Vicki likes a movie, she sees it several time.
11. A popular children's story is Snow White And The Seven Dwarfs.
12. Is it possible to stop all violences in the world?
CHAPTER 12
Adjective Clauses

◊ PRACTICE 1. Using WHO in adjective clauses. (Charts 12-1 and 12-2)

Directions: Underline the adjective clause in the long sentence. Then change the long sentence into two short sentences.*

1. Long sentence: I thanked the man who helped me move the refrigerator.
   Short sentence 1: I thanked the man.
   Short sentence 2: He helped me move the refrigerator.

2. Long sentence: A woman who was wearing a gray suit asked me for directions.
   Short sentence 1: A woman asked me for directions.
   Short sentence 2: A woman who was wearing a gray suit.

3. Long sentence: The woman who aided the rebels put her life in danger.
   Short sentence 1: The woman put her life in danger.
   Short sentence 2: The woman who aided the rebels.

4. Long sentence: I saw a man who was wearing a blue coat.
   Short sentence 1: I saw a man.
   Short sentence 2: I saw a man who was wearing a blue coat.

5. Long sentence: The girl who broke the vase apologized to Mrs. Cook.
   Short sentence 1: The girl apologized to Mrs. Cook.
   Short sentence 2: The girl who broke the vase.

*In grammar terminology, the "long sentence" is called a complex sentence, and the "short sentence" is called a simple sentence.

• A complex sentence has an independent clause and one or more dependent clauses. For example:
  I thanked the man who helped me. = a complex sentence consisting of one independent clause (I thanked the man) and one dependent clause (who helped me).

• A simple sentence has only an independent clause. For example:
  I thanked the man. = a simple sentence consisting of one independent clause.
  He helped me. = a simple sentence consisting of one independent clause.
**PRACTICE 2. Using WHO in adjective clauses.** (Chart 12-2)

*Directions:* Combine the two short sentences into one long sentence using "short sentence 2" as an adjective clause. Use *who*. Underline the adjective clause.

1. **Short sentence 1:** The woman was polite.  
**Short sentence 2:** She answered the phone.  
**Long sentence:** The woman who answered the phone was polite.

2. **Short sentence 1:** The man has a good voice.  
**Short sentence 2:** He sang at the concert.  
**Long sentence:**

3. **Short sentence 1:** We enjoyed the actors.  
**Short sentence 2:** They played the leading roles.  
**Long sentence:**

4. **Short sentence 1:** The girl is hurt.  
**Short sentence 2:** She fell down the stairs.  
**Long sentence:**

5. **Short sentence 1:** I read about the soccer player.  
**Short sentence 2:** He was injured in the game yesterday.  
**Long sentence:**

---

**PRACTICE 3. Using WHO and WHOM in adjective clauses.** (Chart 12-2)

*Directions:* Underline the adjective clause. Identify the subject and verb of the adjective clause. Then complete the change from one long sentence to two short sentences, and identify the subject and verb of the second short sentence.

1. **Long sentence:** The people *who live next to me* are nice.  
**Short sentence 1:** The people are nice.  
**Short sentence 2:** They live next to me.

2. **Long sentence:** The people *whom Kate visited yesterday* were French.  
**Short sentence 1:** The people were French.  
**Short sentence 2:** Kate visited them yesterday.

3. **Long sentence:** The people *whom I saw at the park* were having a picnic.  
**Short sentence 1:** The people were having a picnic.  
**Short sentence 2:**

4. **Long sentence:** The students *who go to this school* are friendly.  
**Short sentence 1:** The students are friendly.  
**Short sentence 2:**

---

Adjective Clauses 241
5. Long sentence: The woman whom you met last week lives in Mexico.
   Short sentence 1: The woman lives in Mexico.
   Short sentence 2:

diamond PRACTICE 4. Using WHO and WHOM in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-2)

Directions: Change the two short sentences into one long sentence with an adjective clause. Use who or whom. Underline the adjective clause.

1. Short sentence 1: The woman was polite.
   Short sentence 2: Jack met her.
   Long sentence: The woman whom Jack met was polite.

2. Short sentence 1: I like the woman.
   Short sentence 2: She manages my uncle’s store.
   Long sentence: I like the woman who manages my uncle’s store.

3. Short sentence 1: The singer was wonderful.
   Short sentence 2: We heard him at the concert.
   Long sentence:

4. Short sentence 1: The people brought a small gift.
   Short sentence 2: They came to dinner.
   Long sentence:

5. Short sentence 1: What is the name of the woman?
   Short sentence 2: Tom invited her to the dance.
   Long sentence:

diamond PRACTICE 5. Using WHO and WHO(M) in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences with who or who(m).*

1. I know a man who works at the post office.

2. One of the people who I watched at the race track lost a huge amount of money.

3. My neighbor is a kind person who is always willing to help people in trouble.

4. My mother is a woman who I admire tremendously.

5. I thanked the man who helped me.

6. The woman who I helped thanked me.

7. The doctor who lives on my street is a surgeon.

8. I talked to the people who were sitting next to me.

*There are parentheses around the “m” in who(m) to show that, in everyday informal English, who may be used as an object pronoun instead of whom.
9. I saw the woman __________ was walking her dog.

10. Do you like the mechanic __________ fixed your car?

11. Mr. Polanski is a mechanic __________ you can trust.

12. There are many good people in the world __________ you can trust to be honest and honorable.

13. The children __________ live down the street in the yellow house are always polite.

14. The children __________ I watched at the park were feeding ducks in a pond.

15. My husband is a person __________ enjoys good food and good friends.

◊ PRACTICE 6. Using THAT or Ø in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-3)

Directions: Write S if who or that is the subject of the adjective clause. Write Ø if who or that is the object of the adjective clause. Cross out the words who or that where possible.

1. Ø The secretary that I hired is very efficient.

2. S The secretary who works in the office next door is interviewing for my old job.

3. The students who worked together in study groups got the highest scores on the test.

4. The students who the teacher helped did very well on the test.

5. The man that lives next door is a famous scientist.

6. The children that came to the party wore animal costumes.

7. The teachers who went to the workshop felt encouraged to try new techniques.

8. The teachers that I had for science were very well trained.

9. The policeman who caught the thief had been watching him for days.

10. The policeman that we met on the street told us about several interesting tourist spots.

◊ PRACTICE 7. Using THAT or Ø in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-3)

Directions: Cross out the word that if possible.

1. That man that I saw was wearing a black hat.

2. The people that visited us stayed too long. (no change)

3. The fruit that I bought today at the market is fresh.

4. My high school English teacher is a person that I will never forget.

5. The puppy that barked the loudest got the most attention in the pet store.
6. The girl that sits in front of Richard has long black hair that she wears in a ponytail.

7. The forest that lies below my house provides a home for deer and other wildlife.

8. The animals that live in our neighborhood behaved strangely before the earthquake.

### PRACTICE 8. Using WHO, WHO(M), THAT, or Ø in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-3)

**Directions:** In the box, write every possible pronoun that can be used to connect the adjective clause to the main clause: who, who(m), or that. Also, write Ø if the pronoun can be omitted.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. The woman</td>
<td>who</td>
<td>that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sat next to me on the plane was very nice.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The woman</td>
<td>who(m)</td>
<td>that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I met on the plane was very nice.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Two people</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I didn’t know walked into the classroom.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. The people</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>walked into the classroom were strangers.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. My cousin’s wife is the woman</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>is talking to Mr. Horn.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. I like the woman</td>
<td>Ø</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>my brother and I visited.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRACTICE 9. WHO and WHO(M) vs. WHICH. (Charts 12-2 → 12-4)

Directions: Choose the correct answer.

1. The magazine _____ I read on the plane was interesting.
   A. who   B. who(m)   C. which

2. The artist _____ drew my picture is very good.
   A. who   B. who(m)   C. which

3. I really enjoyed the experiences _____ I had on my trip to Nigeria.
   A. who   B. who(m)   C. which

4. Most of the games _____ we played as children no longer amuse us.
   A. who   B. who(m)   C. which

5. All of the people _____ I called yesterday can come to the meeting on Monday.
   A. who   B. who(m)   C. which

6. The teacher _____ was ill canceled her math class.
   A. who   B. who(m)   C. which

7. The flight _____ I took to Singapore was on time.
   A. who   B. who(m)   C. which

8. I read an article _____ discussed the current political crisis.
   A. who   B. who(m)   C. which

PRACTICE 10. Adjective clauses. (Charts 12-2 → 12-4)

Directions: Complete the definitions with the given information. Use adjective clauses in the definitions.

S/he leaves society and lives completely alone.
It has a hard shell and can live in water or on land.
✓ S/he designs buildings.
It forms when water boils.
S/he doesn't eat meat.
It grows in hot climates and produces large bunches of yellow fruit.
It cannot be understood or explained.
It can be shaped and hardened to form many useful things.

1. An architect is someone who/that designs buildings.

2. A vegetarian is a person who/that doesn't eat meat.

3. Steam is a gas that grows in hot climates.

4. A turtle is an animal who/that grows in hot climates.

5. A hermit is a person who/that leaves society.

6. A banana tree is a plant who/that grows in hot climates.
7. Plastic is a synthetic material

8. A mystery is something

◊ PRACTICE 11. WHICH and THAT. (Chart 12-4)
Directions: Write S if which or that is the subject of the adjective clause. Write O if which or that is the object of the adjective clause. Cross out the words which or that where possible.

1. O The medicine which the doctor prescribed for me was very expensive.

2. S The medicine which is on the shelf is no longer good.

3. The computer that I bought recently has already crashed several times.

4. The car which my husband drives is very reliable.

5. The house which sits on top of the hill has won several architecture awards.

6. The restaurant that offered low-cost dinners to senior citizens has recently closed.

7. The baseball which all the players autographed will be donated to charity.

8. The windstorm that is moving toward us is very powerful.

9. The trees that shade our house are over 300 years old.

10. The trees that we planted last year have doubled in size.

◊ PRACTICE 12. Using WHICH, THAT, and Ø in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-4)
Directions: Write the pronouns that can be used to connect the adjective clause to the main clause: which or that. Also write Ø if the pronoun can be omitted.

1. I really enjoyed the show which we saw last night.

2. Tim liked the show that was playing at the Fox Theater.

3. The plane I took to Korea arrived on time.

4. The plane flew to the Gold Coast left on time.
5. The books Jane ordered came in the mail today.

6. Jane was glad to get the books came in the mail today.

◊ PRACTICE 13. Error analysis: object pronouns in adjective clauses. (Charts 12-3 and 12-4)

Directions: Cross out the incorrect pronouns in the adjective clauses.

1. I enjoy the relatives I visited them in Mexico City last year.
2. The coffee that I drank it was cold and tasteless.
3. The tennis shoes I was wearing them in the garden got wet and muddy.
4. My cousin Ahmed is a person I’ve known and loved him since he was born.
5. I have a great deal of respect for the wonderful woman I married her eleven years ago.
6. The dog which we have had him for several years is very gentle with young children.

◊ PRACTICE 14. Pronoun usage in adjective clauses. (Charts 12-2 → 12-4)

Directions: Choose the correct answers. NOTE: There is more than one correct answer for each sentence.

1. I liked the teacher whom I had for chemistry in high school.
   A. whom  B. which  C. that  D. 0

2. The university scientist did research in the Amazon River basin found many previously unknown species of plants.
   A. who  B. whom  C. which  D. that  E. 0

3. The children enjoyed the sandwiches Mr. Rice made for them.
   A. who  B. whom  C. which  D. that  E. 0

4. Have you ever read any books by the author the teacher mentioned in class this morning?
   A. whom  B. which  C. that  D. 0

5. The fans crowded the ballpark roared their approval.
   A. who  B. whom  C. which  D. that  E. 0

6. Have you been to the Clayton Art Gallery? It has a new exhibit includes the work of several local artists.
   A. who  B. whom  C. which  D. that  E. 0

7. The operation the surgeon performed on my uncle was very dangerous.
   A. who  B. whom  C. which  D. that  E. 0
8. Bricks are made of soil ______ has been placed in molds, pounded down, and dried.
   A. who  B. whom  C. which  D. that  E. Ø

9. The actors ______ we saw at Stratford performed out-of-doors.
   A. whom  B. which  C. that  D. Ø

10. Many of the games ______ children play teach them about the adult world.
    A. who  B. whom  C. which  D. that  E. Ø

11. When Jason arrived at the reunion, the first person ______ he encountered was Sally Sellers,
    one of his best friends when he was in high school.
    A. whom  B. which  C. that  D. Ø

12. Fire swept through an old apartment building in the center of town. I know some of the
    people ______ the firefighters rescued. The people lost all their possessions. They were
    grateful simply to be alive.
    A. whom  B. which  C. that  D. Ø

13. Most of the islands in the Pacific are the tops of volcanic mountains ______ rise from the
    floor of the ocean.
    A. who  B. whom  C. which  D. that  E. Ø

◊ PRACTICE 15. Subject-verb agreement in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-5)

Directions: In each sentence, choose the correct form of the verb in italics. Use the simple
present. Underline the noun that determines whether the verb in the adjective clause is singular
or plural.

1. The students who ______ is, are in my class come from many countries.

2. The people who ______ is, are standing in line to get into the theater are cold and wet.

3. Water is a chemical compound that ______ consists, consist of oxygen and hydrogen.

4. There are two students in my class who ______ speaks, speak Portuguese.

5. I met some people who ______ knows, know my brother.

6. The student who ______ is, are talking to the teacher is from Peru.
7. Do you know the people that lives, live in that house?

8. A carpenter is a person who makes, make things out of wood.

9. Sculptors are artists who make, makes things from clay or other materials.

◊ PRACTICE 16. Prepositions in adjective clauses. (Chart 12-6)

Directions: The adjective clauses in the following sentences need prepositions. Add the prepositions and give all the possible patterns for the adjective clause. Write 0 if nothing is needed.

1. The bus _______ we were waiting _______ was an hour late.
   The bus _______ we were waiting _______ was an hour late.
   The bus _______ we were waiting _______ was an hour late.
   The bus _______ we were waiting _______ was an hour late.

2. The music _______ I listened _______ was pleasant.
   The music _______ I listened _______ was pleasant.
   The music _______ I listened _______ was pleasant.
   The music _______ I listened _______ was pleasant.

3. Ecology is one of the subjects _______ I am very interested _______.
   Ecology is one of the subjects _______ I am very interested _______.
   Ecology is one of the subjects _______ I am very interested _______.
   Ecology is one of the subjects _______ I am very interested _______.

4. The man _______ Maria was arguing _______ was very angry.
   The man _______ Maria was arguing _______ was very angry.
   The man _______ Maria was arguing _______ was very angry.
   The man _______ Maria was arguing _______ was very angry.
Directions: Complete the sentences with pronouns and prepositions as necessary. Give all possible patterns for the adjective clauses.

Example: The movie ... we went ... was good.
  → The movie that we went to was good.
  The movie which we went to was good.
  The movie we went to was good.
  The movie to which we went was good.

1. I enjoyed meeting the people ... you introduced me ... yesterday.
2. English grammar is a subject ... I am quite familiar ... .
3. The woman ... Mr. Low told us ... works for the government.
4. The people ... I work ... are very creative.
5. The train ... you are waiting ... is usually late.
6. The job ... I am interested ... requires several years of computer experience.

Directions: Supply appropriate prepositions in the blanks. Write O if no preposition is necessary. Draw brackets around the adjective clause.

1. I enjoyed the CD [we listened to at Sara's apartment.]
2. I paid the shopkeeper for the glass cup [I accidentally broke].
3. The bus we were waiting _______ was only three minutes late.
4. Mrs. Chan is someone I always enjoy talking _______ about politics.
5. I showed my roommate the letter I had just written _______.
6. One of the subjects I've been interested _______ for a long time is astronomy.
7. The people I talked _______ at the reception were interesting.
8. One of the places I want to visit _______ next year is Mexico City.
9. The book catalogue I was looking _______ had hundreds of interesting titles.
10. The book I wanted _______ wasn't available at the library.
11. I really enjoyed the music we were listening _______ at Jim's yesterday.
12. Botany is a subject I'm not familiar _______.
13. The bags I was carrying _______ were really heavy.
14. My parents are people I can always rely _______ for support and help.
15. Taking out the garbage is one of the chores our fourteen-year-old is responsible _______.

250 CHAPTER 12
16. The newspaper I was reading _______ had the latest news about the election.

17. The furniture I bought _______ was expensive.

18. English grammar is one of the subjects _______ which I enjoy studying the most.

19. The friend I waved _______ didn’t wave back. Maybe he just didn’t see me.

20. The people _______ whom Alex was waiting were over an hour late.

◊ PRACTICE 19. Adjective clauses with WHOSE. (Chart 12-7)

Directions: Underline the adjective clause in each long sentence. Then change the long sentence into two short sentences.

1. Long sentence: I know a man whose daughter is a pilot.
   Short sentence 1: _______
   Short sentence 2: _______

2. Long sentence: The woman whose husband is out of work found a job at Mel’s Diner.
   Short sentence 1: ________________________________
   Short sentence 2: ________________________________

3. Long sentence: The man whose wallet I found gave me a reward.
   Short sentence 1: ________________________________
   Short sentence 2: ________________________________

◊ PRACTICE 20. Adjective clauses with WHOSE. (Chart 12-7)

Directions: Follow these steps:
1. Underline the possessive pronoun.
2. Draw an arrow to the noun it refers to.
3. Replace the possessive pronoun with whose.
4. Combine the two sentences into one.

1. The firefighters are very brave. Their department has won many awards.
   → The firefighters whose department has won many awards are very brave.

2. I talked to the boy. His kite was caught in a tree.
   → I talked to the boy whose kite was caught in a tree.

3. The family is staying in a motel. Their house burned down.

4. I watched a little girl. Her dog was chasing a ball in the park.

5. The reporter won an award. Her articles explained global warming.
6. I know a man. His daughter entered college at the age of fourteen.

7. We observed a language teacher. Her teaching methods included role-playing.

8. The teachers are very popular. Their methods include role-playing.

◊ PRACTICE 21. Meaning of adjective clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)

Directions: Check all the sentences that are true.

1. The policeman who gave Henry a ticket seemed very nervous.
   a. ___ Henry received a ticket.
   b. ___ Henry seemed nervous.
   c. ___ The policeman seemed nervous.

2. A co-worker of mine whose wife is a pilot is afraid of flying.
   a. ___ My co-worker is a pilot.
   b. ___ My co-worker’s wife is afraid of flying.
   c. ___ The pilot is a woman.

3. The man that delivers office supplies to our company bought a Ferrari.
   a. ___ Our company bought a Ferrari.
   b. ___ A man delivers office supplies.
   c. ___ A man bought a Ferrari.

4. The doctor who took care of my father had a heart attack recently.
   a. ___ My father had a heart attack.
   b. ___ The doctor treated a heart attack patient.
   c. ___ The doctor had a heart attack.

5. The forest fire which destroyed two homes in Woodville burned for two weeks across a wide area.
   a. ___ The forest fire burned for two weeks.
   b. ___ Two homes burned for two weeks.
   c. ___ The forest fire destroyed Woodville.

6. The salesman who sold my friend a used car was arrested for changing the mileage on cars.
   a. ___ My friend bought a car.
   b. ___ My friend was arrested.
   c. ___ The salesman changed the mileage on cars.

7. The waiter who took Julie’s order is her best friend’s cousin.
   a. ___ The waiter is Julie’s cousin.
   b. ___ Julie’s best friend is the waiter’s cousin.
   c. ___ Julie’s best friend is a waiter.
PRACTICE 22. Adjective clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)

Directions: Use the given information to complete the sentences with adjective clauses. Omit the pronoun from the adjective clause if possible.

I share their views.
Their children were doing poorly in her class.
They disrupted the global climate and caused mass extinctions of animal life.
Ted bought them for his wife on their anniversary.
I slept on it at the hotel last night.
They had backbones.
✓ It is used to carry boats with goods and/or passengers.

1. A waterway is a river or stream _which/that is used to carry boats with goods_ and/or passengers.

2. The second grade teacher talked to all the parents _____________________________.

3. The flowers ____________________________ wilted in the heat before he got home.

4. The candidates ____________________________ will get my votes.

5. According to scientists, the first animals ____________________________ were fish. They appeared on the earth about 500 million years ago.

6. Approximately 370 million years ago, seventy percent of Earth’s marine species mysteriously vanished. Approximately 65 million years ago, the dinosaurs and two-thirds of all marine animal species became extinct. According to some scientific researchers, Earth was struck by speeding objects from space _____________________________.

PRACTICE 23. Adjective clauses. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)

Directions: Which of the following can be used in the blanks: who, who(m), which, that, whose, or 0?

1. What do you say to people _who/that_ ask you personal questions that you don’t want to answer?

2. In my country, any person __________________ is twenty-one years old or older can vote. I turned twenty-one last year. The person I voted for in the national election lost. I hope the next candidate for __________________ I vote has better luck. I’d like to vote for a winning candidate.
3. Vegetarians are people who do not eat meat. True vegetarians do not eat flesh that comes from any living creature, including fish. Some vegetarians even exclude any food made from animal products, such as milk and eggs.

4. People who live in New York City are called New Yorkers.

5. Tina likes the present I gave her for her birthday.

6. George Washington is the president whose picture is on a one-dollar bill.

7. Have you seen the movie playing at the Fox Theater?

8. Do you know the woman Michael is engaged to?

9. That’s Tom Jenkins. He’s the boy whose parents live in Switzerland.

10. A thermometer is an instrument that measures temperature.

11. A high-strung person is someone who is always nervous.

12. The man I told you about is standing over there.

◊ PRACTICE 24. Error analysis. (Chapter 12)

Directions: Correct the errors.

1. A movie that looks interesting opens tomorrow.

2. My family lived in a house which it was built in 1900.

3. The little boy was lost who asked for directions.

4. I don’t know people who their lives are carefree.

5. It is important to help people who has no money.

6. At the airport, I was waiting for friends which I hadn’t seen them for a long time.

7. The woman who live next door likes to relax by doing crossword puzzles every evening.

8. My teacher has two cats who their names are Ping and Pong.

9. A beautiful garden that separates my house from the street.

10. I asked the children who was sitting on the bench to help us.
11. The school that my children attend is very good academically.

12. I enjoyed the songs which we sang them.

13. One of the places that I like to visit Central Park.

14. The movie we saw it last evening was very exciting.

15. I sent the parents who I hiked with their son a picture of us on Mt. Fuji.

16. Do you know the man who work in that office?

17. A mother who's daughter is in my class often brings cookies for the children.

18. The CD player who I bought can hold several CDs at once.

19. The bed which I sleep is very comfortable.

20. I would like to tell you about several problems which I have had them since I came here.
CHAPTER 13
Gerunds and Infinitives

◊ PRACTICE 1. Verb + gerund. (Chart 13-1)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

1. Joan often talks about (move) __________ moving __________ overseas.
2. The Browns sometimes discuss (live) ______________ in a smaller town.
3. Christine enjoys (take) ______________ care of her young niece.
4. Nathan keeps (buy) ______________ lottery tickets, but he never wins.
5. My manager considered (give) ______________ pay raises but decided not to.
6. I always put off (do) ______________ my math homework.
7. The students finished (review) ______________ for the test at 3:00 A.M.
8. Ann stopped (run) ______________ and walked the rest of the way home.
9. Dana quit (drive) ______________ after she had a serious car accident.
10. My dentist thinks about (retire) ______________ , but he enjoys his work too much.
11. Last week, Joan and David postponed (get married) ______________ for the second time.
12. Do you mind (work) ______________ another shift tonight?

◊ PRACTICE 2. GO + gerund. (Chart 13-2)
Directions: Complete the sentences with a form of go and one of the given words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>camp</th>
<th>fish</th>
<th>sail</th>
<th>sightsee</th>
<th>skydive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✓  dance</td>
<td>hike</td>
<td>shop</td>
<td>ski</td>
<td>swim</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I love to dance. Last night, my husband and I danced for hours.
   → Last night, my husband and I __________ went dancing __________.
2. Later this afternoon, Ted is going to take a long walk in the woods.
   → Ted ______________ later today.
3. Yesterday, Alice visited many stores and bought some clothes and makeup.
   → Yesterday, Alice ______________.
4. Let's go to the beach and jump in the water.
   → Let's ____________________.

5. My grandfather takes his fishing pole to a farm pond every Sunday.
   → My grandfather ____________________ every Sunday.

6. When I visit a new city, I like to look around at the sights.
   → When I visit a new city, I like to ____________________.

7. I love to put up a small tent by a stream, make a fire, and listen to the sounds of the forest during the night.
   → I love to ____________________.

8. I want to take the sailboat out on the water this afternoon.
   → I want to ____________________ this afternoon.

9. Once a year, we take our skis to our favorite mountain resort and enjoy an exciting weekend.
   → Once a year, we ____________________ at our favorite mountain resort.

10. Last year on my birthday, my friends and I went up in an airplane, put on parachutes, and jumped out of the plane at a very high altitude.
    → Last year on my birthday, my friends and I ____________________.

◊ PRACTICE 3. Identifying gerunds and infinitives. (Charts 13-1 and 13-3)

Directions: Underline the gerunds and infinitives in the sentences. Circle GER for gerunds. Circle INF for infinitives.

1. **GER** Ann promised to wait for me.
2. **GER** INF I kept walking even though I was tired.
3. **GER** INF Alex offered to help me.
4. **GER** INF Karen finished writing a letter and went to bed.
5. **GER** INF Don’t forget to call me tomorrow.
6. **GER** INF David discussed quitting his job several times.
7. **GER** INF The police officers planned to work overtime during the conference.
8. **GER** INF Kevin would like to grow organic vegetables in his garden.
PRACTICE 4. Gerunds and infinitives. (Charts 13-1, 13-3, and 13-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the gerund or infinitive form of the verb.

PART I. Complete the sentences with work.
1. I agreed __________ to work. 7. I decided __________.
2. I put off __________ working. 8. I offered __________.
3. I would love __________. 9. I quit __________.
4. I thought about __________. 10. I refused __________.
5. I promised __________. 11. I stopped __________.
6. I began __________. 12. I finished __________.

PART II. Complete the sentences with leave.
13. She expected __________. 18. She put off __________.
14. She wanted __________. 19. She refused __________.
15. She considered __________. 20. She needed __________.
16. She talked about __________. 21. She thought about __________.
17. She postponed __________. 22. She hoped __________.

PART III. Complete the sentences with know.
23. They seemed __________. 28. They want __________.
24. They expected __________. 29. They can’t stand __________.
25. They would like __________. 30. They needed __________.
26. They don’t mind __________. 31. They appeared __________.
27. They would love __________. 32. They hated __________.

PRACTICE 5. Verb + gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 13-1 → 13-3)

Directions: Choose the correct completion.

1. I would like ______ you and some of my other friends for dinner sometime.
   A. inviting  B. to invite

2. I enjoyed ______ with my family at the lake last summer.
   A. being  B. to be

3. Ron agreed ______ me move out of my apartment this weekend.
   A. helping  B. to help

4. My parents can’t afford ______ all of my college expenses.
   A. paying  B. to pay

5. Liang-Siook, would you mind ______ this letter on your way home?
   A. mailing  B. to mail

6. Do you expect ______ this course? If so, you’d better work harder.
   A. passing  B. to pass
7. Adam offered ______ for me tonight because I feel awful.
   A. working           B. to work

8. I refuse ______ your proposal. I've made up my mind.
   A. considering       B. to consider

9. I wish you would consider ______ my proposal. I know I can do the job.
   A. accepting         B. to accept

10. I don't think I'll ever finish ______ this report. It just goes on and on.
    A. reading           B. to read

11. I would enjoy ______ you in Cairo while you're studying there.
    A. visiting          B. to visit

12. The children seem ______ why they have to stay home tonight.
    A. understanding     B. to understand

13. Don't forget ______ all of the doors before you go to bed.
    A. locking           B. to lock

14. I'm really sorry. I didn't mean ______ your feelings.
    A. hurting           B. to hurt

15. Why do you keep ______ me the same question over and over again?
    A. asking            B. to ask

16. I've decided ______ for another job. I'll never be happy here.
    A. looking           B. to look

17. You need ______ harder if you want to get a promotion.
    A. trying            B. to try

18. Why do you pretend ______ his company? I know you don't like him.
    A. enjoying          B. to enjoy

19. Let's get together tonight. I want to talk about ______ a new business.
    A. opening           B. to open

20. I have a secret. Do you promise ______ no one?
    A. telling           B. to tell

21. The president plans ______ everyone a bonus at the end of the year.
    A. giving            B. to give

22. I have a good job, and I hope ______ myself all through school.
    A. supporting        B. to support

23. I can't wait ______ work today. I'm taking off on vacation tonight.
    A. finishing         B. to finish

24. My neighbor and I get up at six every morning and go ______.
    A. jogging           B. to jog
Directions: Choose the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1. I want ______ the comedy special on TV tonight.
   A. watching  B. to watch

2. I’m a people-watcher. I like ______ people in public places.
   A. watching  B. to watch

3. I’ve already begun ______ ideas for my new novel.
   A. collecting  B. to collect

4. A group of Chinese scientists plan ______ their discovery at the conference next spring.
   A. presenting  B. to present

5. Whenever I wash my car, it starts ______.
   A. raining  B. to rain

6. Angela and I continued ______ for several hours.
   A. talking  B. to talk

7. I love ______ on the beach during a storm.
   A. walking  B. to walk

8. I would love ______ a walk today.
   A. taking  B. to take

9. Are you sure you don’t mind ______ Johnny for me while I go to the store?
   A. watching  B. to watch

10. Annie hates ______ in the rain.
    A. driving  B. to drive

11. My roommate can’t stand ______ to really loud rock music.
    A. listening  B. to listen

12. I don’t like ______ in front of other people.
    A. singing  B. to sing
13. Would you like _____ to the concert with us?
   A. going  B. to go

14. Charlie likes to go _____ when the weather is very windy.
   A. sailing  B. to sail

15. Most children can’t wait _____ their presents on their birthday.
   A. opening  B. to open

◊ PRACTICE 7. Verb + gerund or infinitive. (Charts 13-1, 13-3, and 13-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the infinitive or gerund form of the words in parentheses.

1. Cindy intends (go) _____ to graduate school next year.

2. Pierre can’t afford (buy) _______ a new car.

3. Janice is thinking about (look) _______ for a new job.

4. I’m planning (go) _______ (shop) _______ tomorrow.

5. Would you mind (pass) _______ this note to Joanna? Thanks.

6. Tim expects (go) _______ (fish) _______ this weekend.

7. When Tommy broke his toy, he started (cry) _______.

8. Oscar likes (go) _______ to professional conferences.

9. Would you like (go) _______ to Sharon’s house next Saturday?

10. Mr. Blake appears (have) _______ a lot of money.

11. Eric agreed (meet) _______ us at the restaurant at seven.

12. Have you discussed (change) _______ your major with your academic advisor?

13. The Wilsons went (camp) _______ in Yellowstone National Park last summer.

14. What time do you expect (arrive) _______ in Denver?

15. Don’t put off (write) _______ your composition until the last minute.

16. Ken had to quit (jog) _______ because he hurt his knee.

17. Don’t forget (call) _______ the dentist’s office this afternoon.

18. How do you expect (pass) _______ your courses if you don’t study?

19. I haven’t heard from Stacy in a long time. I keep (hope) _______ that I’ll get a letter from her soon.
20. Shhh. I'm trying (concentrate) _________________. I'm doing a problem for my accounting class, and I can't afford (make) _______________ any mistakes.

21. I'm sleepy. I'd like (go) _______________ home and take a nap.

22. When are you going to start (do) _______________ the research for your term paper?

23. Why did Marcia refuse (help) _______________ us?

24. Khalid tries (learn) _______________ at least 25 new words every day.

25. I considered (drive) _______________ to Minneapolis. Finally I decided (fly) _______________

26. Our teacher agreed (postpone) _______________ the test until Friday.

27. I expect (be) _______________ in class tomorrow.

28. I enjoy (teach) _______________.

29. Mr. Carter continued (read) _______________ his book even though the children were making a lot of noise.

30. Would you like (go) _______________ (dance) _______________ tonight?

31. The Knickerbockers talked about (build) _______________ a new house.

32. Children like (play) _______________ make-believe games. Yesterday Tommy pretended (be) _______________ a doctor, and Bobby pretended (be) _______________ a patient.

33. My cousin offered (take) _______________ me to the airport.

△ PRACTICE 8. Preposition + gerund. (Chart 13-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct preposition and underline the gerund.

PART I. Liz...

1. is afraid of ________ flying.
2. apologized ____________ hurting her friend's feelings.
3. believes ____________ helping others.
4. is good ____________ listening to her friends' concerns.
5. is tired ____________ working weekends.
6. is nervous ____________ walking home from work late at night.
7. dreams ____________ owning a farm with horses, cows, and sheep.
PART II. Leonard ...

8. is responsible __________ closing the restaurant where he works at night.
9. thanked his father __________ lending him some money.
10. plans __________ becoming an accountant.
11. forgave his roommate __________ taking his car without asking.
12. insists __________ eating only fresh fruits and vegetables.
13. is looking forward __________ finishing school.
14. stopped his best friend __________ making a bad decision.
15. is worried __________ not having enough time for family and friends.

◊ PRACTICE 9. Preposition + gerund. (Chart 13-5 and Appendix 2)
Directions: Complete the sentences. Use prepositions and gerunds.

1. Bill interrupted me. He apologized ______ that.
   → Bill apologized ______ interrupting ______ me.

2. I like to learn about other countries and cultures. I’m interested ______ that.
   → I’m interested ______ learning about other countries and cultures.

3. I helped Ann. She thanked me ______ that.
   → Ann thanked me ______ her.

4. Nadia wanted to walk to work. She insisted ______ that.
   → We offered Nadia a ride, but she insisted ______ to work.

5. Nick lost my car keys. I forgave him ______ that.
   → I forgave Nick ______ my car keys when he borrowed my car.

6. Sara wants to go out to eat just because she feels ______ it.
   → She feels ______ going out to eat.

7. I’m not a good artist. I try to draw faces, but I’m not very good ______ it.
   → I’m not good ______ drawing faces.

8. Mr. and Mrs. Reed have always saved for a rainy day. They believe ______ that.
   → Mr. and Mrs. Reed believe ______ for a rainy day.

9. I may fall on my face and make a fool of myself. I’m worried ______ that.
   → I’m worried ______ falling on my face and ______ making a fool of myself when I walk up the steps to receive my diploma.

Gerunds and Infinitives 263
10. The children are going to go to Disneyland. They're excited ________ that.
   → The children are excited __________________ to Disneyland.

11. Their parents are going to Disneyland, too. They are looking forward ________ that.
    → Their parents are looking forward __________________ there too.

12. Max doesn't like to stay in hotels because he is scared of heights. He is afraid ________ that.
    → Max is afraid __________________ in hotels.

◊ PRACTICE 10. Review: gerund vs. infinitive. (Charts 13-1 → 13-5)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the gerund or infinitive form of the verb. Some verbs may require a preposition.

**PART I.** Use the verb *ask.*

1. Marie is thinking __________________ the Petersons over for dinner.
2. Yoko intends __________________ for a day off from work this week.
3. Mika insists __________________ questions that have already been answered.
4. Chris is excited __________________ the new girl in his class to the first school dance.
5. Tarik is new at school. He is nervous __________________ anyone to the dance.
6. My father promised __________________ the doctor for more information on his illness.
7. Mrs. Kim is responsible __________________ parents to help in their children's classroom.
8. Jody would love __________________ her former boyfriend to her wedding, but her fiance has said "no."
9. Jerry hates __________________ for directions when he's lost.
10. Mansour is very independent and doesn't like __________________ others for help with anything.

**PART II.** Use the verb *fix.*

11. Hiro agreed __________________ the window after he broke it.
12. Hiro began __________________ it, but he soon needed more parts.
14. Janet learned how __________________ her bicycle from her mother.
15. Her mother learned __________________ bicycles from her father.
16. My parents talk __________________ their sailboat before summer.
17. The little boy tried __________________ his parent’s leaky faucet.
18. His father attempted _____________ his son’s repairs, but couldn’t.
19. A plumber promised _____________ the faucet the next day.
20. The plumber finished _____________ the faucet in ten minutes.

◊ PRACTICE 11. Review. (Charts 13-1 → 13-5)
Directions: Complete the sentences with verbs from the list. Use each verb only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>adopt</th>
<th>cash</th>
<th>install</th>
<th>stay</th>
<th>use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>be</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>lower</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>write</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Ruth puts off _____________ writing thank-you notes for gifts because she doesn’t know what to say.
2. The city intends _____________ a new traffic light at its most dangerous intersection.
3. I meant _____________ my paycheck on the way home, but I forgot.
4. Would you mind _____________ at the office late tonight so we can finish our budget review?
5. The bus drivers are on strike. They refuse _____________ back to work until they get a new contract.
6. The Adamses want another child. They are discussing _____________ a baby from another country.
7. Sue can’t afford _____________ a vacation this year because she didn’t get a pay raise.
8. My mother is an old-fashioned cook. She doesn’t believe _____________ frozen or canned foods.
9. Little Daniel pretends _____________ a monster whenever someone comes to the door.
10. Politicians always promise _____________ taxes, but my taxes keep rising.

◊ PRACTICE 12. Review. (Charts 13-1 → 13-5)
Directions: Complete the sentences with the appropriate gerund or infinitive of the word in italics. (Some sentences can take either a gerund or an infinitive.) Some sentences require a preposition as well.

1. Matthew wanted to go to a different doctor for his back pain. He considered _____________ going to a specialist.
2. Jim would rather walk than drive to work. Instead _____________ of driving, Jim walks along bike trails to his office.
3. I need to drive to the airport, but I don’t want to park there. I’m not planning ______ there because it’s too expensive.

4. I never watch commercials on TV. In fact, I can’t stand ________ TV commercials, so I generally watch videotaped shows.

5. Joanne’s hobby is cooking. She loves ________ gourmet meals for friends and relatives.

6. Here’s some fresh bread I just baked. I enjoy ________ a variety of breads. They’re so much better than store-bought.

7. Martina is nervous about going to the dentist for a filling. She has been afraid ________ the dentist since she was a little girl.

8. Walter’s dream is to become a doctor in a rural area. He has dreamed ________ a doctor since he was hospitalized as a child.

9. Nathan has a chocolate milkshake every afternoon for a snack. He often feels like ________ two, but he doesn’t.

10. Every morning, rain or shine, Debbie rises early and stretches. Then she goes outside and runs for 30 minutes. Every morning, Debbie goes ________ for half an hour.

11. Marta’s neighbors watered her plants while she was out of town, and she thanked them with a bouquet of flowers when she returned. Marta thanked her neighbors ________ her flowers while she was gone.

12. Sandy spoke harshly to her secretary one morning without meaning to. She immediately apologized ________ harshly.

13. Mark washes all his clothes in hot water. Although his roommates tell him hot water could damage some clothes, he doesn’t listen. He insists ________ all his clothes in hot water.

14. The little girl didn’t see the car rolling slowly toward her. No one was in it, and fortunately a neighbor jumped into the car and stopped it before it could hit her. The neighbor stopped the car ________ the girl.

15. When Rita came to work, her eyes were red and she appeared upset, but she said everything was OK. Later, she was laughing and looked more relaxed. Rita seemed ________ better.
16. If the construction company doesn’t complete the highway repairs on time, it will have to pay a fine for every day it is late. Crews are working around the clock to repair the highway. They believe they will finish _______ it on time.

17. Richard’s company is reorganizing. Some people will lose their jobs, and others will get new positions. Richard really likes this firm and hopes _______ a new position.

18. Christine grew up in a family of ten children. She enjoys her brothers and sisters, but doesn’t want to have such a large family herself. She plans _______ a smaller family.

19. Noelle started her own company and hasn’t had a vacation in three years. She doesn’t feel she can take a vacation until the company is financially stable. She is looking forward _______ a vacation when the company is more financially secure.

20. Tang has been studying medicine abroad for two years and hasn’t seen his family in all that time. He is going home next week and is very excited _______ his family.

◊ PRACTICE 13. BY + gerund. (Chart 13-6)

Directions: Describe what the people did by using by + a gerund.

1. MARY: How did you comfort the child?
   SUE: I held him in my arms.
   → Sue comforted the child _______ him in her arms.

2. PAT: How did you improve your vocabulary?
   NADIA: I read a lot of books.
   → Nadia improved her vocabulary _______ a lot of books.

3. KIRK: How did Grandma amuse the children?
   SALLY: She read them a story.
   → Grandma amused the children _______ them a story.

4. MASAKO: How did you improve your English?
   PEDRO: I watched TV a lot.
   → Pedro improved his English _______ TV a lot.

5. JEFFREY: How did you catch up with the bus?
   JIM: I ran as fast as I could.
   → Jim caught up with the bus _______ as fast as he could.

6. MR. LEE: How did you earn your children’s respect?
   MR. FOX: I treated them with respect at all times.
   → Mr. Smith earned his children’s respect _______ them with respect at all times.
**PRACTICE 14. BY + gerund. (Chart 13-6)**

*Directions:* Complete the sentences in Column A with *by* + an appropriate idea from Column B.

*Example:* I arrived on time  
→ *I arrived on time by taking a taxi instead of a bus.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column A</th>
<th>Column B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. I arrived on time</td>
<td>A. tighten the loose screws</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. I put out the fire</td>
<td>B. count its rings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Giraffes can reach the leaves at the tops of trees</td>
<td>C. read the directions on the package</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. I fixed the chair</td>
<td>D. walk on the bottom of the riverbed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Sylvia was able to buy an expensive stereo system</td>
<td>E. pour water on it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. A hippopotamus can cross a river</td>
<td>F. work all through the night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. I figured out how to cook the noodles</td>
<td>G. stretch their long necks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Pam finished her project on time</td>
<td>H. save her money for two years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. You can figure out how old a tree is</td>
<td>✔ I. take a taxi instead of a bus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRACTICE 15. BY vs. WITH. (Chart 13-6)**

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with *by* or *with.*

1. Alice greeted me ______ with ______ a smile.
2. Ms. Williams goes to work every day ______ by ______ bus.
3. I pounded the nail into the wood ______ ______ a hammer.
4. Tom went to the next city ______ ______ train.
5. I got in touch with Bill ______ ______ phone.
6. Po eats ______ ______ chopsticks.
7. I didn’t notice that the envelope wasn’t addressed to me. I opened it ______ ______ mistake.
8. I sent a message to Ann ______ ______ fax.
9. Jack protected his eyes from the sun ______ ______ his hand.
10. Janice put out the fire ________ a bucket of water.
11. I pay my bills ________ mail.
12. I solved the math problem ________ a calculator.
13. We traveled to Boston ________ car.
14. The rider kicked the sides of the horse ________
    her heels.
15. Jim was extremely angry. He hit the wall ________ his fist.
16. At the beach, Julie wrote her name ________ in the sand ________
    her finger.

◊ PRACTICE 16. Gerund as subject; it + infinitive. (Chart 13-7)

Directions: Complete the sentences by using a gerund as the subject or it + infinitive. Add the word is where appropriate. Use the verbs in the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>complete</th>
<th>eat</th>
<th>live</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>drive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. a. ________ easy for anyone ________ to learn ________ how to cook an egg.
    b. Learning ________ how to cook an egg ________ easy for anyone.

2. a. ________ nutritious food ________ important for your health.
    b. ________ important for your health ________ nutritious food.

3. a. ________ on the wrong side of the road ________ against the law.
    b. ________ against the law ________ on the wrong side of the road.

4. a. ________ fun for both children and adults ________ in the ocean.
    b. ________ in the ocean ________ fun for both children and adults.

5. a. ________ expensive ________ in a dormitory?
    b. ________ in a dormitory expensive?

6. a. ________ difficult ________ these sentences correctly?
    b. ________ these sentences correctly difficult?
PRACTICE 17. Purpose: TO vs. FOR. (Chart 13-8)

Directions: Rewrite the sentences. Use it ...for someone + an infinitive phrase. Use the adjective in parentheses.

1. Shy people have a hard time meeting others at social events. (difficult)
   It is difficult for shy people to meet ___ others at social events.

2. Babies enjoy looking at black-and-white objects. (interesting)
   ___ at black-and-white objects.

3. In many cultures, young children sleep in the same room as their parents. (customary)
   In many cultures, ___ in the same room as their parents.

4. Airline pilots need to have good eyesight. (necessary)
   ___ good eyesight.

5. Many teenagers can't wake up early. (hard)
   ___ early.

6. Elderly people need to keep their minds active. (important)
   ___ their minds active.

7. People don’t like listening to monotone speakers. (boring)
   ___ to monotone speakers.

8. Students need to have strategies to remember new information. (necessary)
   ___ strategies to remember new information.

9. Scientists will never know the origin of every disease in the world. (impossible)
   ___ the origin of every disease in the world.

10. Parents should teach their children by modeling good behavior. (important)
    ___ their children by modeling good behavior.

11. People are often more critical of others than of themselves. (easy)
    ___ more critical of others than of themselves.

12. Small children shouldn’t cross a busy street without help (dangerous)
    ___ a busy street without help.
PRACTICE 18. Purpose: TO vs. FOR. (Chart 13-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with to or for.

PART I. Yesterday, I called the doctor’s office . . .
1. ______ for an appointment.
2. ______ to make an appointment.
3. ______ get a prescription.
4. ______ a prescription.
5. ______ ask a question.
6. ______ get some advice.
7. ______ some advice.

PART II. Yesterday, Chuck stayed after class . . .
8. ______ get help from the teacher.
9. ______ talk with the teacher.
10. ______ a talk with the teacher.
11. ______ extra help.
12. ______ finish a project.
13. ______ work with other students.
14. ______ a meeting with other students.
15. ______ help plan a class party.

PRACTICE 19. Purpose: TO vs. FOR. (Chart 13-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with to or for.

1. We wear coats in the winter ______ to keep warm.
2. We wear coats in the winter ______ for warmth.
3. Mark contacted a lawyer ______ legal advice.
5. Sam went to the hospital ______ an operation.
6. I hired a cab ______ take me to the boat dock.
7. Frank went to the library ______ review for the test.
8. I play tennis twice a week ______ exercise and relaxation.
9. Jennifer used some medicine ______ cure an infection on her arm.
10. I lent Yvette money ______ her school expenses.
11. I went to my manager ______ permission to take the rest of the day off.

PRACTICE 20. (IN ORDER) TO. (Chart 13-9)

Directions: Combine the given phrases in italics to create sentences using (in order) to.

1. watch the news + turn on the TV
   After he got home from work, Jack ______ turned on the TV (in order) to watch ______ the news.

2. wash his clothes + go to the laundromat
   Every weekend Martin ________________________________

Gerunds and Infinitives 271
3. run + get to class on time  
   Every morning Jeannette  ____________________________

4. let in some fresh air + open the bedroom windows  
   Every night I  ____________________________

5. ask them for some money + write a letter to his parents  
   Sometimes Pierre  ____________________________

6. listen to a baseball game + have the radio on  
   Some afternoons at work, my co-workers  ____________________________

7. study in peace and quiet + go to the library  
   Some evenings, I  ____________________________

◊ PRACTICE 21. TOO vs. ENOUGH. (Chart 13-10)  

Directions: Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses and too or enough.

1. I have a tight schedule tomorrow, so I can't go to the park.
   a. (time) I don't have ______________ to go to the park.
   b. (busy) I'm ______________ to go to the park.

2. I'm pretty short. I can't touch the ceiling.
   a. (tall) I'm not ______________ to touch the ceiling.
   b. (short) I'm ______________ to touch the ceiling.

3. Tom has been out of work for months. He can't pay any of his bills.
   a. (money) Tom doesn't have ______________ to pay his bills.
   b. (poor) Tom is ______________ to pay his bills.

4. This tea is very hot. I need to wait a while until I can drink it.
   a. (hot) This tea is ______________ to drink.
   b. (cool) This tea isn't ______________ to drink.

5. I feel sick. I don't want to eat anything.
   a. (sick) I feel ____________________________.
   b. (well) I don't feel ____________________________.

6. Susie is only six years old. She can't stay home by herself.
   a. (old) ____________________________
   b. (young) ____________________________.
PRACTICE 22. TOO vs. ENOUGH. (Chart 13-10)
Directions: Complete the sentences with too, enough, or Ø.

1. I think this problem is Ø important enough to require our immediate attention.
2. Nora is not too tired Ø to finish the project before she goes home.
3. I can't take the citizenship test next week. I haven't had _________ time ________ to study for it.
4. The sun is _________ bright ________ to look at directly.
5. You can do this math problem by yourself. You're _________ smart ________ to figure it out.
6. Our company is _________ successful ________ to start several new branches overseas.
7. My niece doesn't drive yet. She's _________ young ________ to get a driver's license.
8. Robert is an amazing runner. His coach thinks he is _________ good ________ to begin training for an Olympic marathon.
9. Only one person volunteered to help us. We don't have _________ help ________ to finish this task.
10. Look at the children watching the clowns. They can't sit still. They're _________ excited ________ to stay in their chairs.
11. I would love to go hiking with you in the mountains, but I don't think I have _________ energy or strength ________ to hike for two days.
12. The heat outside is terrible! It's _________ hot ________ to fry an egg on the sidewalk!

PRACTICE 23. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Chapter 13)
Directions: Underline the gerunds and infinitives.

1. Do you enjoy being alone sometimes, or do you prefer to be with other people all the time?
2. My son isn't old enough to stay home alone.
3. Jim offered to help me with my work.
4. I called my friend to thank her for the lovely gift.
5. Mary talked about going downtown tomorrow, but I'd like to stay home.

6. It is interesting to learn about earthquakes.

7. Approximately one million earthquakes occur around the world in a year's time. Six thousand can be felt by humans. Of those, one hundred and twenty are strong enough to cause serious damage to buildings, and twenty are violent enough to destroy a city.

8. It's important to recognize the power of nature. A recent earthquake destroyed a bridge in California. It took five years for humans to build the bridge. It took nature fifteen seconds to knock it down.

9. Predicting earthquakes is difficult. I read about one scientist who tries to predict earthquakes by reading the daily newspaper's lost-and-found ads for lost pets. He believes that animals can sense an earthquake before it comes. He thinks they then begin to act strangely. Dogs and cats respond to the threat by running away to a safer place. By counting the number of ads for lost pets, he expects to be able to predict when an earthquake will occur.

**PRACTICE 24. Gerund vs. infinitive. (Chapter 13)**

*Directions:* Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses: gerund or infinitive.

1. (study) **Studying** English is fun.

2. My boss makes a habit of *(jot)* ______________ quick notes to her employees when they've done a good job.

3. From the earth, the sun and the moon appear *(be)______________* almost the same size.

4. A: I don't like airplanes.
   
   B: Why? Are you afraid of *(fly)______________*?
   
   A: No, I'm afraid of *(crash)______________*.

5. A: Let's quit *(argue)______________*. We're getting nowhere. Let's just agree *(disagree)______________* and still *(be)______________* friends.

   B: Sounds good to me. And I apologize for *(raise)______________* my voice. I didn’t mean *(yell)______________* at you.
   
   A: That's okay. I didn’t intend *(get)______________* angry at you either.

6. A: David, why did you want *(sneak)______________* into the movie theater without *(pay)______________*?

   B: I don’t know, Mom. My friends talked me into *(do)______________* it, I guess.

*Jot = write quickly and briefly.*
A: That’s not a very good reason. You are responsible for your actions, not your friends.

B: I know. I’m sorry.

A: How does this make you feel? Do you like yourself for (try) __________ (sneak) __________ into the theater?

B: No. It doesn’t make me feel good about myself.

A: You’re young. We all have lessons like this to learn as we grow up. Just remember: It’s essential for you (have) __________ a good opinion of yourself. It’s very important for all of us (like) __________ ourselves. When we do something wrong, we stop (like) __________ ourselves, and that doesn’t feel good. Do you promise never (do) __________ anything like that again?

B: Yes. I promise! I’m really sorry, Mom.

7. People in the modern world are wasteful of natural resources. For example, every three months, people in North America throw away enough aluminum (build) __________ an entire airplane.

8. I am so busy! I have just enough time (do) __________ what I need (do) __________, but not enough time (do) __________ what I’d like (do) __________.

9. A: What do you feel like (do) __________ this afternoon?

B: I feel like (go) __________ (shop) __________ at the mall.

A: I feel like (go) __________ to a used car lot and (pretend) __________ (be) __________ interested in (buy) __________ a car.

B: You’re kidding. Why would you want (do) __________ that?

A: I like cars. Maybe we could even take one out for a test drive. You know I’m planning (get) __________ a car as soon as I can afford (buy) __________ one. I can’t wait (have) __________ my own car. Maybe we’ll find the car of my dreams at a used car lot. Come on. It sounds like fun.

B: Nah. Not me. You go ahead. (pretend) __________ (be) __________ interested in (buy) __________ a used car isn’t my idea of fun.

10. A: Have you called Amanda yet?

B: No. I keep (put) __________ it off.

A: Why?

B: She’s mad at me for (forget) __________ (send) __________ her a card on her birthday.
A: It’s silly for her (get) ______________ mad about something like that. Just call her and say you are sorry about (remember, not) ______________ to wish her a happy birthday. She can’t stay mad at you forever.

11. One of my good friends, Larry, has the bad habit of (interrupt) ______________ others while they’re talking.

12. In days of old, it was customary for a servant (taste) ______________ the king’s food before the king ate (make) ______________ sure it was not poisoned.

◊ PRACTICE 25. Error analysis. (Chapter 13)

Directions: Correct the errors.

1. I decided not ______________ a new car.

2. The Johnsons are considering ______________ their antique store.

3. Sam finally finished ______________ his vacation home in the mountains.

4. My wife and I ______________ dancing at the community center every Saturday night.

5. Suddenly, it ______________ raining and the wind ______________ to blew.

6. The baby is afraid ______________ be away from her mother for any length of time.

7. I am excited ______________ start college this September.

8. You can send ______________ application fax.

9. My country is too beautiful.
10. Is exciting a sports car to drive.

11. My grandparents enjoy to traveling across the country in a motor home.

12. Elena made this sweater with her hands.

13. Swimming it is one of the sports we can participate in at school.

14. That was very good, but I'm too full no eat any more.

15. My mother-in-law went to a tourist shop for buying a disposable camera.

16. Instead to get her degree in four years, Michelle decided traveling abroad first.

17. Swim with a group of people is more enjoyable than swim alone.

18. Is interesting meet new people.

19. Is hard me to stay up past 9:00.

20. The professor thanked his students do well on the test.
CHAPTER 14

Noun Clauses

◇ PRACTICE 1. Information questions and noun clauses. (Charts 5-2 and 14-2)

Directions: If the sentence contains a noun clause, underline it and circle NOUN CLAUSE. If the question word introduces a question, circle QUESTION. Add appropriate final punctuation: a period (.) or a question mark (?).

1. I don’t know where Jack bought his boots. NOUN CLAUSE QUESTION
2. Where did Jack buy his boots? NOUN CLAUSE QUESTION
3. I don’t understand why Ann left NOUN CLAUSE QUESTION
4. Why did Ann leave NOUN CLAUSE QUESTION
5. I don’t know where your book is NOUN CLAUSE QUESTION
6. Where is your book NOUN CLAUSE QUESTION
7. When did Bob come NOUN CLAUSE QUESTION
8. I don’t know when Bob came NOUN CLAUSE QUESTION
9. What does “calm” mean NOUN CLAUSE QUESTION
10. Tarik knows what “calm” means NOUN CLAUSE QUESTION
11. I don’t know how long the earth has existed NOUN CLAUSE QUESTION
12. How long has the earth existed NOUN CLAUSE QUESTION

◇ PRACTICE 2. Noun clauses. (Chart 14-2)

Directions: Underline the noun clause in each sentence. Draw brackets around and identify the subject (S) and verb (V) of the noun clause.

1. I don’t know where [Patty] [went] last night. S V
2. Do you know where [Joe’s parents] [live]?* S V

*A question mark is used at the end of this noun clause because the main subject and verb of the sentence (Do you know) are a question. Do you know asks a question; where Joe lives is a noun clause.
3. I know where Joe lives.

4. Do you know what time the movie begins?

5. She explained where Brazil is.

6. I don’t believe what Estefan said.

7. I don’t know when the packages will arrive.

8. Please tell me how far it is to the post office.

9. I don’t know who knocked on the door.

10. I wonder what happened at the party last night.

◊ PRACTICE 3. Information questions and noun clauses. (Charts 5-2 and 14-2)

**Directions:** Underline the noun clause. Change the underlined noun clause to a question.

1. QUESTION: Why did Tim leave?
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know why Tim left.

2. QUESTION: Where
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know where he went.

3. QUESTION: 
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know where he lives.

4. QUESTION: 
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know where he is now.

5. QUESTION: 
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know what time he will return.

6. QUESTION: 
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know how far it is to his house.

7. QUESTION: 
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know who lives next door to him.

8. QUESTION: 
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don’t know what happened to him.

◊ PRACTICE 4. Information questions and noun clauses. (Charts 5-2 and 14-2)

**Directions:** Complete the question and noun clause forms of the given sentences.

1. Marcos left at 11:00.

   When did Marcos leave?
   Could you tell me when Marcos left?
2. He said good-bye.
   What ___________________________
   I didn’t hear ___________________________

3. The post office is on Second Street.
   Where ___________________________
   Could you please tell me ___________________________

4. It’s half-past six.
   What time ______________
   Could you please tell me ___________________________

5. David arrived two days ago.
   When ___________________________
   I don’t know ___________________________

6. Anna is from Peru.
   What country ___________________________
   I’d like to know ___________________________

7. Kathy was absent because she was ill.
   Why ______________ absent?
   Do you know ______________ absent?

8. Pedro lives next door.
   Who ______________ next door?
   Do you know ______________ next door?

9. Eric invited Sonya to the party.
   Who(m) ___________________________ to the party?
   Do you know ___________________________ to the party?

10. The Bakers borrowed our camping equipment.
    Who ______________ our camping equipment?
    Do you remember ______________ our camping equipment?

11. The restrooms are located down the hall.
    Where ___________________________
    Could you please tell me ___________________________
PRACTICE 5. Noun clauses. (Chart 14-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences by changing the given questions to noun clauses.

1. Who(m) did Helen talk to? Do you know who (m) Helen talked to?
2. Who lives in that apartment? Do you know ____________________________
3. What did he say? Tell me ____________________________
4. What kind of car does Pat have? I can’t remember ____________________________
5. How old are their children? I can’t ever remember ____________________________
6. Why did you say that? I don’t understand ____________________________
7. Where can I catch the bus? Could you please tell me ____________________________
8. Who did Sara talk to? I don’t know ____________________________
9. How long has Ted been living here? Do you know ____________________________
10. What does this word mean? Could you please tell me ____________________________

PRACTICE 6. Information questions and noun clauses. (Charts 5-2 and 14-2)

Directions: Complete the sentences using the words in parentheses.

1. A: Why (you, were) ________ were you ________ late?
   B: What?
   A: I want to know why (you, were) ________ you were ________ late.

2. A: Where (Tom, go) _________________ last night?
   B: I'm sorry. I didn’t hear what (you, say) ______________________.
   A: I want to know where (Tom, go) _________________ last night.

3. A: What (a bumblebee, is) ______________________?
   B: Excuse me?
   A: I want to know what (a bumblebee, is) ______________________.
   B: It’s a big bee.

4. A: Whose car (Oscar, borrow) _________________ yesterday?
   B: I don’t know whose car (Oscar, borrow) _________________ yesterday.

5. A: Could you please tell me where (Mr. Gow’s office, is) _________________?
   B: I’m sorry. I didn’t understand.
   A: Where (Mr. Gow’s office, is) ______________________?
   B: Ah. Down the hall on the right.
6. A: Rachel left the hospital two weeks ago. When *(she, come)* back to work?
B: I have no idea. I don’t know when *(she, come)* back to work.
A: Why *(she, be)* in the hospital?
B: I don’t know that either. I haven’t heard. I’ll ask Tom. Maybe he knows why *(she, be)* in the hospital.

◊ PRACTICE 7. Noun clauses with WHO, WHAT, WHOSE + BE. (Chart 14-3)

*Directions:* Draw brackets around and identify the subject *(s)* and verb *(v)* of each noun clause.

1. I don’t know who *[that man]* *(is)*.
2. I don’t know *[who]* *(called)*.
3. I don’t know who those people are.
4. I don’t know who that person is.
5. I don’t know who lives next door to me.
6. I don’t know who my teacher will be next semester.
7. I don’t know who will teach us next semester.
8. I don’t know what a lizard is.
9. I don’t know what happened in class yesterday.
10. I don’t know whose hat this is.
11. I don’t know whose hat is on the table.

◊ PRACTICE 8. Noun clauses with WHO, WHAT, WHOSE + BE. (Chart 14-3)

*Directions:* Add the word *is* to each sentence in the correct place. If nothing is needed, write a slash (/) in the blank.

1. I don’t know who / that man *is*.
2. I don’t know who *is* in that room /.
3. I don’t know what *a crow*.
4. I don’t know who *in the doctor’s office*. 282 CHAPTER 14
5. I don't know who _______ that person _______.
6. I don't know what _______ our new address _______.
7. I don't know what _______ on the carpet _______.
8. I don't know what _______ the date _______ today.
9. I don't know what _______ day it _______.
10. I don't know whose office _______ at the end of the hall _______.

◇ PRACTICE 9. Noun clauses with WHO, WHAT, WHOSE + BE. (Chart 14-3)
Directions: Complete the sentences by changing the questions to noun clauses.

1. Who is she? I don't know _____________________________.
2. Who are they? I don't know _____________________________.
3. Whose book is that? I don't know _____________________________.
4. Whose glasses are those? Could you tell me _____________________________.
5. What is a wrench? Do you know _____________________________.
6. Who is that woman? I wonder _____________________________.
7. What is a clause? Don't you know _____________________________.
8. What is in that drawer? I don't know _____________________________.
9. Who is in that room? I don't know _____________________________.
10. What is on TV tonight? I wonder _____________________________.
11. What is a carrot? Do you know _____________________________.
12. Who am I? He doesn't know _____________________________.

◇ PRACTICE 10. Noun clauses with WHO, WHAT, WHOSE + BE. (Chart 14-3)
Directions: Complete the dialogues by changing the questions to noun clauses.

1. A: Whose car is that?
   B: I don't know _______ whose car that is _______.

2. A: Whose car is in front of Sam's house?
   B: I don't know _______ whose car is in front of Sam's house _______.

3. A: Who are the best students?
   B: Ask the teacher _____________________________.

4. A: What time is dinner?
   B: I'm not sure _____________________________.

Noun Clauses 283
5. A: Who's next in line?
   B: I don't know ____________________________.

6. A: Whose purse is this?
   B: Ask the woman in black ____________________________.

7. A: What are the main ideas of the story?
   B: Ask a student ____________________________.

8. A: Whose shoes are those under the chair?
   B: I don't know ____________________________.

9. A: What causes tornadoes?
   B: I'm not sure ____________________________.

◊ PRACTICE 11. Noun clauses and yes/no questions. (Charts 5-2 and 14-4)

Directions: Change each yes/no question to a noun clause.

1. YES/NO QUESTION: Is Tom coming?
   NOUN CLAUSE: I wonder if (whether) Tom is coming ____________________________.

2. YES/NO QUESTION: Has Jin finished medical school yet?
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don't know ____________________________.

3. YES/NO QUESTION: Does Daniel have any time off soon?
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don't know ____________________________.

4. YES/NO QUESTION: Is the flight on time?
   NOUN CLAUSE: Can you tell me ____________________________?

5. YES/NO QUESTION: Is there enough gas in the car?
   NOUN CLAUSE: Do you know ____________________________?

6. YES/NO QUESTION: Is Yuki married?
   NOUN CLAUSE: I can't remember ____________________________.

7. YES/NO QUESTION: Are the Petkersons going to move?
   NOUN CLAUSE: I wonder ____________________________.

8. YES/NO QUESTION: Did Khaled change jobs?
   NOUN CLAUSE: I don't know ____________________________.
PRACTICE 12. Noun clauses and yes/no questions. (Charts 5-2 and 14-4)  
Directions: Complete the sentences using noun clauses. Use *if*.

1. A: Are you going to need help moving furniture to your new apartment?  
   B: I don't know *if I'm going to need* help. Thanks for asking. I'll let you know.

2. A: Is chicken okay for dinner tonight?  
   B: I'm sorry. I couldn't hear you with the TV on.  
   A: I want to know *whether* chicken is okay for dinner tonight.

3. A: Does the new teaching position include health insurance?  
   B: Oh, I'm sorry. Were you talking to me? I wasn't listening.  
   A: Yes. I'd like to know *whether* the new teaching position includes health insurance.

4. A: Will there be a movie on this flight?  
   B: I'll ask the flight attendant. Excuse me, we're wondering *whether* there will be a movie on this flight.

5. A: Does Greg have to come with us?  
   B: Shhh. Don’t ask *whether* Greg has to come with us. Of course he does.  
   He's your brother!

6. A: Do penguins ever get cold?  
   B: That's an interesting question. I don't know *whether* penguins ever get cold.

7. A: Can I drive the car to the store, Dad?  
   B: Are you serious? Of course not! Why do you ask *whether* I can drive the car to the store? You haven’t passed your driver’s test.

8. A: Has Nasser already left the party?  
   B: Sorry, it's so noisy here. I didn't catch that.  
   A: I need to know *whether* Nasser has left the party.

PRACTICE 13. Noun clauses. (Charts 5-2, 14-2, and 14-4)  
Directions: Change the questions to noun clauses.

1. *Is Karen at home?* Do you know *if (whether) Karen is* at home?

2. *Where did Karen go?* Do you know *where Karen went*?

3. *How is Pat feeling today?* I wonder *whether* Pat is feeling better today.

4. *Is Pat feeling better today?* I wonder *whether* Pat is feeling better today.

5. *Does the bus stop here?* Do you know *whether* the bus stops here?

6. *Where does the bus stop?* I wonder *whether* the bus stops there.
7. Why is Elena absent today? The teacher wants to know ________________  
today.

8. Is Elena going to be absent again tomorrow? I wonder ________________  
__________________ again tomorrow.


10. Which book should I buy? I wonder ________________

11. Are we going to have a test tomorrow? Let's ask the teacher ________________  
__________________ a test tomorrow.

12. Is there a Santa Claus? The little boy wants to know ________________ a Santa Claus.

◊ PRACTICE 14. Noun clauses. (Charts 14-2 and 14-4)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs. Pay special attention to the  
use of final -s/-es.

1. Does it rain a lot here?
   Could you tell me if it __________ a lot here?

2. How hot does it get in the summer?
   Could you tell me how hot it __________ in the summer?

3. What do people like to do here?
   Could you tell me what people __________ to do here?

4. Does Bus #10 run on holidays?
   Could you tell me if Bus #10 __________ on holidays?

5. Do the buses run on holidays?
   Could you tell me if the buses __________ on holidays?
6. How long does it take to get to the city?
   Could you tell me how long it __________ to get to the city?

7. What do people enjoy most about this area?
   Could you tell me what people __________ most about this area?

8. Does it seem like an expensive place to live?
   Could you tell me if it __________ like an expensive place to live?

◊ PRACTICE 15. THAT-clauses. (Charts 14-5 and 14-6)

Directions: Add the word that to the sentences at the appropriate places to mark the beginning of a noun clause.

that
1. I'm sorry __________ you won't be here for Joe's party.

2. I predict Jim and Sue will get married before the end of the year.

3. I'm surprised you sold your bicycle.

4. Are you certain Mr. McVay won't be here tomorrow?

5. Did you notice Marco shaved off his mustache?

6. John is pleased Claudio will be here for the meeting.

7. Anna was convinced I was angry with her, but I wasn't.

8. It's a fact the Nile River flows north.

9. A: Guido is delighted you can speak Italian.
   B: I'm surprised he can understand my Italian. It's not very good.

10. A: How do you know it's going to be nice tomorrow?
    B: I heard the weather report.
    A: So? The weather report is often wrong, you know. I'm still worried it'll rain on our picnic.

11. A: Mrs. Lane hopes we can go with her to the museum tomorrow.
    B: I don't think I can go. I'm supposed to babysit my little brother tomorrow.
    A: Oh, too bad. I wish you could join us.
12. A: Do you think technology benefits humankind?

B: Of course. Everyone knows modern inventions make our lives better.

A: I'm not sure that's true. For example, cars and buses provide faster transportation, but they pollute our air. Air pollution can cause lung disease and other illnesses.

---

**PRACTICE 16. THAT-clauses. (Charts 14-5 and 14-6)**

*Directions: Complete the sentences with clauses from the list.*

- All people are equal.
- Flying in an airplane is safer than riding in a car.
- He always twirls his mustache when he's nervous.
- High school students in the United States don't study as hard as the students in my country do.
- A huge monster was chasing me.
- I should study tonight.
- I will get married someday.
- I will have a peanut butter sandwich.
- John “Cat Man” Smith stole Mrs. Adams’ jewelry.
- More than half of the people in the world go hungry every day.
- People are pretty much the same everywhere.
- Plastic trash kills thousands of marine animals every year.

1. I'm hungry. I guess *(that) I will have a peanut butter sandwich.*

2. I have a test tomorrow. I suppose ________________________, but I'd rather go to a movie.

3. Why are you afraid to fly in an airplane? Read this report. It proves ________________________

4. Right now I'm single. I can't predict my future exactly, but I assume ________________________

5. Last night I had a bad dream. In fact, it was a nightmare. I dreamed ________________________
6. The police are investigating the burglary. They don’t have much evidence, but they suspect

7. My cousin feels that people in the United States are unfriendly, but I disagree with him. I’ve
discovered

8. I’ve learned many things about life in the United States since I came here. For example, I’ve
learned

9. I always know when Paul is nervous. Have you ever noticed

10. I believe that it is wrong to judge another person on the basis of race, religion, or sex. I
believe

11. World hunger is a serious problem. Do you realize

12. Don’t throw that plastic bag into the sea! Don’t you know

◊ PRACTICE 17. THAT-clauses. (Charts 14-5 and 14-6)

Directions: Write sentences with the given information. Combine one of the verbs in parentheses
with a noun clause.

1. Smoking in public places should be prohibited. (feel / don’t feel)
   → I feel (don’t feel) that smoking in public places should be prohibited.

2. I’m living in this country. (regret / don’t regret)

3. When will I die? (would like to know / wouldn’t like to know)

4. There will be peace in the world soon. (doubt / don’t doubt)

5. What was I like as a child? (remember / can’t remember)

6. Why does the world exist? (wonder / don’t wonder)

7. Someone may make unwise decisions about my future. (am afraid / am not afraid)

8. What do I want to do with my life? (know / don’t know)
PRACTICE 18. THAT-clauses. (Chart 14-6)

Directions: Write two sentences for each situation. Use the words in parentheses with a noun clause.

1. The Jensens celebrated the graduation of their granddaughter Alice from the university. After graduation, she was offered a good job in chemical research in a nearby town. (be pleased)
   → The Jensens are pleased that their granddaughter graduated from the university. They are pleased that she was offered a good job.

2. Po was asleep. Around one in the morning the smoke alarm in his apartment rang. He woke up and discovered that his apartment building was on fire. (be lucky)

3. Ming Soo didn’t study for her math exam. Afterward, she thought she had failed, but got one of the highest grades in the class. Her teacher had known she would do well and praised her for earning such a high grade. (be surprised)

4. Karen lent her cousin Mark some money. She heard that he left town. He owed a lot of people money. She needs the money she gave her cousin. Her children need new shoes, but she can’t afford to buy them. (be sorry)

PRACTICE 19. THAT-clauses. (Chart 14-7)

Directions: Give the meaning of so by writing a that-clause.

1. A: Does Alice have a car?
   B: I don’t think so. ( = I don’t think that Alice has a car )

2. A: Is the library open on Sunday?
   B: I believe so. ( = I believe that the library is open on Sunday )

3. A: Does Ann speak Spanish?
   B: I don’t think so. ( = I don’t think that Ann speaks Spanish )

4. A: Did Alex pass his French course?
   B: I think so. ( = I think that Alex passed his French course )

5. A: Is Mr. Kozari going to be at the meeting?
   B: I hope so. ( = I hope that Mr. Kozari will be at the meeting )

6. A: Are the photos ready to be picked up at the photo shop?
   B: I believe so. ( = I believe that the photos are ready to be picked up )
Directions: All of the sentences contain quoted speech. Punctuate them by adding quotation marks ("..."), commas (,), periods (.), and question marks (?). Also use capital letters as necessary.

Example: My roommate said the door is open could you close it
       → My roommate said, "The door is open. Could you close it?"

1. Alex said do you smell smoke
2. Something is burning he said
3. He said do you smell smoke something is burning
4. Do you smell smoke he said something is burning
5. Rachel said the game starts at seven
6. The game starts at seven we should leave here at six she said
7. She said the game starts at seven we should leave here at six can you be ready to leave then

Directions: All of the sentences contain quoted speech. Punctuate them by adding quotation marks ("..."), commas (,), periods (.), and question marks (?). Also use capital letters as necessary.

Example: Jack said please wait for me
       → Jack said, "Please wait for me."

1. Mrs. Hill said my children used to take the bus to school
2. She said we moved closer to the school

3. Now my children can walk to school Mrs. Hill said

4. Do you live near the school she asked

5. Yes, we live two blocks away I replied

6. How long have you lived here Mrs. Hill wanted to know

7. I said we’ve lived here for five years how long have you lived here

8. We’ve lived here for two years Mrs. Hill said how do you like living here

9. It’s a nice community I said it’s a good place to raise children

◊ PRACTICE 22. Quoted speech. (Chart 14-8)

Directions: Punctuate the quoted passage. Add quotation marks ("..."), commas (,), periods (.), and question marks (?). Also use capital letters as necessary.

"Why weren't you in class yesterday?" Mr. Garcia asked me.

I had to stay home and take care of my pet bird I said. He wasn't feeling well.

What? Did you miss class because of your pet bird Mr. Garcia demanded to know.

I replied yes, sir. That's correct. I couldn't leave him alone. He looked so miserable.

Now I've heard every excuse in the world Mr. Garcia said.

Then he threw his arms in the air and walked away.
PRACTICE 23. Quoted speech. (Chart 14-8)

Directions: Punctuate the quoted passage. Add quotation marks ("..."), commas (,), periods (.), and question marks (?). Also use capital letters as necessary.

One day my friend Laura and I were sitting in her apartment. We were having a cup of tea together and talking about the terrible earthquake that had just occurred in Iran. Laura asked me, “Have you ever been in an earthquake?”

Yes, I have I replied.

Was it a big earthquake she asked.

I’ve been in several earthquakes, and they’ve all been small ones I answered. Have you ever been in an earthquake?

There was an earthquake in my village five years ago Laura said. I was in my house. Suddenly the ground started shaking. I grabbed my little brother and ran outside. Everything was moving. I was scared to death. And then suddenly it was over.

I’m glad you and your brother weren’t hurt I said.

Yes, we were very lucky. Has everyone in the world felt an earthquake sometime in their lives Laura wondered. Do earthquakes occur everywhere on the earth?

Those are interesting questions I said but I don’t know the answers.

PRACTICE 24. Reported speech: changing pronouns. (Chart 14-9)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the correct pronouns.

1. Mr. Lee said, “I’m not happy with my new assistant.”
   Mr. Lee said that _______ wasn’t happy with _______ new assistant.

2. Tom said to his wife, “My parents invited us over for dinner next weekend.”
   Tom said that _________ parents had invited _________ over for dinner next weekend.

3. The little girl said, “I don’t want to wear my raincoat outside.”
   The little girl said that _________ didn’t want to wear _________ raincoat outside.
4. Jim said, “A policeman gave Anna and me tickets for jaywalking and told us to cross the street at the pedestrian crosswalk.”
   Jim said that a policeman had given Anna and ________ tickets for jaywalking and told ________ to cross the street at the pedestrian crosswalk.

5. The Johnsons said to me, “We will send you an e-mail when we arrive in Nepal.”
   The Johnsons said that ________ would send ________ an e-mail when ________ arrived in Nepal.

6. Jane said, “I want my daughter to feel good about herself.”
   Jane said that ________ wanted ________ daughter to feel good about herself.

7. Mary and Jack said to me, “We are going to be out of town on the day of your party.”
   Mary and Jack said that ________ were going to be out of town on the day of ________ party.

8. Bob said to us, “I will join you after I help my neighbors move some furniture.”
   Bob told us that ________ would join ________ after ________ helped ________ neighbors move some furniture.

◊ PRACTICE 25. Reported speech: changing verbs. (Chart 14-10)

Directions: Complete each sentence with the correct form of the verb.

1. Juan said, “I will meet you at the corner of 5<sup>th</sup> and Broadway.”
   Formal: Juan said (that) he ________ meet ________ us at the corner of 5<sup>th</sup> and Broadway.
   Informal: Juan said (that) he ________ meet ________ us at the corner of 5<sup>th</sup> and Broadway.

2. Maria said, “I’m going to be about 15 minutes late for work.”
   Formal: Maria said she ________ about 15 minutes late for work.
   Informal: Maria said she ________ about 15 minutes late for work.

3. Bob said, “My new car has a dent.”
   Formal: Bob said his new car ________ a dent.
   Informal: Bob said his new car ________ a dent.

4. Phil said, “I need to borrow some money.”
   Formal: Phil said he ________ to borrow some money.
   Informal: Phil said he ________ to borrow some money.
5. Sandy said, "I have flown on an airplane only once."

Formal: Sandy said she _________________________ on an airplane only once.

Informal: Sandy said she _________________________ on an airplane only once.

6. Sami and Jun said, "We are planning a surprise party for Naoko."

Formal: Sami and Jun said they _________________________ a surprise party for Naoko.

Informal: Sami and Jun said they _________________________ a surprise party for Naoko.

7. Naoko said, "I don't want any gifts for my birthday."

Formal: Naoko said she _________________________ any gifts for her birthday.

Informal: Naoko said she _________________________ any gifts for her birthday.

8. Ms. Wall said, "I can babysit next weekend."

Formal: Ms. Wall said she _________________________ next weekend.

Informal: Ms. Wall said she _________________________ next weekend.

◊ PRACTICE 26. Reported speech. (Charts 14-9 and 14-10)

Directions: Complete the sentences. Write the opposite of the quoted speech. Use formal sequence of tenses.

1. A: I have a lot of time.
   B: Oh? I misunderstood you. I heard you say _________________________ a lot of time.

2. A: I found my credit cards.
   B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say _________________________ your credit cards.

3. A: The Smiths canceled their party.
   B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say _________________________ their party.

4. A: It will rain tomorrow.
   B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say _________________________ tomorrow.

   B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say _________________________ a new dog.

6. A: Mei exercises every day.
   B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say _________________________ every day.

Noun Clauses 295
7. A: My computer is working.  
B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say __________________________. 

B: I misunderstood you. I heard you say __________________________ on Friday.

◊ PRACTICE 27. Reporting questions. (Charts 14-9 → 14-11)
Directions: Change the quoted questions to reported questions. Use formal tense sequences.

1. Eric said to me, “How old are you?”  
   → Eric asked me __________________________

2. Ms. Rush said to Mr. Long, “Are you going to be at the meeting?”  
   → Ms. Rush asked Mr. Long __________________________ if he was going to be at the meeting.

3. Larry said to Ms. Ho, “Do you have time to help me?”  
   → Larry asked Ms. Ho __________________________ time to help him.

4. Don said to Robert, “Did you change your mind about going to Reed College?”  
   → Don asked Robert __________________________ mind about going to Reed College.

5. Igor said to me, “How long have you been a teacher?”  
   → Igor asked me __________________________ a teacher.

6. I said to Tina, “Can you speak Swahili?”  
   → I asked Tina __________________________ Swahili.

7. Kathy said to Mr. May, “Will you be in your office around three?”  
   → Kathy asked Mr. May __________________________ around three.

8. The teacher said to Ms. Chang, “Why are you laughing?”  
   → The teacher asked Ms. Chang __________________________.

9. My uncle said to me, “Have you ever considered a career in business?”  
   → My uncle asked me __________________________ a career in business.

◊ PRACTICE 28. Quoting questions. (Charts 14-8 → 14-11)
Directions: Change the reported speech to quotations. Use quotation marks.

1. Eric asked me if I had ever gone skydiving.  
   → Eric said, __________________________ “Have you ever gone skydiving?”

2. Chris wanted to know if I would be at the meeting.  
   → Chris said, __________________________

3. Kate wondered whether I was going to quit my job.  
   → Kate said, __________________________
4. Anna asked her friend where his car was.
   → Anna said, ____________________________

5. Brian asked me what I had done after class yesterday.
   → Brian said, ____________________________

6. Luigi asked me if I knew Italian.
   → Luigi said, ____________________________

7. Debra wanted to know if I could guess what she had in her pocket.
   → Debra asked, ____________________________

8. My boss wanted to know why I wasn’t working at my desk.
   → My boss angrily asked me, ____________________________

◇ PRACTICE 29. Reporting questions. (Charts 14-9 → 14-11)

Directions: Look at the picture and complete the sentences with noun clauses. Use verbs that are appropriate for later reporting (rather than immediate reporting).

A new student, Mr. Sheko, joined an English class. The teacher asked the students to interview him. Later, Mr. Sheko told his friend about the interview.

1. They asked me ____________________________
2. They asked me ____________________________
3. They asked me ____________________________
4. They asked me ____________________________
5. They asked me ____________________________
6. They asked me ____________________________
7. They asked me ____________________________
8. They asked me ____________________________
9. They asked me ____________________________
Directions: Complete the reported speech sentences. Use the formal sequence of tenses.

1. David said to me, “I’m going to call you on Friday.”
   → David said (that) **he was going to call me** on Friday.

2. John said to Ann, “I have to talk to you.”
   → John told Ann **to talk to you**.

3. Diane said to me, “I can meet you after work.”
   → Diane said **after work**.

4. Maria said to Bob, “I wrote you a note.”
   → Maria told Bob **a note**.

5. I said to David, “I need your help to prepare for the exam.”
   → I told David **help to prepare for the exam**.

6. Anna asked Mike, “When will I see you again?”
   → Anna asked Mike when **to see you again**.

7. Mr. Fox said to me, “I’m going to meet Jack and you at the restaurant.”
   → Mr. Fox said **to meet Jack and you at the restaurant**.

8. Laura said to George, “What are you doing?”
   → Laura asked George **what are you doing**.

9. A strange man looked at me and said, “I’m sure I’ve met you before.”
   → A strange man looked at me and said **before. I was sure I’d never seen him before in my entire life.**
PRACTICE 31. SAY vs. TELL vs. ASK. (Chart 14-11)

Directions: Complete the sentences with said, told, or asked.

1. Ann _______ told _______ me that she was hungry.
2. Ann _______ said _______ that she was hungry.
3. Ann _______ _______ me if I wanted to go out to lunch with her.
4. When the storm began, I _______ _______ the children to come into the house.
5. When I talked to Mr. Grant, he _______ _______ he would be at the meeting.
6. Ali _______ _______ his friends that he had won a scholarship to college. His friends _______ _______ they weren’t surprised.
7. My supervisor _______ _______ me if I could postpone my vacation. I _______ _______ him what the reason was. He _______ _______ that our sales department needed me for a project.
8. My neighbor and I had a disagreement. I _______ _______ my neighbor that he was wrong.
9. My neighbor _______ _______ me that I was wrong.
10. Fumiko _______ _______ the teacher that Fatima wasn’t going to be in class.
11. Ellen _______ _______ if I could join her for a movie.
   I _______ _______ I wasn’t feeling well, but I _______ _______ her what movie she was going to. The next day, Ellen _______ _______ me she had enjoyed the movie.

PRACTICE 32. Reported speech. (Chapter 14)

Directions: Complete the dialogues by changing the quoted speech to reported speech. Use said, told, asked, or replied. Practice using the formal sequence of tenses.

   Bob _______ asked me where I lived.

2. He said, “Do you live in the dorm?”
   He _______ _______ in the dorm.

3. I said, “I have my own apartment.”
   I _______ _______ my own apartment.

4. He said, “I’m looking for a new apartment.”
   He _______ _______ for a new apartment.

5. He said, “I don’t like living in the dorm.”
   He _______ _______ in the dorm.

6. I said, “Do you want to move in with me?”
   I _______ _______
7. He said, "Where is your apartment?"
8. I said, "I live on Seventh Avenue."
9. He said, "I can't move until the end of May."
10. He said, "I will cancel my dorm contract at the end of May."
11. He said, "Is that okay?"
12. I said, "I'm looking forward to having you as a roommate."

◊ PRACTICE 33. Reported speech. (Chapter 14)
Directions: Check all the sentences that are correct.

1. ___ The teacher asked are you finished?
   ✓ The teacher asked if I was finished.
   ___ The teacher asked if was I finished?
   ___ The teacher asked that I was finished?
   ✓ The teacher asked, "Are you finished?"

2. ___ Aki said he was finished.
   ___ Aki said that he was finished.
   ___ Aki replied that he was finished.
   ___ Aki answered that he was finished.
   ___ Aki said whether was he finished.

3. ___ Ann told Tom, she needed more time.
   ___ Ann told Tom she needed more time.
   ___ Ann told to Tom she needed more time.
   ___ Ann told she needed more time.
   ___ Ann said Tom she needed more time.
   ___ Ann said she needed more time.

4. ___ Donna answered that she was ready.
   ___ Donna answered was she ready.
   ___ Donna replied she was ready.
   ___ Donna answered, "I am ready."
   ___ Donna answered if she was ready.

5. ___ Mr. Wong wanted to know if Ted was coming.
   ___ Mr. Wong wanted to know is Ted coming?
   ___ Mr. Wong wondered if Ted was coming.
   ___ Mr. Wong wondered was Ted coming.
   ___ Mr. Wong wondered, "Is Ted coming?"

◊ PRACTICE 34. Reported speech. (Chapter 14)
Directions: Read the dialogues and complete the sentences. Use the formal sequence of tenses.

1. A: Oh no! I forgot my briefcase! What am I going to do?
   B: I don't know.
   → When Bill got on the bus, he realized ___(that) he had forgotten___ his briefcase.
2. A: Where's your bicycle, Jimmy?
B: I sold it to a friend of mine.
A: You what?!
→ Yesterday I asked my fourteen-year-old son ____________________________.
	He ____________________________ it to a friend. I was flabbergasted.

3. A: The bus is supposed to be here in three minutes. Hurry up! I'm afraid we'll miss it.
B: I'm ready. Let's go.
→ I told my friend to hurry because I was afraid ____________________________ the bus.

4. A: Can you swim?
B: Yes.
A: Thank heaven.
→ When the canoe tipped over, I asked my friend ____________________________.

5. A: Do you want to go downtown?
B: I can't. I have to study.
→ When I asked Kathy ____________________________ to go downtown, she said
	__________________________ because she ____________________________.

6. A: Ow! My finger really hurts! I'm sure I broke it.
B: Let me see.
→ When Nancy fell down, she was sure ____________________________ her finger.

B: He went to Chicago to visit his sister.
→ When I got to the party, I asked my friend where Jack ____________________________.
I was surprised ____________________________ there. My friend told me
	__________________________ to Chicago to visit his sister.

8. A: Will you be home in time for dinner?
B: I'll be home around 5:30.
→ My wife asked me ____________________________ home in time for dinner. I told her
	__________________________ home around 5:30.

9. A: Have you ever been to Mexico?
B: Yes, I have. Several times.
→ I asked George ____________________________ ever ____________________________ to Mexico. He said
	__________________________ there several times.

10. A: Where's my cane?
B: I don't know. Do you need it?
A: I want to walk to the mailbox.
B: I'll find it for you.
Grandfather asked me __________________________. I told him __________________________. Then I asked him __________________________ it. He said __________________________ to the mailbox. I told him __________________________ for him.

◊ PRACTICE 35. Reported speech. (Charts 14-9→14-11)

Directions: Write a report on the people in the pictures and what they say. Use the formal sequence of tenses.

BEFORE SCHOOL IN THE MORNING

WHERE ARE THE CHILDREN?

THEY'VE ALREADY LEFT FOR SCHOOL.

REALLY? LOOK, THEY FORGOT TO TAKE THEIR BOOKS WITH THEM.

HOW CAN THEY BE SO IRRESPONSIBLE? WHAT ARE WE GOING TO DO?

DON'T WORRY, I'LL TAKE THE BOOKS WITH ME AND DROP THEM OFF AT THE SCHOOL ON MY WAY TO WORK.

OKAY, BYE HONEY, HAVE A GOOD DAY.

HEY! WHERE ARE OUR SCHOOLBOOKS? WE LEFT THEM RIGHT HERE ON THE KITCHEN TABLE.

WE CAN'T GO TO SCHOOL WITHOUT OUR BOOKS.
PRACTICE 36. Error analysis. (Chapter 14)

Directions: Correct the errors.

1. Excuse me. May I ask if how old are you?

2. I wonder did Rashed pick up something for dinner?

3. I'm unsure what does Lawrence do for a living.

4. Fernando said, “the best time for me to meet would be Thursday morning.

5. Eriko said to me was I coming to the graduation party. I say her that I wasn’t.

6. I hope so that I will do well on my final exams.

7. Antonio asked his mother what does she want for her birthday?

8. I'm not sure if the price include sales tax.

9. My mother said to me that: “How many hours you spent on your homework?

10. Pedro asked is that okay? (2 answers: direct and indirect speech)

11. Mika told she would going to stay home today.

12. I'd like to know how do you do that.


14. Beth said she had working hard all week but now had some time off.

15. Is a fact that life always changes.
APPENDIX 1
Phrasal Verbs

◊ PRACTICE 1. Phrasal verbs: separable. (Group A)
Directions: Complete each sentence with a correct particle from the list. Particles may be used more than once or not at all.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>away</th>
<th>in</th>
<th>on</th>
<th>up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>down</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>out</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I'd like to listen to some music. Would you please turn the radio ________?  
2. My husband makes ___________ bedtime stories for our children.
3. My arms hurt, so I put the baby ___________ for a minute. But he started crying right away, so I picked him ___________ again.
4. A: We need a plumber to fix our leaky water faucet. You need to call one today.  
   B: I will.
   A: Don't put it ___________.  
   B: I won't. I'll call today. I promise.
5. A: Why are you wearing your new suit?  
   B: I just put it ___________ to see what it looks like.  
   A: It looks fine. Take it ___________ and hang it up before it gets wrinkled.
6. A: I found this notebook in the wastebasket. It's yours, isn't it?  
   B: Yes. I threw it ___________. I don't need it anymore.  
   A: Okay. I thought maybe it had fallen in the wastebasket accidentally.
7. A: I need Jan's address again.  
   B: I gave you her address just yesterday.  
   A: I'm afraid I've lost it. Tell me again, and I'll write it ___________.  
   B: Just a minute. I have to look it ___________ in my address book.
8. A: You’ll never believe what happened in physics class today!
B: What happened?
A: We had a big test. When I first looked it over, I realized that I couldn’t figure
__________ any of the answers. Our teacher had handed __________ the wrong test! We hadn’t covered that material yet.

9. A: You’re all wet!
B: I know. A passing truck went through a big puddle and splashed me.
A: You’d better take those clothes __________ and put __________ something clean and dry before you go to work.

10. A: Wake __________! It’s seven o’clock! Rise and shine!
B: What are you doing!? Turn the light __________ and close the window curtain!
A: My goodness but we’re grumpy this morning. Come on. It’s time to get up, dear. You don’t want to be late.

◊ PRACTICE 2. Phrasal verbs: separable. (Group A)
Directions: Circle all the correct completions for each sentence.

1. Lisa took off __________ her toys __________ her socks __________ her notebooks.
2. Akiko turned off the TV __________ the butter __________ the stove.
3. Jonas put on __________ his new shoes __________ a fire __________ the dishes.
4. Benjamin made up __________ a story __________ a fairy tale __________ an excuse.
5. Susanna threw out some air some rotten food an old shirt.

6. Antonio put off a doctor’s appointment a meeting a trip.

7. Max figured out a puzzle a math problem a riddle.

8. Kyong handed in some candy a report some late homework.

9. The secretary wrote down a message a pencil a phone number.

10. The mail carrier put down a box the mail truck a sack of mail.

11. I took off my coat my bicycle my wedding ring.

12. Mustafa turned off the light the computer the car engine.

◊ PRACTICE 3. Phrasal verbs: nonseparable. (Group B)
Directions: Complete each sentence with a correct particle from the list. Particles may be used more than once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>from</th>
<th>into</th>
<th>on</th>
<th>over</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>out of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. A: Why are your pants so dirty?
   B: I lost my balance when I got out of the car, and I fell in the mud.

2. A: I was so embarrassed in class today.
   B: What happened?
   A: The teacher called me, and I didn’t know the answer.

3. A: The bus is coming. When do I pay?
   B: Don’t pay when you get on. Pay the driver when you get on.

4. A: You look great! I thought you had the flu.
   B: I did, but I got it very quickly.

5. A: Why haven’t we gotten a reply to our letter to the telephone company?
   B: I don’t know. I’ll look into it.

6. A: Guess who I ran into today?
   B: Who?
   A: Melanie Nelson, from high school. She’s married now and has seven children.

7. A: Mommy, where do butterflies come from?
   B: Well, first they are caterpillars. Then, when the caterpillars become large, they turn into butterflies.
8. A: Hurry! Get __________ the car. We’ve got to be at the train station in ten minutes.
   B: OK. I’m ready. Let’s go.
   B: How on earth did that happen?
   A: I got __________ the wrong bus. It didn’t stop until we were in the city.

◊ PRACTICE 4. Phrasal verbs: nonseparable. (Group B)
Direction: Complete each sentence in Column A with the correct phrase from Column B.

Example: Annette speaks both French and English because she comes . . .
→ Annette speaks both French and English because she comes from Quebec.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column A</th>
<th>Column B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Annette speaks both French and English because she comes . . .</td>
<td>A. into your request for medical records.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. When Sylvia lost her job, it took her several weeks to get . . .</td>
<td>B. from Quebec.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Our office will need several days to look . . .</td>
<td>C. over the shock.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. When a plane lands, the first-class passengers get . . .</td>
<td>D. in a taxi and went to the airport.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. While I was walking in the mall, I ran . . .</td>
<td>E. on unprepared students.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. When he left the hotel, David got . . .</td>
<td>F. into several friends from high school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Mrs. Riley, our math teacher, often calls . . .</td>
<td>G. off first.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

◊ PRACTICE 5. Phrasal verbs: separable. (Group C)
Direction: Complete each sentence with a correct particle from the list. Particles may be used more than once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>away</th>
<th>down</th>
<th>on</th>
<th>up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>back</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>out</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. You still owe me the money I lent you. When are you going to pay me __________? 
2. Turn __________ the radio! It’s too loud! I can’t hear myself think.
3. Debra __________ the fire in the wastebasket with a fire extinguisher.
4. After I wash and dry the dishes, I __________ them . I put them in the cupboard where they belong.
5. Before you buy shoes, you should __________ them to see if they fit.
6. I can’t hear the TV. Could you please __________ it __________? No, don’t shut it __________! I wanted you to make it louder, not turn it off. I want to hear the news.
7. A: That’s mine! *Give* it ____________!
   B: No, it’s not. It’s mine!
   C: Now children, don’t fight.

8. A: I don’t hear anyone on the other end of the phone.
   B: Just *hang* _____________. It’s probably a wrong number.

9. A: I hear that Tom *asked* you ____________ for next Saturday night.
   B: Yes, he did. He *called* me ____________ a couple of hours ago and invited me to the symphony concert.
   A: The concert’s been *called* ____________ because the musicians are on strike. Didn’t you hear about it?
   B: No, I didn’t. I’d better *call* Tom ____________ and ask him what he wants to do instead.

10. I don’t mind if you look at these maps, but please *put* them ____________ in the drawer when you’re finished.

◊ **PRACTICE 6. Phrasal verbs: separable.** (Groups A, B, C)
   **Directions:** Complete the sentences with a given particle where possible. If not possible, write “X.”

   1. *out*
   a. Paulo asked __________ out one of his classmates.
   b. Paulo asked one of his classmates __________ out.

   2. *on*
   a. The teacher called __________ on Ted for the answer.
   b. The teacher called Ted __________ X for the answer.

   3. *into*
   a. The police are looking __________ the murder, but need help from the public to solve it.
   b. The police are looking the murder __________, but need help from the public to solve it.

   4. *into*
   a. Khalifa ran __________ his cousin at the store.
   b. Khalifa ran his cousin __________ at the store.

   5. *up*
   a. Claire turned __________ the ringer on the phone.
   b. Claire turned the ringer on the phone __________.

   6. *away*
   a. Dr. Benson threw __________ a valuable coin by mistake.
   b. Dr. Benson threw a valuable coin __________ by mistake.

   7. *down*
   a. Yumi’s baby cries whenever she puts him __________.
   b. Yumi’s baby cries whenever she puts __________ him.

   8. *up*
   a. Would you please wake __________ me in one hour?
   b. Would you please wake me __________ in one hour?
9. away  a. You can leave the dishes. I’ll put them _______ later.
b. You can leave the dishes. I’ll put _______ them later.

10. up  a. When Joan feels lonely, she calls _______ a friend and talks for a while.
b. When Joan feels lonely, she calls a friend _______ and talks for a while.

11. off  a. The hill was so steep that I had to get _______ my bicycle and walk.
b. The hill was so steep that I had to get my bicycle _______ and walk.

12. from  a. This fruit is very fresh. It came _______ my garden.
b. This fruit is very fresh. It came my garden _______.

◊ PRACTICE 7. Phrasal verbs: separable. (Group D)
Directions: Complete each sentence with a correct particle from the list. Particles may be used more than once or not at all.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>around</th>
<th>down</th>
<th>in</th>
<th>out</th>
<th>up</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>back</td>
<td>from</td>
<td>off</td>
<td>over</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. When I finish writing on one side of the paper, I turn it _______ and write on the back.
2. When the teacher finds a mistake in our writing, she points it _______ so we can correct it.
3. When I write words in this practice, I am filling _______ the blanks.
4. When I discover new information, I find something _______.
5. When I need to see information from my computer on paper, I print it _______.
6. When buildings are old and dangerous, we tear them _______.
7. When I turn and go in the opposite direction, I turn _______.
8. When I remove a piece of paper from a spiral notebook, I tear the paper _______ of my notebook.
9. When I write something that I don’t want anybody else to see, I tear the paper into tiny pieces. I tear _______ the paper.
10. When I write information on an application form, I fill the form _______.
11. When I make a mistake in something I write, I erase the mistake if I’m using a pencil. If I’m using a pen, I cross the mistake _______ by drawing a line through it.
12. When my teacup is empty, I fill it _______ again if I’m still thirsty.
13. When I check my homework carefully before I give it to the teacher, I look it _______.
PRACTICE 8. Phrasal verbs: separable and nonseparable. (Groups A, B, C, D)

**Directions:** Complete the sentences with the particles in *italics*. The particles may be used more than once or not at all.

1. **out, away, back, down, off, on**
   
   Carol . . .
   
   a. put **off** her vacation because she was sick.
   b. put **on** her boots to go out in the rain.
   c. put the phone **off** when she saw a spider crawling toward her.
   d. put her things **off** in her suitcase after the customs officer checked them.
   e. put **off** the stovetop fire with a small fire extinguisher.
   f. put **on** all the groceries she bought before she started dinner.

2. **out, in, up**
   
   James . . .
   
   a. handed **out** his financial report before the due date.
   b. handed **in** cigars when his son was born.

3. **into, off, on, up, over, out of**
   
   Linda . . .
   
   a. got **off** the flu in three days and felt wonderful.
   b. got **on** the bus and walked home.
   c. got **in** the bus and sat down behind the driver.
   d. got **up** a taxi to go to the airport.
   e. got **off** the taxi, paid the driver, and left a nice tip.

4. **in, down, up, out**
   
   a. This book has a few pages missing. The baby tore them **out**.
   b. Before I throw my credit card receipts away, I tear them **off**. I don’t want anyone to read them.
   c. The building across the street will be torn **down** to make room for a parking garage.

5. **over, into, up**
   
   a. The neighbors asked the sheriff to look **over** a crime in their neighborhood.
   b. The sheriff looked **into** a suspect’s address on the computer.
   c. The sheriff took the suspect’s I.D., looked it **up**, and decided it was fake.

6. **off, down, up, back**
   
   a. I called Rita **off** several times, but got no answer. I’m a little worried.
   b. The meeting was called **off** because the chairperson was sick.
   c. Jack called and left a message. I’ll call him **back** after dinner.
7. over, up, in, off, back
   a. My ears are ringing! Please turn ________ the music.
   b. It's cold, and I'm tired. Let's turn ________ and go home.
   c. Could I turn ________ the TV? I can't hear the news.
   d. Joe, the meat needs to be cooked on the other side. Would you turn it ________, please?

8. in, out, up
   a. I forgot to fill ________ a couple of blanks on the test. I hope I passed.
   b. Can I take this application home and fill it ________? I don't have much time now.
   c. Jack carries a thermos bottle to work. He fills ________ his cup when he gets thirsty.

◊ PRACTICE 9. Phrasal verbs: separable. (Group E)
   Directions: Complete each sentence with a correct particle from the list. Particles may be used more than once or not at all.

   away back off on out over up

1. It's pretty chilly in here. You might want to leave your jacket ________.

2. Mrs. Jefferson became a widow at a young age. She had to bring ________ six children by herself.

3. Give us a few hours. We'll work this problem ________ and let you know our solution.

4. Those are trick birthday candles. Every time you blow them ________, they light again.

5. My roommate gives homeless people his old clothes. He tries to help them ________ as often as possible.

6. A: Robert has taken Diane ________ several times. They go to restaurants and movies, but he doesn't seem serious about her.
   B: I know. Diane keeps trying to talk ________ their future, but he isn't interested in doing that.
7. A: It's hard to understand our company's policies. All the senior managers are getting large bonuses while the company is laying ________ people in every department.
B: I know. I need to think ________ whether I want to continue with this job.

8. A: What is your store's return policy?
B: You can bring clothes ________ within two weeks, and you need your receipt.

9. A: Are you going to meet with your supervisor this morning?
B: Yes. I'm going to try to bring ________ the idea of a raise.

10. A: What time are you coming home?
   B: Around midnight.
   A: OK. I'll leave some lights ________.

11. A: We did something that will cheer you ________.
    B: What's that?
    A: We cleaned ________ your yard and garden while you were in the hospital. You'll see as soon as we get there.
    B: Thanks! What a wonderful surprise.

◊ PRACTICE 10. Phrasal verbs: separable. (Group E)
Directions: Complete the sentences with a phrasal verb from the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>blow out</th>
<th>cheer up</th>
<th>give away</th>
<th>take back</th>
<th>think over</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bring up</td>
<td>clean up</td>
<td>lay off</td>
<td>take out</td>
<td>work out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Michael is worried. His company is planning to ______ lay ______ 20% of its workforce ______ off ______, and he doesn't have much seniority.

2. If you decide these shoes won't work for you, you can _______ _______ them _______ within seven days.

3. That was so nice of you to water my plants while I was gone. I'd like to _______ _______ to dinner to thank you.

4. There are ten candles on this cake, Jenny. Can you _______ _______ them all _______?

5. Pauline has many clothes in her closet that she doesn't wear. Why doesn't she _______ _______ them _______?
6. I have some news that will ____________ you ___________. We’re getting two weeks additional vacation!

7. Let’s set aside some time this weekend and finally ____________ this place ___________. This apartment is a mess.

8. The Smiths had a lot of arguments during the first year of their marriage, but I think they’ve finally ____________ their differences ___________. They seem pretty happy now.

9. Buying this house is a huge decision. We really need more time to ____________ it ____________.

10. You’d better not ____________ the subject of politics ____________ with Ron. He becomes very upset when someone disagrees with his point of view.

◊ PRACTICE 11. Phrasal verbs: intransitive. (Group F)

Directions: Complete each sentence with a correct particle from the list. The particles may be used more than once or not at all.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>back</th>
<th>in</th>
<th>off</th>
<th>out</th>
<th>to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>down</td>
<td>of</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>over</td>
<td>up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The plane shook a little when it ____________ _____________. It made me nervous.

2. Emily’s parents are upset because she ____________ ____________ with friends every night and doesn’t seem to have enough time for her studies.

3. Ken ____________ ____________ in a small town and isn’t used to the fast pace of the city.

4. I’m afraid we can’t hear you in the back of the room. Could you please ____________ ____________? 

5. The computer teacher was so confusing. I didn’t learn a thing! I think I’ll just ____________ ____________ with a new teacher next term.

6. I’m exhausted. All week long I’ve been ____________ ____________ between 4:00 and 5:00 A.M. for work.

7. A: Professor Wilson, do you have a minute?
   B: Sure. ____________ ____________ and ____________ ____________.

8. A: I don’t feel like cooking tonight.
   B: Me neither. Let’s ____________ ____________. 

314 APPENDIX 1
9. A: Sorry I’m late. The bus broke ___________ on the highway, and we had to wait for another.
   B: No problem. The meeting just started.

10. A: Mrs. Taylor is in the hospital again.
    B: What happened?
    A: She fell ___________ and broke her hip.

11. A: The children are all dressed ___________. They look so nice.
    B: Yes. They’re having their school pictures taken today.

12. A: I’m really excited about Victoria and Nathan’s wedding next month. They’re such a great couple.
    B: I’m afraid I have bad news. They broke ___________ two days ago.

13. A: Ever since I gave ___________ smoking, I want to eat all the time.
    B: Try chewing gum. It helped me when I quit.

14. A: Look who just showed ___________.
    B: Rover, what are you doing here? Dogs were not invited to this party!

15. A: Our new house will be finished April 1.
    B: We can help you move ___________ ___________ your old apartment.
    A: That would be wonderful.

16. A: Where’s Julia?
    B: At the doctor’s. She broke ___________ in a rash last night, and she doesn’t know what it is.

17. A: Don’t stop now. Finish the story for us. Please!
    B: Okay, children. I’ll go ___________ if you promise to listen quietly.

18. A: Buddy, if you get all ready for bed, you can stay ___________ and watch your favorite cartoon.
    B: O.K., Mom.

19. A: How was your dental appointment?
    B: I tried to sit ___________ and relax. Even though it didn’t hurt, I was nervous the whole time.

    B: Keep your head down and rest for a minute.

21. A: Someone keeps calling and hanging ___________.
    B: Call the phone company. They have a way for you to find out who it is.
PRACTICE 12. Phrasal verbs: intransitive. (Group F)

Directions: Complete each sentence with a correct particle from the list. Particles may be used more than once.

| of | out | up |

1. Lazy Leo . .
   a. broke ___up___ with his girlfriend because she didn’t want to wash his clothes.
   b. stayed ______ all night and didn’t come home until morning.
   c. showed ______ late for class without his homework.
   d. goes ______ with friends to parties on school nights.
   e. eats ______ at restaurants because he doesn’t like to cook.
   f. moved ______ _______ his apartment without telling the manager.

2. Serious Sally . .
   a. goes to bed very early. She never stays ______ past 9:00.
   b. gets ______ at 5:00 every morning.
   c. speaks ______ in class when no one will answer.
   d. dresses ______ for school.
   e. never gives ______ when she gets frustrated.
   f. grew ______ as an only child.

PRACTICE 13. Phrasal verbs: three-word. (Group G)

Directions: Complete each sentence with two particles.

1. When I cross a busy street, I’m careful. I look ___out___ ___for___ cars and trucks.

2. Some friends visited me last night. I hadn’t expected them. They just dropped ______ ______ me.

3. When I put my name on a list for a class, I sign ______ ______ it.

4. If I like people and enjoy their company, that means that I get ______ ______ them.

5. My cousin never does anything useful. He just fools ______ ______ his friends all day, wasting time.

6. When somebody uses the last spoonful of sugar in the kitchen, we don’t have any more sugar. That means we have run ______ ______ sugar and need to go to the market.

7. I’m glad when I finish my homework. When I get ______ ______ my homework, I can go out and play tennis or do whatever else I feel like doing.
8. In some places, it’s important to be careful about pickpockets. There are places where tourists have to **watch** **pickpockets.**

9. If you return from a trip, that means you **get a** **trip.**

10. Sometimes students have to quit school because they need to get a job, fail their courses, or lose interest in their education. There are various reasons why students **drop school.**

11. Maria was born and raised in Brazil. In other words, she **grew Brazil.**

**PRACTICE 14. Phrasal verbs: three-word. (Group G)**

*Directions:* Complete each sentence with the correct word from the list.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>assignment</th>
<th>gymnastics class</th>
<th>paint</th>
<th>snakes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cord</td>
<td>Hawaii</td>
<td>rocks</td>
<td>their neighbors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Martin signed up for a **gymnastics class**. It starts next week.

2. The Hansens get along well with **their neighbors**. They even take vacations together.

3. I can’t finish the living room walls because I’ve run out of **paint**.

4. The highway sign said to watch out for **snakes**. They roll down the hills and sometimes hit cars.

5. As soon as I get through with this **assignment**, we can go to lunch. I have just one more problem to figure out.

6. Don’t fool around with that **cord**. You might get an electric shock.

7. You look very rested and relaxed. When did you get back from **Hawaii**?

8. Look out for **rocks** on the path. They’re not poisonous, but they might startle you.

**PRACTICE 15. Phrasal verbs: three-word. (Group H)**

*Directions:* Complete each sentence with two particles.

1. Before we consider buying a home in this area, we’d like to **find out more about** the schools.

2. The mountain climbers **set the** **summit at dawn and reached it by lunchtime.**
3. A: Marty is 43 tomorrow, and she’s decided to go _______ _______ school.
   B: Good for her! It’s never too late.

4. A: What do teenagers like to do around here for fun?
   B: Some like to hang _______ _______ friends at the mall, but I wouldn’t recommend it. The management doesn’t approve.

5. A: Please keep Susie _______ _______ the dog.
   B: Is she afraid?
   A: No, that’s the problem. She’ll try to kiss him.

6. A: I’m going grocery shopping. Do you want to come _______ _______ me?
   B: No, thanks. I’ve got too much to do. But wait a minute. I cut some coupons _______ _______ the paper for you. Let me get them.

7. A: Let’s invite the Tangs to come _______ _______ our beach house on Saturday.
   B: Good idea. I’ll call them now.

8. A: We’re going out for pizza at Little Italy. Do you want to come along?
   B: Sure. I wasn’t going to do anything except sit _______ _______ my cat tonight!

   B: Shall we call first or surprise him?

10. A: Why don’t we get _______ _______ Eriko next week?
    B: Great! We can talk to her about our new plans for the company.

◊ PRACTICE 16. Phrasal verbs: three-word. (Group H)

Directions: Complete the sentences with words from the list that will give the same meanings as the underlined words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>along with</th>
<th>back to</th>
<th>out for</th>
<th>over to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>around</td>
<td>out about</td>
<td>out of</td>
<td>together with</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. I’d like to get information about the company before I apply for a job there.
   I’d like to find _______ _______ the company before I apply for a job there.

2. The two brothers left for the lake before sunrise. They wanted to be the first ones there.
   The two brothers set _______ _______ the lake before sunrise. They wanted to be the first ones to arrive.
3. After Maria had her first child, she took a year off before she returned to work.

After Maria had her first child, she took a year off before she went ______________ work.

4. Jimmy really needs to find a job. He spends his days sitting at home doing nothing.

Jimmy really needs to find a job. He spends his days sitting ______________ at home.

5. Mark won’t be home for dinner. He plans to join his co-workers for a party.

Mark won’t be home for dinner. He plans to get ______________ his co-workers for a party.

6. Who wants to accompany me to the doctor’s?

Who will go ______________ me to my doctor’s appointment?

7. The dog was growling, so the dog catcher approached him very carefully.

The dog was growling, so the dog catcher went ______________ him very carefully.

8. Here’s the article I told you about. I removed it from this morning’s paper.

I cut it ______________ this morning’s paper.

◊ PRACTICE 17. Review: phrasal verbs. (Appendix 1)

Directions: Choose the correct particle.

1. Professor Brown always calls ______ the students who sit in the back of the class to answer.
   A. on   B. off   C. out   D. back

2. Tommy takes other children’s toys and doesn’t want to give them ______.
   A. away   B. back   C. in   D. to

3. Laurie needs to wake her roommate ______ every morning because she sleeps through her alarm.
   A. in   B. on   C. up   D. over

4. Bobby, let’s take a few minutes and pick ______ the toys in your room. They’re all over the floor.
   A. over   B. on   C. up   D. away

5. Not enough people signed up ______ the gardening class, so it had to be canceled.
   A. for   B. in   C. into   D. with

6. This cold has lasted too long. I feel like I’ll never get ______ it.
   A. with   B. over   C. away   D. back

7. Aren’t you going to try ______ these shoes before you buy them?
   A. in   B. on   C. up   D. of

8. Keep away ______ the stove! It’s still hot.
   A. off   B. from   C. out   D. of
9. We'll feel more confident about the success of our new business after we pay _____ our loan.
   A. back   B. up   C. in   D. together

10. Look how nice Jenny's bedroom looks! She spent all morning cleaning it _____.
    A. over   B. back   C. up   D. away

11. Steven had problems early in his career, but he seems to have worked them _____.
    A. up   B. over   C. off   D. out

12. Watch out _____ the cat. She might scratch you.
    A. for   B. in   C. on   D. of

13. The fire department recommends keeping a fire extinguisher in your house to put _____ fires.
    A. off   B. out   C. back   D. down

14. It took Tim only 20 minutes to figure _____ the entire crossword puzzle.
    A. on   B. in   C. up   D. out

15. Although Mrs. Warren had been very wealthy, the size of her estate was quite small when she died. She had given _____ most of her money to charities.
    A. away   B. in   C. into   D. from

16. I cut your picture out _____ the newspaper today. Did you know you were going to be in it?
    A. in   B. off   C. of   D. from

17. Even though Kimberly's been home from the hospital for a week, she doesn't want anyone to come _____ to her house. She's still quite weak.
    A. over   B. about   C. into   D. from

18. This hike is pretty exhausting. I don't think I can go _____ any farther. I need to rest.
    A. out   B. in   C. to   D. on

19. There's a gas station. I'll wash the windows while you fill _____ the tank.
    A. on   B. in   C. out   D. up

20. A fight broke _____ among students after school. Fortunately, no one was injured.
    A. out   B. down   C. in   D. off

21. Sometimes when I recite a poem, I forget a line. So I go back to the beginning and start _____.
    A. over   B. to   C. with   D. back

22. The school administrators have started new programs to prevent students from dropping out _____ high school.
    A. in   B. off   C. of   D. for

23. Mr. Robinson is happy to lend his adult children money as long as they pay it _____.
    A. up   B. back   C. down   D. for

24. My computer printer isn't working. I can't print _____ any of my work.
    A. out   B. in   C. over   D. back
PRACTICE 1. Preposition combinations. (Group A)

Directions: Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. My eight-year-old son Mark is afraid of thunder and lightning.

2. My mother really likes my friend Ahmed because he is always polite to her.

3. Fifty miles is equal to eighty kilometers.

4. A: How do I get to your house?
   B: Are you familiar with the red barn on Coles Road? My house is just past that and on the left.
   A: Oh, sure. I know where it is.

5. It’s so hot! I’m thirsty for a big glass of ice water.

6. My boss was nice to me after I made that mistake, but I could tell she wasn’t pleased.

7. Mr. Watts is often angry at some silly little thing that isn’t important.

8. A: Harry, try some of this pasta. It’s delicious.
   B: No, thanks. My plate is already full of food.

9. Four council members were absent from the meeting last night.

10. A: Why are you friendly with Mr. Parsons? He’s always so mean to everybody.
     B: He’s always been very kind to me, so I have no reason to treat him otherwise.

11. My sister is very angry with me. She won’t even speak to me.

12. Is everybody ready for dinner? Let’s eat before the food gets cold.

13. Ben’s wife got a promotion at work. He is really happy with her.
PRACTICE 2. Preposition combinations. (Group A)

Directions: Create a sentence by matching each phrase in Column A with a phrase in Column B. Use each phrase only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column A</th>
<th>Column B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Our dog is afraid</td>
<td>B. about his team's win.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The class is curious</td>
<td>A. for a glass of lemonade.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Mr. White is angry</td>
<td>C. for the start of school.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Several nurses have been absent</td>
<td>D. from work due to illness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. After gardening all day, Helen was thirsty</td>
<td>E. about the snake in the cage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. The workers are angry</td>
<td>F. to everyone.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. The baseball coach was happy</td>
<td>G. of canned foods.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. The kitchen cupboard is full</td>
<td>H. about their low pay.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. I'm not ready</td>
<td>I. at his dog for chewing his slippers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. It's important to be kind</td>
<td>J.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRACTICE 3. Preposition combinations. (Group B)

Directions: Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. What are you laughing _____ at _____?
2. I can't stop staring _______ Tom's necktie. The colors are wild!
3. A: I don't believe _______ flying saucers. Do you?
   B: I don't know. I think anything is possible.
4. Ted is going to help me _______ my homework tonight.
5. Do you mind if I apply _______ your job after you quit?
6. Kyong is excited about going back home to see her family. She leaves _______ Korea next Monday.
7. I admire Carmen _______ her courage and honesty in admitting that mistake.
8. A: Where did you get that new car?
   B: I borrowed it _______ my neighbor.
9. A: What are you two arguing _______?
   B: Modern art.
10. A: Where will you go to school next year?
    B: Well, I applied _______ admission at five different universities, but I'm worried that none of them will accept me.
11. I hate to argue _______ my older sister. I hardly ever win.
12. I’ll introduce you ______ my cousins when they come to my wedding next week.

13. Ivan discussed his calculus problems ______ his college advisor.

◊ PRACTICE 4. Preposition combinations. (Group B)
Directions: Choose the correct preposition.

1. You’re shivering. Would you like to borrow a jacket ______ me?
   A. from  B. for  C. with

2. I’m applying ______ a new management position in my company.
   A. to  B. in  C. for

3. It’s unfortunate that the Bakers are always arguing ______ something.
   A. with  B. about  C. at

4. Russ believes ______ his ability to succeed under difficult conditions.
   A. in  B. on  C. at

5. Poor Mr. Miller. No one laughed ______ his story even though it was supposed to be funny.
   A. over  B. at  C. from

6. It’s rather amazing. Gail and Brian plan to get married soon, but they were just introduced ______ each other a month ago.
   A. to  B. with  C. at

7. Please wake me up at 5:00 A.M. tomorrow. I need to leave ______ work early.
   A. from  B. to  C. for

8. People say they admire me ______ my truthfulness, but sometimes I wonder if I may be too honest.
   A. about  B. with  C. for

9. It’s very difficult to discuss serious matters ______ Mark. He always tries to make jokes.
   A. with  B. about  C. at

10. I’m trying not to stare ______ that man, but his toupee keeps falling off.
    A. at  B. with  C. to

◊ PRACTICE 5. Preposition combinations. (Group C)
Directions: Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. A: Why are you friendly ______ George? I thought you didn’t like him.
   B: I’m not crazy ______ his attitude, but I’m his supervisor, so I have to encourage him to do better work.

2. A: Do you think it’s bad that I drink so much coffee every day?
   B: I believe too much of almost anything is bad ______ you.
3. I don't know why they fired me. It certainly isn't clear ______ me.

4. A: Dad, I got ninety-five percent on my algebra exam!
   B: I'm proud ______ you. I knew you could do it.

5. A: You seem to be interested ______ aerobic exercise and jogging.
   B: I think regular physical exercise is good ______ everyone.

6. That sweater is very similar ______ mine. Did you buy it at the mall?

7. A: You were up awfully late last night.
   B: I couldn't sleep. I was hungry ______ something sweet, but I couldn't find anything in
   the kitchen.

8. I have no doubt that I'm doing the right thing. I'm sure ______ it.

9. George Gershwin, an American composer, is most famous ______ his Rhapsody in Blue,
   an orchestral piece that combines jazz with classical music.

10. A: Why is Gary avoiding you? Is he angry about something?
    B: I don't know. I'm not aware ______ anything I did that would upset him.

11. A: Who is responsible ______ this dog? We don't allow dogs in this office!
    B: He belongs to the boss's wife.
    A: Oh.

12. My car is a lot like yours, but different ______ Margaret's.

13. Don't be nervous ______ your job interview. Just be yourself.

14. Teachers need to be patient ______ their students.

15. Ken carelessly dropped the football before he could score, so his team lost. He was very sad
    ______ that.

◊ PRACTICE 6. Review: preposition combinations. (Groups A and C)

Directions: Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. Dr. Nelson, a heart specialist, is . . .
   a. proud ______ her work.
   b. famous ______ her medical expertise.
   c. sure ______ her skills.
   d. familiar ______ the latest techniques.
   e. patient ______ her patients.
   f. aware ______ the stresses of her job.
g. interested _______ her patients' lives.
h. nice _______ her patients' families.

2. Her patient, Mrs. Green, is . . .
   a. sad _______ her illness.
   b. nervous _______ an upcoming surgery.
   c. aware _______ her chances for survival.
   d. full _______ hope.
   e. not afraid _______ dying.
   f. curious _______ alternative medicines.
   g. ready _______ unexpected side-effects.
   h. hungry _______ a home-cooked meal.

◊ PRACTICE 7. Preposition combinations. (Group D)

Directions: Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. How much did you pay _______ that beautiful table?

2. A: Did you talk _______ the manager _______ returning that dress?
   B: No. She didn’t arrive _______ the store while I was there. I waited _______ her for
   a half an hour and then left.

3. I listened _______ you very carefully, but I didn’t understand anything you said.

4. When I graduated _______ college, my mother and father told everyone we knew that
   I had graduated.

5. A: We don’t have all day! How long is it going to take for someone to wait _______ us?
   I’m hungry.
   B: We just got here. Be patient. Do you have to complain _______ everything?

6. When did you arrive _______ Mexico City?

7. A: This sauce is delicious!
   B: Well, it consists _______ tomatoes, garlic, olive oil, and lemon juice all blended together.

8. There were ten people at the meeting and ten different opinions. No one agreed _______
   anyone else _______ the best way to solve the club’s financial problems.

9. I have to complain _______ the manager. Both the food and the service are terrible.

10. We’ve invited only family members _______ our wedding. I hope our friends aren’t offended.

11. The soccer coaches disagree _______ one another _______ the best way to get their
    team mentally prepared for a game.


PRACTICE 8. Preposition combinations. (Groups B and D)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verb in parentheses and the correct preposition.

1. Margo got to the airport early so she wouldn’t miss her flight.
   (arrive) Margo arrived at the airport early so she wouldn’t miss her flight.

2. The store manager had time to help a few customers.
   (wait) The store manager had time to a few customers.

3. Sigrid asked me to go to the symphony with her.
   (invite) Sigrid me to the symphony.

4. Water is made of hydrogen and oxygen.
   (consist) Water hydrogen and oxygen.

5. Sara stood at the bus stop for 20 minutes before the bus came.
   (wait) Sara the bus for 20 minutes.

6. The restaurant owner discussed the management changes with her staff.
   (talk) The restaurant owner the management changes with her staff.

7. Joseph is going to Athens for graduate work in archeology.
   (leave) Joseph Athens for graduate work in archeology.

8. Why is that man continuing to look at me?
   (stare) Why that man me?

9. Barb assisted her friend with her finances.
   (help) Barb her friend her finances.

10. I checked ten books out of the library. I’ll return them next week.
    (borrow) I ten books the library.

PRACTICE 9. Preposition combinations. (Group E)

Directions: Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. Molly is always looking for her keys. She seems so disorganized.

2. Something’s the matter Dan. He’s crying.

3. Do whatever you want. It doesn’t matter me.

4. Look those clouds. It’s going to rain.

5. Are you looking forward your trip to Mexico?

6. A: Does this watch belong you?
   B: Yes. Where did you find it? I searched it everywhere.
7. I woke up frightened after I dreamed ________ falling off the roof of a building.
8. Tomorrow I'm going to ask my father _______ a ride to school.
9. Tomorrow I'm going to ask my father __________ his work. I don't know much ________ his new job.
10. Please empty that bowl of fruit and separate the fresh apples ________ the old apples.
11. Mr. Sanchez looks a lot _______ a famous movie actor I've seen.
12. My brother Ben warned me __________ taking a shortcut through the back streets. I got lost and was late for a job interview.

◊ PRACTICE 10. Preposition combinations. (Group E)

Directions: Create sentences by matching each phrase in Column A with a phrase in Column B. Use each phrase only once.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column A</th>
<th>Column B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. The sheriff is searching <em>G</em></td>
<td>A. about monsters and dragons.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. The baby keeps looking ______</td>
<td>B. to their 20th wedding anniversary.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Once again, Rita is looking ______</td>
<td>C. for her glasses. She always misplaces them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. In this picture, Paula looks ______</td>
<td>D. about housing prices in this area?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. The Browns are looking forward ______</td>
<td>E. about high winds on the bridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Before you do the wash, you need to separate the darks ______</td>
<td>F. with this car. It's making strange noises.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Sometimes Joey is afraid to sleep. He often dreams ______</td>
<td>G. for the escaped prisoner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Something's the matter ______</td>
<td>H. from the whites.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. The sign on the highway warned drivers ______</td>
<td>I. at the TV screen. The picture is fuzzy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Do you know much ______</td>
<td>J. like her maternal grandmother. The resemblance is very strong.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

◊ PRACTICE 11. Preposition combinations. (Group F)

Directions: Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. Please don't argue. I insist ________ lending you the money for your vacation.
2. That thin coat you're wearing won't protect you _______ the bitter, cold wind.
3. A: What's the matter? Don't you approve _______ my behavior?
   B: No, I don't. I think you're rude.
4. A: Can I depend _______ you to pick up my mother at the airport tomorrow?
   B: Of course you can!
5. A: The police arrested a thief in my uncle's store yesterday.
   B: What's going to happen _______ him? Will he go to jail?
6. My friend Ken apologized ______ me ______ forgetting to pick me up in his car after the movie last night. I forgave him ______ leaving me outside the theater in the rain, but I'm not going to rely ______ him for transportation in the future.

7. A: Thank you ______ helping me move to my new apartment last weekend.
   B: You’re welcome.

8. It isn’t fair to compare Mr. Wong ______ Ms. Chang. They’re both good teachers, but they have different teaching methods.

9. I’ve had a bad cold for a week and just can’t get rid ______ it.

10. Excuse me ______ interrupting you, but I have a call on the other line. Could I get back to you in a second?

11. A: I need to be excused ______ the office meeting tomorrow morning.
    B: I was going to announce your promotion at the meeting. Can you change your plans?
    A: I’d love to. It’s a dental appointment.

12. People don’t die ______ embarrassment, but sometimes they wish they could.

13. I’m sorry. The office staff is very busy right now. It will be a half hour before someone can take care ______ your request.

◊ PRACTICE 12. Preposition combinations. (Group F)

Directions: Write “C” beside the correct sentences. Write “X” beside those that are incorrect. In some cases, both may be correct.

1. a. C John needs to be excused from the meeting.
    b. C John excused his associate for the accounting error.

2. a. C Do you approve of your government’s international policies?
    b. X Do you approve on the new seat-belt law?

3. a. ______ I apologized for the car accident.
    b. ______ I apologized to Mary’s parents.

4. a. ______ Why did you get rid over your truck? It was in great condition.
    b. ______ I got rid of several boxes of old magazines.

5. a. ______ Pierre died of a heart attack.
    b. ______ Pierre’s father also died from heart problems.

6. a. ______ It’s not a good idea to compare one student to another.
    b. ______ I wish my parents wouldn’t compare me with my brother.
7. a. _____ We can rely on Lesley to keep a secret.
    b. _____ There are several people whom my elderly parents rely in for assistance.
8. a. _____ You can relax. I took care about your problem.
    b. _____ The nurses take wonderful care of their patients at Valley Hospital.

◊ PRACTICE 13. Preposition combinations. (Group G)
 Directions: Complete the sentences with prepositions.

1. Please try to concentrate _____ my explanation. I can’t repeat it.

2. I spoke _____ my brother _____ your problem, and he said that there was nothing he could do to help you.

3. All right, children, here is your math problem: add ten _____ twelve, subtract two _____ that total; divide ten _____ that answer; and multiply the result _____ five. What is the final answer?*

4. I feel pretty good about my final examination in English. I’m hoping _____ a good grade.

5. A: Did you hear _____ the plans to build a new hotel in the middle of town? It’s wonderful!
   B: Yes, I heard, but I disagree _____ you. I think it’s terrible! It means the town will be full of tourists all the time.

6. A: Have you heard _____ your friend in Thailand recently?
   B: Yes. She’s having a difficult time. She’s not accustomed _____ hot weather.

7. A: I must tell you _____ a crazy thing that happened last night. Have you heard?
   B: What? What happened?
   A: A hundred monkeys escaped _____ the zoo.
   B: You’ve got to be kidding! How did that happen?

8. A: Do you ever wonder _____ the future of our natural environment?
   B: Yes, especially when I read about the deforestation of the rainforests.

9. A: Is Carol hiding _____ me? Is she afraid of me?
   B: No, but since she turned two years old, she loves to play hide-and-seek. She hides _____ everyone now.

*Answer: 10
10. A: Can I tell you ______ the new preschool later? Someone’s at the door.
B: Sure.

◊ PRACTICE 14. Preposition combinations. (Group G)

Directions: Complete the sentences with the verb in parentheses and the correct preposition.

1. The skiers wanted snow for the holiday weekend, but it rained instead.
   (hope) The skiers ________ for snow for the holiday weekend.

2. Jenny often thinks about people she went to high school with. She’s curious about what happened to them.
   (wonder) Jenny often ________ people she went to high school with.

3. I cut the pie into eight equal pieces.
   (divide) I __________ the pie __________ eight equal pieces.

4. Could you put another egg in the mixture? It’s a little dry.
   (add) Could you ________ another egg ________ the mixture? It’s a little dry.

5. An artist focuses on the way light strikes his subject.
   (concentrate) An artist __________ the way light strikes his subject.

6. The prisoners got away from their guards and ran into the woods.
   (escape) The prisoners __________ their guards and ran into the woods.

7. I am used to humid weather in the summer.
   (accustom) I __________ humid weather in the summer.

8. Ben got the news about his father’s death from his secretary.
   (hear) Ben ________ the news ________ his father’s death from his secretary.
PRACTICE 15. Review: preposition combinations. (Appendix 2)
Directions: Circle the correct preposition in each sentence. In some cases, both prepositions are correct.

1. The taxi driver apologized to Ann for the accident.
3. Jack was excused from school for several days so he could travel with his father.
4. Mary always compares her country with this country.
5. Susie dreamed of winning the lottery.
6. The mountain climbers were warned of the avalanche danger.
7. Maria needed ten dollars immediately. She asked her sister about some money.
8. Beth looks like her sister. They could almost be twins.
9. Dennis tried talking to Roman, but the noise in the restaurant was so loud that neither he nor Roman could hear each other.
10. This dish tastes like it has meat in it, but it consists only of vegetables.
11. Mary and Joe argue about everything. They always disagree with each other.
12. Are you sure of your data?
13. Our dentist is very patient with children.
14. Professor Case always seems angry at his students, but maybe he's upset about something else.
15. We discussed our house plans with several architects.
16. The apartment owner spoke to several tenants about a possible rent increase.
17. We heard the plane crash on the radio.
18. If you multiply any number by zero, the answer is always zero.
19. Shhh! I'm concentrating on my homework.

PRACTICE 16. Review: preposition combinations. (Appendix 2)
Directions: Choose the correct preposition.

1. What time do you need to be ready for work?
   A. at       B. about       C. on       D. for
2. One pound is equal to 2.2 kilos.
   A. for       B. to       C. in       D. on
3. Too many vitamins may be bad ______ your health.
   A. in    B. about    C. for    D. with

4. That box looks very heavy. Can I help you ______ it?
   A. with    B. in    C. about    D. on

5. Our cat got rid ______ all the mice in our basement.
   A. about    B. of    C. in    D. off

6. Everyone admires Mr. Kim ______ his generosity with his time and money.
   A. for    B. from    C. with    D. about

7. I need to hide this chocolate ______ the children or they will eat it in one day.
   A. with    B. from    C. to    D. at

8. Billy, stop that! It's not polite to stare ______ people.
   A. to    B. at    C. in    D. on

9. Angela has applied ______ several jobs in the airline industry, but she hasn't gotten an interview yet.
   A. to    B. with    C. of    D. for

10. This car can't belong ______ Mike. It's too nice!
    A. about    B. with    C. to    D. at

11. Monica loves vegetables, but she's not crazy ______ fruit.
    A. over    B. of    C. at    D. about

    A. with    B. for    C. on    D. in

13. I tried to tell Jessica ______ my trip, but she didn't seem interested. I wonder if she was jealous.
    A. to    B. about    C. with    D. off

14. We're really happy ______ Professor James. He just received an award for excellence in teaching.
    A. for    B. to    C. over    D. in

15. People say I shouldn't care what other students think, but their opinions matter ______ me.
    A. to    B. for    C. with    D. on

16. Annie eats vegetables only if they are separated ______ the other foods on her plate.
    A. between    B. from    C. with    D. to

17. Kristi forgave her twin sister ______ taking her cell phone without asking.
    A. about    B. from    C. for    D. with

18. Doctors say that even ten minutes of exercise a day is good ______ you.
    A. at    B. for    C. with    D. about

19. I'm sorry. Your explanation still isn't clear ______ me.
    A. about    B. with    C. to    D. in
20. My sister complained _____ the manager.
   A. to     B. with     C. at     D. for

21. She complained _____ the slow service in the restaurant.
   A. for     B. about     C. over     D. by

   A. on     B. to     C. in     D. about

23. The problem with your answer is that you multiplied six _____ eight instead of subtracting it.
   A. by     B. from     C. to     D. over

24. Paul is so smart. He graduated _____ the university in just three years.
   A. of     B. at     C. from     D. to
A
A/an, 228–229, 234
A vs. an, 218
Accustomed to, 214
Active verbs, 193, 195, 197–198, 200, 203, 205–207
Adjective clauses (a man who lives), 240–255
Adjectives (good, beautiful), 114–115
following be, 115
comparative (more/-er) and superlative (most/-est), 174–177
with much, a lot, far, 179
following get (get hungry), 212–213
nouns used as (a flower garden), 116
participial (interesting, interested), 209–211
possessive (my, our), 120
Adverb clauses, 161
with because, 161–162, 164–166
with even though/although, 163–164, 166
if-clauses, 53
since-clauses, 75
time clauses (before he came), 36, 54, 73–75
Adverbs (quickly):
comparative (more/-er) and superlative (most/-est), 177
frequency (always, sometimes), 7–9
midsentence (still, already), 77–78
negative (seldom, never), 186
A few/a little, 224
After, 36, 54
A little/a few, 224
A lot, much, far, 179
A lot (of), 218
Alike, 189
Almost, 170
Already, 77–78
Although, 163–164, 166
Always, etc. (frequency adverbs), 7–9
Am, is, are + -ing (am eating), 3, 5–6, 13–17
And, 152, 157
auxiliary verbs following, 157–158
with parallel verbs, 152
with so, too, either, neither, 160
with subject–verb agreement, 114
Another, 126–127
Anymore, 77–78
Apostrophe (Tom's), 120
Articles (the, a, an), 218, 224, 228–237
As ... as comparisons, 169–172, 184
not as ... as vs. less, 179
Ask vs. say vs. tell, 299
As soon as, 54
At, as time preposition, 112–113
Auxiliary verbs:
after and but, 157–158
modal, 132–133
in questions, 89–95
in short responses to yes/no questions, 86–89
in tag questions, 103–104
B
Be:
in questions, 15
simple past (was, were), 18, 30–32
simple present (am, is, are), 1–2, 31–32
Be about to, 59
Be + adjective, 115
followed by that-clause (am sorry that), 287
Because, 161–162, 164–166
Before, 36, 54
Be going to, 43–45, 56
vs. will, 43–46, 49–50
Be + -ing (is/was eating), 3, 34–35
Be + past participle (be interested in), 194–197, 208
(see also passive)
followed by noun clauses (be worried that), 287–290
Be supposed to, 215–216
Better:
and best, 176
had better, 138–139
like ... better, 146
Be used to/acquainted to, 214
But, 154–158
By:
with passive (by-phrase), 199–200
followed by -ing (by doing), 267–268
with reflexive pronoun (by myself), 123–124
vs. with, 268
INDEX

C

Can, 132–133
ability, 134
permission, 136
polite question, 137
Capitalkation, 238, 153
Clauses (SEE Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; If-clauses; Noun clauses, Time clauses)
Commas:
with adverb clauses, 36, 161–162
in connecting ideas:
with and, 153–157
with but and or, 154
vs. periods, 153–154
in quoted speech, 291–293, 296
in a series, 153–157
Comparatives (more–er), 174–177, 180
with adjectives and adverbs, 177
double (the more . . . the more), 181–182
with modifiers, 179
with nouns, 180
with pronouns, 178
repeated (more and more), 181
Comparisons, 169–192
as . . . as, 169–172, 184
comparatives (more–er), 174–177, 187–188
ever, never, 186
same, similar, different, like, alike, 189
superlatives (most–est), 183–184, 187–188
Conjunctions (and, but, or, so), 152–157
Continuous verbs (SEE Progressive verbs)
Contractions of verbs:
with not:
didn’t, 19–20
hasn’t, haven’t, 64–65
isn’t, aren’t, 2, 7
mustn’t, 141
shouldn’t, 138
won’t, 46
with pronouns:
had, 80–82, 139
have, has, 64–65
will, 44, 46
with question words, 98–99
Could, 132–133
past ability, 136
in polite questions, 137
possibility, present/future, 136
Count/noncount nouns, 218–221, 224–227
noncount nouns, 226–227
D
Dependent clause (SEE Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; Noun clauses)
Different from, 189
Direct speech (SEE Quoted speech)
Distance (to . . . from, how far), 100, 279
Do as main verb in what-questions, 95

Does, do, did:
in negative (I don’t . . .), 2, 15, 19–20, 87–89
with have to, 141
in questions (Did you . . .?), 2–4, 15, 21, 87–89
with what, 95
in short answers (Yes, I do), 15, 19, 87–89
Double comparatives (the sooner, the better), 181–182

E
-Ed (asked, played), 209
past participle, 209
as adjective (a confused person), 209–211
pronunciation, 23–24
spelling, 23–25
Either, 160
Enough, 272–273
-Er/more and -est/most, 175, 177, 180, 183–184
Even though, 163–164, 166
Ever, 186
Every, 114
Expressions of quantity (some, many), 222, 227–228

F
Far, much, a lot, 179
Farther/further, 176
A few/a little, 224
For (purpose) (I went to the store for milk), 271
For (someone) to do (something), with it (It is important for you to study), 270
For and since (time) (I stayed for two days), 73–74
Frequency:
adverbs (always, sometimes), 7–9
expressions (every day), 101
questions about, with how often, 100
From . . . to, to express distance, 100, 279
Future time, 43–63
be going to and will, 43
in if-clauses, 53–54
immediate (be about to), 59
present verbs used to express (It begins tomorrow), 58
in time clauses (Before he comes, we will . . .), 52

G
Gerunds (riding, working), 256–258, 264–265, 273–277
following by, 267–268
following prepositions, 262–263
as subjects (Riding horses is fun), 269
verbs followed by (enjoy working), 258–261
Get + adjective/past participle (get hungry, get tired), 212–213
Go + -ing (go shopping), 256
Habitual past (*used to do something*), 39

**Had:**
- contracted with pronouns, 139
- in past perfect (*She had already eaten*), 80–82

**Had better** (*You'd better study*), 138–139

**Have,** auxiliary in present perfect (*They have eaten*), 64–65
- progressive vs. non-action, 12

**Have got to,** 141

**Have to,** 140–141, 143
- *do not have to,* 141, 143

**Helping verbs** (SEE Auxiliary verbs; Negatives; Questions; individual items)

**How,** 99
- *how far,* 100, 279
- *how long,* 100
- *how many/how much,* 223
- *how often,* 100

**If-clauses,** 53
- expressing future time in, 53–54
- as noun clauses, 284–286

**If/whether** in noun clauses, 284–286, 296

**Immediate future** (*be about to*), 59

**Imperative sentences** (*Stop!*), 144–145

**In,** as time preposition, 112

Indirect speech (SEE Reported speech)

**Infinitives** (*to eat*), 257–258, 264–265, 273–277
- with *it* (*It is easy to cook eggs*), 269–270
- with modals (*have to study*), 140–141, 143
- purpose (*in order to*), 271
- with *too* and *enough,* 272–273
- verbs followed by, 258–261

**Information questions,** 89–92
- with noun clauses, 278–281

-**ing:**
  - gerund (*Swimming is fun*), 256–258, 264–265
  - present participle (*They are swimming*), 24–26
  - as adjective (*an interesting book*), 209–211
  - in tenses (SEE Progressive verbs)
  - spelling, 24–26

**In order to,** 271

**Interested vs. interesting,** 209–211

**Intransitive and transitive verbs,** 198–199

**Irregular noun plurals** (*tomatoes,fish*), 108–110, 120

**Irregular verbs** (*eat, ate, eaten*), 27–29, 66, 68, 71

**It,** to express distance (*It is two miles...*), 100

**It + infinitive** (*It is easy to do*), 269–270

**It + take** (length of time), 100

J

**Just as . . . as,** 169–170

L

**The least,** 183

**Less . . . than,** 179

**Let's,** 145

**Like,** 146–147
- *vs. alike,* 189

**Like . . . better,** 146
- *(A) little/a few,* 224

Logical conclusion, 144

M

**Many/much,** 222, 227

**May,** 132–135
- permission, 135
- polite question, 137
- possibility, 48, 135

**Maybe,** 48, 135

Measure, units of (*a cup of* a *piece of*), 226–227

**Midsentence adverbs** (*usually, seldom*), 77–78

**Might,** 132–137

**Modal auxiliaries,** 132–151 (SEE ALSO individual items)
- in passive, 204–205

**More/-er . . . than,** 175, 177, 180

**The most/-est,** 183–184

**Much, a lot, far,** 179

**Must,** 132–133
- logical conclusion, 144
- necessity, 140–141, 143–144

**Must not,** 141

N

**Nearly,** 169–170

Negatives:
- adverbs (*seldom, never*), 7–9, 186
- *be + not,* 3
- *be + not + going to,* 47
- past progressive (*was/were not*), 34–35, 201–203
- present perfect (*has/have not*), 64–65, 67
- present progressive (*am/is/are not*), 3
- *should + not* (*shouldn't*), 138
- simple past (*did not*), 20, 30
- simple present (*does/do not*), 1–2
- *will + not* (*won't*), 46

(SEE ALSO Contractions of verbs)

**Neither,** 160

**Noncount nouns** (*furniture, mail*), 218–221, 225–227
- also used as count nouns (*paper vs. a paper*), 225
- units of measure with (*two cups of tea*), 226–227

**Non-action (nonprogressive) verbs** (*know, want, belong*), 12

**Not** (SEE Negatives)

**Not as . . . as,** 179

**Noun clauses,** 278–286
- with *if/whether,* 284–286, 296
with question words (what he said), 278, 285–286
reported speech, sequence of tenses, 294–302
with that (I think that . . . ), 287–290

Nouns:
as adjectives (a flower garden), 116
count/noncount (chairs/furniture), 218–221, 224–225
plural forms, 108–110, 117
possessive (Tom’s), 120
as subjects and objects, 111–112

O
Object pronouns, personal (him, them), 118–119
in adjective clauses (whom I met), 247

Objects:
of a preposition (on the desk), 111–112
of a verb (is reading a book), 111–112
On, as time preposition (on Monday), 112
One of + plural noun, 187
Or, 154–157
Other, 126–129
Ought to, 138–139

P
Parallel structure with and, but, or, 152–154
with verbs (walks and talks, is walking and talking), 59
Participial adjectives (interested vs. interesting), 209–211
Particles, in phrasal verbs (put away), 305–320
Partitives (SEE Units of measure)
Passive (It was mailed by Bob), 193–207
use of by-phrase, 199–200
modal auxiliaries (should be mailed), 204–205
stative (be married to), 208
summary of forms, 194, 196
Past habit (I used to live in . . . ), 39
Past participles:
as adjectives (be tired, be surprised), 207–208
vs. -ing (interested vs. interesting), 209–211
following get (get tired), 212–213
of irregular verbs, 19
in passive, 194
Past perfect (had left), 80–82
Past progressive (was eating), 34–35, 201–203
Past time, 18–42 (SEE ALSO Tenses)
Period, 153
Personal pronouns (she, him, they), 118–119
Phrasal verbs, 305–320
intransitive, 314–316
nonseparable, 306–308, 311
separable, 305–306, 308–313
three-word, 316–318
Plural nouns, 108–110, 117 (SEE ALSO Singular and plural)
Polite questions using modals (May I? Would you?), 137, 145, 286
Possessive:
in adjective clauses (whose), 251
nouns (Tom’s), 120
pronouns and adjectives (mine and my), 122
Prefer, 146–147
Prepositional phrases (on the desk), 111–112
Prepositions (at, from, under), 111–112
combinations with verbs and adjectives, 321–333
followed by gerunds, 262–263
placement in adjective clauses, 249–250
objects of, 111–112
as particles in phrasal verbs (put off, put on), 305–320
of place, 111–112
vs. time, word order, 113
in stative passive (be married to), 208
time (in, on, at), 112
Present participle (eating), 24–26
as adjective (interesting), 209–211
vs. gerund, 256
Present perfect (have eaten), 64–65, 67–68, 70, 80
Present time, 1–17 (SEE ALSO Tenses)
Probably, 46–47
Progressive verbs:
vs. non-action (I am thinking vs. I think), 12
in passive (is being done), 201–203
past (was doing), 34–35, 201–203
present (is doing), 3, 5–6, 56
present perfect (has been doing), 75–76
Pronouns:
in adjective clauses (who, which), 240–247
contractions with (SEE Contractions of verbs)
as expressions of quantity (many, some), 228
personal (I, them), 118–119
possessive (mine, theirs), 122
reflexive (myself, themselves), 123–124
Pronunciation:
ed, 23–24
-s/ -es, 11–12, 108–109
Purpose (in order to, for), 271
Punctuation:
apostrophe (Tom’s), 120 (SEE ALSO Contractions of verbs)
comma:
in adverb clauses, 36, 161–162
vs. a period, 153–154
in quoted speech, 291–293
in a series with and, 153–157
period, 153–154
quotation marks, 291–293, 296

Q
Quantity, expressions of (a lot, several), 222, 227–228
Question forms, 86fn.
present perfect (have you done?), 64
present perfect progressive (have they been driving?), 75–76
present progressive (are you doing?), 3, 5–6
simple past (did you do?), 30–31
simple present (do you do?), 3–4, 31
with will (will you do?), 45–46
Questions, 85–107
information (why, when), 89–95
polite (would you please?), 137, 145, 286
tag (You know Bob, don’t you?), 103–104
yes/no, 19–20, 86–89, 284–285

Question words (SEE Noun clauses; individual items)
Quite, 170

Quotation marks, 291–293, 296
Quoted speech, 291–293, 296

R
Reflexive pronouns (myself), 123–124
Relative clauses (SEE Adjective clauses)
Reported speech, 293–302

S
-S/-es:
with plural nouns (birds), 108–110, 225
pronunciation, 11–12, 108–109
with simple present verbs (eat), 10–11
spelling, 12
Same, similar, different, like, alike, 190–191
Say vs. ask vs. tell, 299
Sequence of tenses, in noun clauses, 294–302
Several, 218
Short answers to questions, 15, 19, 87–89
Should, 138–139
Simple form of a verb, 1–3, 19
Simple past, 18–22, 32
vs. past progressive, 35
vs. present perfect, 68, 70, 74
Simple present, 1–6, 10–11, 13–17, 32
to express future time, 58
in future time clauses, 52–54
Since and for, 73–75
Singular and plural:
nouns (a bird, birds), 109–110, 117, 130
nouns used as adjectives (flower gardens), 116
personal pronouns (I, we), 118–119
possessive nouns (student’s, students’), 120
present tense verbs (eat), 1–6
verbs in adjective clauses (man who is, men who are), 248
So:
with and (and so do I), 160
conjunction (It was late, so we left), 155–157
substituted for that-clause (I think so), 290
So/too/either/neither, 160
Some, 228

Spelling:
ed, 23–25
-ing, 24–26
irregular verbs, 27
-s/-es, 12
Stative passive (be married to), 208
Stative verbs (non-action verbs), 12

Still, 77–78
Subject pronouns, personal (I, she, they), 118–119
in adjective clauses (a man who is, a book which was), 240–241
Subject-verb agreement, 114
in adjective clauses, 248
Subjects, verbs, objects, 111–112
transitive vs. intransitive verbs, 198–199
Superlatives, 183–184, 187–188
Supposed to, 215–216
S-V-O-P-T, 113

T
Tag questions (You know Bob, don’t you?), 103–104
Take, with it to express length of time, 100
Tell vs. say vs. ask, 299
Tenses:
past perfect (had worked), 80–82
past progressive (were working), 34–35
present perfect (have worked), 64–65, 68, 70, 74
present perfect progressive (have been working), 75–76
present progressive (is working), 3, 5–6, 13–17, 32
future meaning, 56
simple future (will work), 43, 54
simple past (worked), 18–22, 32, 54
vs. past progressive, 35
simple present (works), 1–6, 32
future meaning, 58
vs. present progressive, 13–14
Than:
in comparatives (more/er), 175, 177, 180
following like better, would rather, 146–147
That:
in adjective clauses (a book that I read), 243–244, 246
in noun clauses (He said that . . . ), 287–290
The, 229–234
with names, 236–237
Their, they’re, there, 122
There + be, 114
Three-word verbs, 316–318 (SEE ALSO Phrasal verbs)
Time clauses:
form, 36
future, 52
past, 36, 52
with since, 73–75
To . . . from, to express distance, 100, 279
To + simple form ( infinitive), 271
(in order) to, 271
Too (excess amount), 272–273
with and (and I do too), 160
Transitive and intransitive verbs, 198–199

U
Units of measure (a cup of, a piece of), 226–227
Until, 36, 52
Used to (past habit), 39
vs. be used to, 214–215

Index 5
Verbs:
reporting, 293–302
vs. subjects and objects, 111–112, 198–199
transitive/intransitive, 198–199
(SEE ALSO Auxiliary verbs; Modal auxiliaries; Passive;
Phrasal verbs; Tenses; individual items)

W

Was, were, 21, 34–35
+ -ing (was eating), 34–35

What, 93–95
in noun clauses, 282–283
what + a form of do, 95
what kind of, 96
what vs. which, 97
what time vs. when, 90–91

When:
in questions, 89–95
in time clauses, 34–37, 54

Where, 279

Whether, 284–286

Which:
in adjective clauses, 245–246
in questions, 97

While, 34–37, 54

Will, 132–133
vs. be going to, 43–46, 49–50
forms, 44–46
future, 43–44
in polite questions, 137
with probably, 46–47

With vs. by, 268

Who/who(m):
in adjective clauses, 240–242, 244–245
in noun clauses, 282–283
in questions, 93–94
who’s vs. whose, 98–99

Whose:
in adjective clauses, 251
in noun clauses, 282–283
in questions (vs. who’s), 98–99

Why, 92, 279

Why don’t, 145

Word order (S-V-O-P-T), 113

Worse, worst, 176

Would, 133
in polite questions, 137, 145

Would rather, 146–147

Y

Yes/no questions, 19–20, 86–89, 284–285
Yet, 77–78
To the student: To make it easy to correct your answers, remove this answer key along the perforations and make a separate answer key booklet for yourself.

Chapter 1: PRESENT TIME

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 1.

A: Hi. My name _____ is _____ Kunio.
B: Hi. My _____ name is _____ Maria. I ’m glad to meet you.
KUNIO: I _____ am _____ glad to _____ meet _____ you, too. Where _____ are you from _____ ?
MARIA: I _____ am _____ from Mexico. Where _____ are you from _____ ?
KUNIO: I _____ am from _____ Japan.
MARIA: Where _____ are you _____ living now?
KUNIO: On Fifth Avenue in an apartment. And you?
MARIA: I _____ am _____ living in a dorm.
KUNIO: What _____ are you _____ studying?
MARIA: Business. After I study English, I am going to attend the School of Business Administration. How _____ about _____ you? What _____ is _____ your major?
KUNIO: Engineering.
MARIA: What _____ do _____ you like to do in your free time?
KUNIO: I read a lot. How _____ about _____ you?
MARIA: I like to get on the Internet.
KUNIO: Really? What _____ do _____ you do when you’re online?
MARIA: I visit many different Web sites. It _____ is _____ a good way to practice my English.
KUNIO: That’s interesting. I _____ like _____ to get on the Internet, too.
MARIA: I have to _____ write _____ your full name on the board when I introduce you to the class. How _____ do you _____ spell your name?
KUNIO: My first name _____ is _____ Kunio. K-U-N-I-O. My family name _____ is _____ Akiwa.
MARIA: Kunio Akiwa. _____ Is _____ that right?
KUNIO: Yes, it _____ is _____ . And what _____ is _____ your name again?
MARIA: My first name _____ is _____ Maria. M-A-R-I-A. My last name _____ is _____ Lopez.
KUNIO: Thanks. It’s been nice talking to you.
MARIA: I enjoyed it, too.

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 2.

1. am sitting 6. sit . . . am sitting
2. am reading 7. read . . . am reading
3. am looking 8. look . . . am looking
4. am writing 9. write . . . am writing
5. am doing 10. do . . . am doing

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 2.

PART I.  PART III.  
1. speak 11. Do you speak
2. speak 12. Do they speak
3. speaks 13. Does he speak
4. speak 14. Do we speak
5. speaks 15. Does she speak

PART II.  
6. do not (don’t) speak
7. do not (don’t) speak
8. does not (doesn’t) speak
9. do not (don’t) speak
10. does not (doesn’t) speak

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 3.

PART I.  PART III.  
1. am speaking 11. Are you speaking
2. are speaking 12. Is he speaking
3. is speaking 13. Are they speaking
4. are speaking 14. Are we speaking
5. is speaking 15. Is she speaking

PART II.  
6. am not speaking
7. are not speaking
8. is not speaking
9. are not speaking
10. is not speaking

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 3.

1. Is he 6. Is he
2. Does he 7. Is he
3. Does he 8. Does he
4. Is he 9. Does he
5. Does he 10. Is he
PRACTICE 6, p. 4.
1. Is she 6. Does she
2. Does she 7. Is she
3. Is she 8. Is she
4. Is she 9. Does she
5. Does she 10. Is she

PRACTICE 7, p. 4.
1. does 7. do
2. Do 8. Ø...Ø
3. Ø 9. does
4. Does 10. Ø
5. Ø 11. Do
6. Ø

PRACTICE 8, p. 5.
1. is 7. Ø 13. am
2. are 8. is 14. arc
3. is 9. Are 15. Ø
4. Is 10. Do 16. am
5. does 11. Ø 17. Do
6. Ø 12. arc

PRACTICE 9, p. 5.
1. Ø 5. Are 9. Ø
2. Do 6. are 10. is
3. Does 7. Ø 11. Do
4. Is 8. are

PRACTICE 10, p. 6.
1. is 7. Ø 13. is
2. are 8. do 14. Ø...Ø
3. Ø 9. Ø 15. is
4. Does 10. does 16. Ø...are
5. do 11. does 17. Do
6. Ø 12. Ø 18. Does

PRACTICE 11, p. 7.
1. usually Ø 7. sometimes...Ø
2. Ø...usually 8. never...Ø
3. always...Ø 9. Ø...never
4. Ø...always 10. Ø...usually...Ø
5. usually...Ø 11. Ø...always...Ø
6. Ø...always 12. Ø...always

PRACTICE 12, p. 7.
1. a. usually doesn’t come 2. a. usually isn’t
b. doesn’t ever come b. is rarely
c. seldom comes c. isn’t always
d. sometimes comes d. frequently isn’t
e. always comes e. is never
f. occasionally comes f. isn’t ever
g. never comes g. is seldom
h. hardly ever comes

PRACTICE 13, p. 8.
1. always wakes 5. seldom surfs
2. sometimes skips 6. usually talks
3. frequently visits 7. rarely does
4. is usually 8. is never

PRACTICE 14, p. 8.
1. often OR usually 7. seldom OR rarely
2. seldom OR rarely 8. seldom OR rarely
3. always 9. never
4. often OR usually 10. always
5. sometimes 11. often OR usually
6. usually 12. seldom

PRACTICE 15, p. 9.
1. always chooses 7. often OR usually gets
2. seldom OR rarely 8. sometimes gets
3. sometimes ride 9. seldom OR rarely finishes
4. seldom OR rarely exercises 10. never play
5. never eat 11. usually arrives
6. is always 12. always take

PRACTICE 16, p. 10.
1. likes 11. Ø
2. watches 12. Does...Ø
3. doesn’t...Ø 13. doesn’t
4. Ø 14. carries
5. Ø...Ø 15. plays
6. Does...Ø 16. lives
7. likes 17. Ø
8. washes 18. visits
9. goes 19. catches
10. gets 20. Ø

PRACTICE 17, p. 11.
Sam leaves his apartment at 8:00 every morning. He walks to the bus stop and catches the 8:10 bus. It takes him downtown. Then he transfers to another bus, and it takes him to his part-time job. He arrives at work at 8:50. He stays until 1:00, and then he leaves for school. He attends classes until 5:00. He usually studies in the library and tries to finish his homework. Then he goes home around 8:00. He has a long day.

PRACTICE 18, p. 11.
/s/ /z/ /oz/
cooks stays promises
invites seems watches
hates travels misses
picks draws introduces

PRACTICE 19, p. 12.
1. /z/ 6. /z/ 11. /az/
2. /s/ 7. /az/ 12. /z/
3. /az/ 8. /s/ 13. /s/
4. /z/ 9. /z/ 14. /z/
5. /z/ 10. /az/ 15. /s/

PRACTICE 20, p. 12.
simple pres. pres. prog.
1. buys 11. is buying
2. comes 12. is coming
3. opens 13. is opening
4. begins 14. is beginning
5. stops 15. is stopping
6. dies 16. is dying
simple pres.  |  pres.  |  prog.
7. rains    |  is raining
8. dreams   |  is dreaming
9. eats     |  is eating
10. enjoys  |  is enjoying
11. writes  |  is writing
12. tries   |  is trying
13. stays   |  is staying
14. hopes   |  is hoping
15. studies |  is studying
16. lies    |  is lying
17. flies   |  is flying
18. sits    |  is sitting

◊ PRACTICE 21, p. 12.
1. a  5. a  9. b
2. a  6. a  10. b
3. a  7. b  11. b
4. b  8. a  12. a

◊ PRACTICE 22, p. 13.
1. is snowing 8. is looking... sees
2. takes 9. sings
3. drive 10. bite
4. am watching 11. writes
5. prefer 12. understand
6. need 13. belongs
7. are playing 14. is shining... is raining

1. usually doesn't take 9. is hugging
2. needs 10. are playing
3. is enjoying 11. is waving
4. are 12. is walking
5. are eating 13. (is) entertaining
6. are drinking 14. is smiling
7. (are) reading 15. usually takes
8. is working 16. is

◊ PRACTICE 24, p. 15.
1. My friend doesn't speak English well.
2. I don't believe you.
3. My sister's dog doesn't bark.
4. Our teacher always starts class on time.
5. Look! The cat is getting up on the counter.
6. Does Marie have enough money?
7. We don't like this rainy weather.
8. Mrs. Gray is worrying about her daughter. OR Mrs. Gray worries about her daughter.
9. My brother doesn't have enough free time.
10. Does Jim drive to school every day?
11. He always hurries in the morning. He doesn't want to be late.
12. Anna usually has dinner at eight.

◊ PRACTICE 25, p. 15.
1. A: Are
   B: I am OR I'm not
2. A: Do
   B: they do OR they don't
3. A: Do
   B: I do OR I don't
4. A: Does
   B: she does OR she doesn't
5. A: Are
   B: they are OR they aren't
6. A: Do
   B: they do OR they don't
7. A: Is
   B: he is OR he isn't
8. A: Are
   B: I am OR I'm not
9. A: Is
   B: it is OR it isn't
10. A: Do
    B: we do OR we don't

◊ PRACTICE 26, p. 16.
1. A: are you doing
   B: am watching... want
2. A: Do you read
   B: do... read... subscribe... always look
3. am I studying... do I want... need
4. A: am leaving... Do you want
   B: am waiting
5. B: Is the baby sleeping
   A: is taking
   B: don't want
6. goes... likes... is preparing
7. is... is blowing... are falling
8. eats... don't eat... do you eat
9. A: Do you shop
   B: don't... usually shop
   A: are you shopping
   B: am trying
10. lose... rest... grow... keep... stay... don't grow
    don't have... is... grow

Chapter 2: PAST TIME

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 18.
1. walked... yesterday
2. talked... last
3. opened... yesterday
4. went... last
5. met... last
6. Yesterday... made... took
7. paid... last
8. Yesterday... fell
9. left... last
10. Usually... didn't take
11. needs
12. is enjoying
13. are
14. are eating
15. are drinking
16. are working

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 19.
1. started 11. fell 21. took
2. went 12. heard 22. paid
3. saw 13. sang 23. left
4. stood 14. explored 24. wore
5. arrived 15. asked 25. opened
6. won 16. brought 26. decided
7. had 17. broke 27. planned
8. made 18. ate 28. wrote
9. finished 19. watched 29. taught
10. felt 20. built 30. held
PRACTICE 3, p. 19.
1. A: Did you answer
   B: I did. I answered OR I didn’t. I didn’t answer
2. A: Did he see
   B: he did. He saw OR he didn’t. He didn’t see
3. A: Did they watch
   B: they did. They watched OR they didn’t. They didn’t watch
4. A: Did you understand
   B: I did. I understood OR I didn’t. I didn’t understand
5. A: Were you
   B: I was. I was OR I wasn’t. I wasn’t

PRACTICE 4, p. 20.
1. didn’t fly . . . walked/took the bus
2. aren’t . . . are sour
3. didn’t walk . . . walked on the moon
4. wasn’t a baby . . . was (number of years old)
5. didn’t come . . . came
6. doesn’t come . . . comes from coffee beans
7. didn’t sleep . . . slept inside
8. isn’t . . . is cold
9. didn’t disappear . . . disappeared millions of years

PRACTICE 5, p. 21.
1. Did he study
   5. Were they hungry
2. Was he sick
   6. Did he go
3. Was she sad
   7. Did she understand
4. Did they eat
   8. Did he forget

PRACTICE 6, p. 21.
1. Did
   5. Was
2. Were
   6. Did
3. Did
   7. Was
4. Did
   8. Did

PRACTICE 7, p. 22.
1. shook
   5. held
   9. thought
2. stayed
   6. fought
   10. called
3. swam
   7. taught
   11. rode
4. jumped
   8. fought
   12. sold

PRACTICE 9, p. 23.
1. /t/
   8. /t/
   15. /t/
2. /d/
   9. /d/
   16. /d/
3. /ad/
   10. /ad/
   17. /t/
4. /d/
   11. /d/
   18. /ad/
5. /ad/
   12. /t/
   19. /d/
6. /ad/
   13. /t/
   20. /t/
7. /d/
   14. /ad/

PRACTICE 10, p. 23.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>spelling</th>
<th>prom.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>walked</td>
<td>/t/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patted</td>
<td>/ad/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>worried</td>
<td>/d/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stayed</td>
<td>/d/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visited</td>
<td>/ad/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>died</td>
<td>/d/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traded</td>
<td>/ad/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>planned</td>
<td>/d/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opened</td>
<td>/ad/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>double consonant?</th>
<th>-ING</th>
<th>-ED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>exciting</td>
<td>excited</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>existing</td>
<td>existed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shouting</td>
<td>shouted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patting</td>
<td>patted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>visiting</td>
<td>visited</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admitting</td>
<td>admitted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praying</td>
<td>prayed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prying</td>
<td>pried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tying</td>
<td>tied</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRACTICE 13, p. 25.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>double consonant</th>
<th>drop -E</th>
<th>add -ING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hitting</td>
<td>coming</td>
<td>learning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cutting</td>
<td>taking</td>
<td>listening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hopping</td>
<td>hoping</td>
<td>raining</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beginning</td>
<td>smiling</td>
<td>staying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>winning</td>
<td>writing</td>
<td>studying</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRACTICE 14, p. 25.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-ING</th>
<th>-ED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>riding</td>
<td>(ridden)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>starting</td>
<td>started</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coming</td>
<td>(came)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happening</td>
<td>happened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trying</td>
<td>tried</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buying</td>
<td>(bought)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hoping</td>
<td>hoped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keeping</td>
<td>(kept)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tipping</td>
<td>tipped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>failing</td>
<td>failed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filling</td>
<td>filled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feeling</td>
<td>(felt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dining</td>
<td>dined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meaning</td>
<td>(meant)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>winning</td>
<td>(won)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>learning</td>
<td>learned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listening</td>
<td>listened</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beginning</td>
<td>(began)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-ing</th>
<th>simple form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>waiting</td>
<td>wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>petting</td>
<td>pet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>biting</td>
<td>bite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sitting</td>
<td>sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>writing</td>
<td>write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fighting</td>
<td>fight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>waiting</td>
<td>wait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>getting</td>
<td>get</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>starting</td>
<td>start</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permitting</td>
<td>permit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lifting</td>
<td>lift</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eating</td>
<td>eat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRACTICE 16, p. 27.

PART I.
- bought
- caught
- sought
- thought
- found
- PART II.
- swam
- drank
- rang
- came
- built
- fell
- stole/took
- shut
- PART III.
- blew
- drew
- grew
- knew
- threw

PART IV.
- broke
- froze
- rode
- sold
- PART V.
- hit
- hurt
- read
- shut
- quit
- PART VI.
- paid
- said

PRACTICE 17, p. 28.
1. drank/had
2. ate
3. began
4. rang
5. came
6. built
7. fell
8. stole/took
9. shut
10. drove
11. ran
12. led
13. paid
14. froze
15. did
16. rose
17. thought
18. wrote
19. kept
20. built

PRACTICE 18, p. 29.
1. spoke
2. dug
3. chose
4. lost
5. quit
6. slept
7. found
8. cut
9. met
10. taught
11. gave
12. grew
13. forgot
14. bought/read
15. shook
16. stole
17. felt
18. drew
19. heard
20. fell

PRACTICE 19, p. 30.
1. Did I ride
2. Did she sit
3. Were we
4. Did they try
5. Was he
6. Did they cut
7. Did she throw
8. Did we do
9. negative
- I didn’t ride
- She didn’t sit
- We weren’t
- They didn’t try
- He wasn’t
- They didn’t cut
- She didn’t throw
- We didn’t do

PRACTICE 20, p. 31.
1. What did you do last night?
2. What is your friend’s name?
3. Is he nice?
4. How was your evening?
5. Where did you go?
6. Did you enjoy it?
7. Was the music loud?
8. What time did you get home?
9. What did you wear?
10. What is he like?
11. What does he look like?
12. Do you want to go out with him again?

PRACTICE 21, p. 32.
1. IS IS was
2. think am thinking thought
3. play are playing played
4. drink am drinking drank
5. teaches is teaching taught
6. swims is swimming
7. sleep are sleeping slept
8. reads is reading
9. try are trying
10. eat are eating ate

PRACTICE 22, p. 32.
1. A: Did you hear
   B: didn’t ... didn’t hear ... was
2. A: Do you hear
   B: don’t ... don’t hear
3. A: Did you build
   B: didn’t ... built
4. A: Is a fish
   B: it is
5. A: want ... Do you want
   B: they are ... don’t know
6. offer ... is ... offered ... didn’t accept
7. took ... found ... didn’t know ... isn’t ... didn’t want ... went ... made ... heated ... seemed ... am not
8. likes ... worry is ... trust ... graduated ... went ... didn’t travel ... rented ... rode ... was ... worried ... were ... saw ... knew

PRACTICE 23, p. 34.
1. were hiding
2. were singing
3. was watching
4. were talking
5. were reading ... were sitting ... (were) looking

PRACTICE 24, p. 34.
1. was playing ... broke
2. scored ... was playing
3. hurt ... was playing
4. was hiking ... found
5. saw ... was hiking
6. picked up ... was hiking
7. tripped ... fell ...
8. was dancing ... met
9. was dancing ... got
PRACTICE 25. p. 35.
1. began ... were walking
2. was washing ... dropped ... broke
3. saw ... was eating ... (was) talking ... joined
4. was walking ... fell ... hit
5. was singing ... didn't hear
6. was walking ... heard ... was
7. A: Did your lights go out
   B: was ... was taking ... found ... ate ... tried ... went ... slept
8. went ... saw ... had ... were walking ... began ... dried ... were passing ... lowered ... started ... stretched ... tried ... didn't let ... was standing ... pointed ... said

PRACTICE 26. p. 36.
1. I gave Alan his allowance after he finished his chores.
   OR
   After Alan finished his chores, I gave him his allowance.
2. The doorbell rang while I was climbing the stairs. OR
   While I was climbing the stairs, the doorbell rang.
3. The firefighters checked the ashes one last time before they went home. OR
   Before they went home, the firefighters checked the ashes one last time.
4. When the Novaks stopped by our table at the restaurant, they showed us their new baby. OR
   The Novaks showed us their new baby when they stopped by our table at the restaurant.
5. We started to dance as soon as the music began. OR
   As soon as the music began, we started to dance.
6. We stayed in our seats until the game ended. OR
   Until the game ended, we stayed in our seats.
7. While my father was listening to a baseball game on the radio, he was watching a basketball game on television. OR
   My father was watching a basketball game on television while he was listening to a baseball game on the radio.

PRACTICE 27. p. 37.
1. was
2. slept
3. came
4. packed
5. took
6. spent
7. got
8. found
9. fed
10. threw
11. swam
12. caught
13. hit
14. stole
15. were feeding
16. met
17. comes
18. sat
19. spoke
20. ate
21. took
22. was sleeping
23. bit
24. woke
25. heard
26. looked
27. saw
28. flew
29. did
30. took
31. got
32. read
33. is
34. drew
35. played
36. won
37. won
38. taught
39. were playing
40. fell
41. found
42. joined
43. were
44. were
45. hurt
46. was
47. left
48. was

1. used to hate school
2. used to be a secretary
3. used to have a rat
4. used to go bowling
5. used to have fresh eggs
6. used to crawl under his bed ... put his hands over his ears
7. used to go
8. didn't use/used to wear
9. used to hate ... didn't use/used to have
10. did you use/used to do

PRACTICE 29. p. 40.
1. They didn't stay at the park very long last Saturday
2. They -are- walked to school yesterday.
3. I -was- understood all the teacher's questions yesterday.
4. We didn't know what to do when the fire alarm rang yesterday.
5. I -was- really enjoyed the baseball game last week.
6. Mr. Rice didn't die in the accident.
7. I used to live with my parents, but now I have my own apartment.
8. My friends -were- went on vacation together last month.
9. I wasn't afraid of anything when I was a child.
10. The teacher -was- changed his mind yesterday.
11. Sally loved Jim, but he didn't love her.
12. Carmen didn't use/used to eat fish, but now she does.

PRACTICE 30. p. 41.
1. was preparing
2. rang
3. put
4. rushed
5. opened
6. found
7. was holding
8. needed
9. rang
10. was dealing
11. excused
12. reached
13. was trying
14. ran
15. was trying
16. were swimming
17. said
18. hung
19. thanked
20. shut

Chapter 3: FUTURE TIME

PRACTICE 1. p. 43.
1. a. arrives
   b. arrived
   c. is going to arrive OR will arrive
2. a. eats
   b. ate
   c. is going to eat OR will eat
3. a. doesn't arrive
   b. didn't arrive
   c. isn't going to arrive OR will not/won't arrive
4. a. Do ... eat
   b. Did ... eat
   c. Are ... going to eat OR Will ... eat
5. a. don't eat
   b. didn't eat
   c. 'm/am not going to eat OR will not/won't eat

PRACTICE 2. p. 44.
be going to will
am going to will
are going to will
is going to will
are going to will
are going to will
are not going to will not
is not going to will not
am not going to will not
PRACTICE 3, p. 44.
1. I'm going to eat
2. he isn't going to be
3. they're going to take
4. she's going to walk
5. it isn't going to rain
6. we're going to be
7. you aren't going to hitchhike
8. I'm not going to get
9. he isn't going to wear

PRACTICE 4, p. 44.
The Smiths will celebrate their 50th wedding anniversary on December 1 of this year. Their children are planning a party for them at a local hotel. Their family and friends will join them for the celebration.
Mr. and Mrs. Smith have three children and five grandchildren. The Smiths know that two of their children will be at the party, but the third child, their youngest daughter, is far away in Africa, where she is doing medical research. They believe she will not come home for the party.
The Smiths don't know it, but their youngest daughter will be at the party. She is planning to surprise them. It will be a wonderful surprise for them! They will be very happy to see her. The whole family will enjoy being together for this special occasion.

PRACTICE 5, p. 45.
1. Will Nick start
   Is Nick going to start
2. Will Mr. Jones give
   Is Mr. Jones going to give
3. Will Jacob quit
   Is Jacob going to quit
4. Will Mr. and Mrs. Kono adopt
   Are Mr. and Mrs. Kono going to adopt
5. Will the Johnsons move
   Are the Johnsons going to move
6. Will Dr. Johnson retire
   Is Dr. Johnson going to retire

PRACTICE 6, p. 46.
1. A: Will you help
   B: I will OR I won't
2. A: Will Paul lend
   B: he will OR he won't
3. A: Will Jane graduate
   B: she will OR she won't
4. A: Will her parents be
   B: they will OR they won't
5. A: Will I benefit
   B: you will OR you won't

PRACTICE 7, p. 46.
1. probably won't
2. will probably
3. will probably
4. probably won't
5. will probably
6. probably won't
7. will probably
8. will probably

PRACTICE 8, p. 47.
PART I.
1. I'll probably go
2. she probably won't come
3. he will probably go
4. he probably won't hand
5. they will probably have

PART II.
6. I'm probably going to watch
7. I'm probably not going to be
8. it's probably going to be
9. they probably aren't going to come
10. she probably isn't going to ride

PRACTICE 9, p. 47.
1. 90% 5. 50%
2. 50% 6. 90%
3. 100% 7. 100%
4. 90% 8. 50%

PRACTICE 10, p. 48.
1. are probably going to have
2. are probably not going to invite
3. may get married . . . Maybe . . . will get married
4. may rent
5. will probably decide
6. may not be . . . may be
7. will go
8. probably won't go

PRACTICE 11, p. 49.
1. 'll answer it 5. 'll turn . . . off
2. 'll hold 6. 'll leave
3. 'll take 7. 'll get
4. 'll move 8. 'll read

PRACTICE 12, p. 49.
1. 'm going to
2. 'll
3. 'm going to
4. 'll
5. 'm going to
6. 'll
7. 'm going to . . . 'll

PRACTICE 13, p. 50.
1. 'll
2. 'm going to
3. 'm going to
4. 'll
5. 'm going to
6. 'll
7. 'm going to
8. 'll
9. 's going to
10. 'll put
11. 'm going to
12. 'll

PRACTICE 14, p. 52.
Time clauses:
1. After I did my homework last night
2. after I do my homework tonight
3. Before Bob left for work this morning
4. Before Bob leaves for work this morning
5. after I get home this evening

ANSWER KEY Chapter 3 7
Time clauses:
6. after I got home last night
7. as soon as the teacher arrives
8. As soon as the teacher arrived
9. When the rain stops
10. when the rain stopped

◊ PRACTICE 15, p. 52.
1. After I finish . . . I'm going to go
2. I'm not going to go . . . until I finish
3. Before Ann watches . . . she will (she'll) finish
4. Jim is going to read . . . after he gets
5. When I call . . . I'll ask
6. Mrs. Fox will stay . . . until she finishes
7. As soon as I get . . . I'm going to take
8. While I am . . . I'm going to go

◊ PRACTICE 16, p. 53.
1. If it rains tomorrow, I'll get up at 6:30. I'll wash my face and brush my teeth. Then I'll probably put on my jeans and a sweater.
2. Before my friends come over, I'm going to clean up my apartment. OR I'm going to clean up my apartment before my friends come over.
3. When the storm is over, I'm going to do some errands. OR I'm going to do some errands when the storm is over.
4. If you don't learn how to use a computer, you will have trouble finding a job. OR You will have trouble finding a job if you don't learn how to use a computer.
5. As soon as Sue washes and dries the dishes, she will put them away. OR Sue will put the dishes away after she washes and dries them.
6. If a deer is in the garden, I'll watch it for a while and then make some noise to chase it away before it destroys my flowers.

◊ PRACTICE 17, p. 54.
1. If it rains tomorrow, I'll get up at 6:30. I'll wash my face and brush my teeth. Then I'll probably put on my jeans and a sweater. I'll go to the kitchen and start the electric coffee maker.
2. Then I'll walk down my driveway to get the morning newspaper. If I see a deer in my garden, I'll watch it for a while and then make some noise to chase it away before it destroys my flowers.
3. As soon as I get back to the kitchen, I'll pour myself a cup of coffee and open the morning paper.
4. While I am reading the paper, my teenage daughter will come downstairs. We'll talk about her plans for the day. I'll help her with her breakfast and make a lunch for her to take to school. After we say goodbye, I'll eat some fruit and cereal and finish reading the paper.

◊ PRACTICE 18, p. 54.
1. A: is traveling
B: is arriving
2. A: is meeting
B: is getting
3. A: is taking
B: is studying
4. A: is calling
B: is planning

◊ PRACTICE 19, p. 56.
1. I'm going to stay . . . I'm staying
2. They're going to travel . . . They're traveling
3. We're going to get . . . We're getting
4. He's going to start . . . He's starting
5. She's going to go . . . She's going
6. My neighbors are going to build . . . My neighbors are building
7. If someone doesn't study for her test, she will fail. OR If someone doesn't study for her test, she'll fail.

◊ PRACTICE 20, p. 56.
1. is traveling
2. are arriving
3. 'm/am meeting
4. 'm/am getting
5. is . . . taking
6. 'm/am studying
7. 'm/am leaving
8. is attending . . . 'm/am seeing
9. is speaking
10. are coming . . . 'm/am planning . . . 'm/am preparing
11. 'm/am calling

◊ PRACTICE 21, p. 58.
1. A: does . . . begin/start
B: begins/starts
2. opens
3. arrives/gets in
4. begins
5. A: does . . . close
B: closes
6. open . . . starts/begins . . . arrive . . . ends/finishes
7. A: does . . . depart/leave
B: leaves
A: does . . . arrive/land

◊ PRACTICE 22, p. 59.
1. is about to rain
2. is about to leave
3. is about to write
4. is about to ring
5. is . . . about to break
Chapter 4: THE PRESENT PERFECT AND THE PAST PERFECT

PRACTICE 1, p. 64.
1. A: Have you ever eaten
   B: have ... have eaten OR haven't ... have never eaten
2. A: Have you ever talked
   B: have ... have talked OR haven't ... have never talked
3. A: Has Erica ever rented
   B: has ... has rented OR hasn't ... has never rented
4. A: Have you ever seen
   B: have ... have seen OR haven't ... have never seen
5. A: Has Joe ever caught
   B: has ... has caught OR hasn't ... has never caught
6. A: Have you ever had
   B: have ... have had OR haven't ... have never had

PRACTICE 2, p. 65.
1. have wanted
2. have been
3. has been
4. have flown
5. have not picked up
6. has changed
7. has already corrected
   hasn't returned
8. hasn't talked
9. have needed
   have looked
10. A: Have you had
    B: have gotten

PRACTICE 3, p. 66.
GROUP I.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>simple</th>
<th>simple</th>
<th>past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>put</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quit</td>
<td>quit</td>
<td>quit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>upset</td>
<td>upset</td>
<td>upset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>shut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>set</td>
<td>set</td>
<td>set</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GROUP II.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>simple</th>
<th>simple</th>
<th>past</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ring</td>
<td>rang</td>
<td>rung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drink</td>
<td>drank</td>
<td>drunk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swim</td>
<td>swam</td>
<td>swum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing</td>
<td>sang</td>
<td>sung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sink</td>
<td>sank</td>
<td>sunk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ANSWER KEY Chapter 4
GROUP III.

simple simple past
form past participle
win won won
feed fed fed
weep wept wept
stand stood stood
keep kept kept
sit sat sat
stick stuck stuck
meet met met
have had had
find found found
buy bought bought
catch caught caught
fight fought fought
teach taught taught
pay paid paid
bring brought brought
think thought thought

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 67.
1. have used
2. has risen
3. have never played
4. have won
5. hasn’t spoken
6. hasn’t eaten

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 68.
2. F 7. F 12. F
5. C

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. 68.
1. began . . . have begun
2. bent . . . have bent
3. broadcast . . . has broadcast
4. caught . . . have caught
5. came . . . have come
6. cut . . . have cut
7. dug . . . have dug
8. drew . . . has drawn
9. fed . . . have fed
10. fought . . . have fought
11. forgot . . . have forgotten
12. hid . . . have hidden
13. hit . . . has hit
14. held . . . has held
15. kept . . . have kept
16. led . . . has led
17. lost . . . has lost
18. met . . . have met
19. rode . . . have ridden
20. rang . . . has rung
21. saw . . . have seen
22. stole . . . has stolen
23. stuck . . . have stuck
24. swept . . . have swept
25. took . . . have taken
26. upset . . . have upset
27. withdrew . . . have withdrawn
28. wrote . . . have written

◊ PRACTICE 7, p. 70.
1. went . . . have gone
2. lived
3. has lived
4. moved . . . worked
5. roomed . . . returned
6. was . . . died

◊ PRACTICE 8, p. 71.
1. a. have gone
   b. went
2. a. gave
   b. Has she ever given
3. a. have fallen
   b. fell
4. a. Have you ever broken
   b. broke
5. a. have never shaken
   b. shook
6. a. heard
   b. have heard
7. a. flew
   b. has flown
8. a. has worn
   b. wore
9. a. Have you ever built
   b. built
10. a. has taught
    b. taught

◊ PRACTICE 9, p. 73.
1. since
2. for
3. since
4. for
5. since

◊ PRACTICE 10, p. 74.
1. I have been in this class for a month.
2. I have known my teacher since September.
3. Sam has wanted a dog for two years.
4. Sara has needed a new car since last year.
5. Our professor has been sick for a week.
6. They have lived in Canada since 1999.
7. I have known Mrs. Brown since 1999.
8. Tom has worked at a fast-food restaurant for three weeks.

◊ PRACTICE 11, p. 74.
Checked phrases:
1. two weeks ago
2. since Friday
3. yesterday
4. last year
5. several months ago
6. the day before yesterday
7. in March

◊ PRACTICE 12, p. 75.
1. have known . . . was
2. has had . . . came
3. have not experienced . . . came
4. began . . . has given
5. has been . . . was
6. has not been . . . graduated
7. started . . . have completed
8. began . . . has not had
9. have become . . . changed
10. has risen . . . bought
**PRACTICE 13, p. 75.**

1. A: has Eric been studying  
   B: 's been studying ... for two hours
2. A: has Kathy been working at the computer  
   B: 's been working ... two o'clock
3. A: has it been raining  
   B: 's been raining ... two days
4. A: has Liz been reading  
   B: 's been reading ... 30 minutes/half an hour
5. A: has Boris been studying English  
   B: 's been studying English ... 2001
6. A: has Nicole been working at the Silk Road Clothing Store  
   B: 's been working ... three months
7. A: has Ms. Rice been teaching at this school  
   B: 's been teaching ... 2001
8. A: has Mr. Fisher been driving a Chevy  
   B: 's been driving a Chevy ... twelve years
9. A: has Mrs. Taylor been waiting to see her doctor  
   B: 's been waiting ... one and a half hours
10. A: have Ted and Erica been playing tennis  
    B: have been playing tennis ... two o'clock

**PRACTICE 14, p. 76.**

1. B  
2. B  
3. A  
4. B  
5. B  
6. A  
7. B  
8. A  
9. A  
10. B

**PRACTICE 15, p. 77.**

1. B  
2. D  
3. A  
4. D  
5. C  
6. A  
7. B  
8. A  
9. B  
10. C

**PRACTICE 16, p. 78.**

1. yet  
2. yet  
3. still  
4. yet  
5. still  
6. still  
7. yet  
8. still  
9. anymore  
10. still  
11. A: yet  
12. yet  
13. already  
14. haven't had  
15. quit

**PRACTICE 17, p. 79.**

1. need  
2. is  
3. Have you ever worked  
4. have worked  
5. had  
6. did you work  
7. have worked  
8. have never had  
9. did you like  
10. didn't like  
11. was  
12. are you working  
13. don't have  
14. haven't had  
15. quit  
16. Are you looking  
17. 'm/am going  
18. is looking  
19. 'll/will do  
20. have never looked  
21. 'll/will be (also possible: is)  
22. don't know  
23. 'll/will find  
24. go

**PRACTICE 18, p. 80.**

1. have already eaten  
2. had already eaten  
3. have already finished  
4. had already finished  
5. had already finished  
6. had already started  
7. has already started  
8. had already left

**PRACTICE 19, p. 81.**

1. was raining  
2. had stopped  
3. was studying  
4. had finished  
5. was washing  
6. had already washed ... (had) put

**PRACTICE 20, p. 82.**

*Past perfect verbs:*

1. had always watched  
2. had always read  
3. had never let ... had always listened  
4. had always left  
5. 'd/had never put  
6. had never shared

**PRACTICE 21, p. 83.**

1. A: Did you enjoy  
   B: hadn't gone  
2. A: Did you see  
   B: was ... hadn't seen  
3. A: haven't seen  
   B: is ... haven't seen  
4. A: Did you get  
   B: got ... had already begun  
5. had already gone  
6. have painted  
7. A: was watching  
   B: did you do  
   A: ran  
8. A: Did you go  
   B: got ... had already made  
   A: was  
   B: had ... were eating ... stopped ... invited

**PRACTICE 22, p. 84.**

1. Where have you been? I've been waiting for you for an hour.
2. Anna has been a soccer fan for a long time.
3. Since I was a child, I have liked to solve puzzles.
4. Have you ever wanted to travel around the world?
5. The family has been at the hospital since they heard about the accident.
6. My sister is only 30 years old, but her hair has begun to turn gray.
7. Jake has worked as a volunteer at the children's hospital several times.
8. Steve has worn his black suit only once since he bought it.
9. My cousin has been studying for medical school exams since last month.
10. The students have been hearing rumors about their teacher's engagement for a week.
11. I don't know the results of my medical tests yet. I'll find out soon.
12. Jean has been trying to get online to go Internet shopping for an hour.
13. By the time Michelle unlocked the door and got into her apartment, the phone had already stopped ringing.

Chapter 5: ASKING QUESTIONS

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 85.
1. (your name) 2. what is your name 3. Is that your first name? 4. What's your last name?
5. How do you spell it? 6. Where are you from? 7. What is your hometown?
8. When did you come here? 9. Why did you come here?
10. What are you studying? (OR What is your major?)
11. How long are you going to stay here?
12. Where are you living?
13. Is it far from school?
14. How far is it?
15. How do you get to school?
16. Do you like it?

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 86.
9. Is 10. Were

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>helping verb</th>
<th>main verb</th>
<th>rest of the sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1. Do | you | hear the news yesterday? |
2. Does | Tom | reading today's paper? |
3. Is | Ann | find your wallet? |
4. Are | you | find your wallet? |
5. Did | Sara | walk to work? |
6. Was | Ann | walk to work? |
7. Will | Ted | return to her office? |
8. Can | Rita | return to her office? |
9. Is | Ann | you at the wedding? |
10. Were | you | the orange juice in the refrigerator? |

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 87.
1. A: Do 6. A: Do
5. A: Are 10. A: Does

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>main verb</th>
<th>rest of the sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1. I don't 2. they do 3. it isn't 4. they do 5. it doesn't 6. it's 7. it does |

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 88.
1. Yes, I do. OR No, I don't.
2. Yes, she does. OR No she doesn't.
3. Yes, I am. OR No, I'm not.
4. Yes, I will. OR No, I won't.
5. Yes, I can. OR No, I can't.
6. Yes, I do. OR No, I don't.
7. Yes, we are. OR No, we aren't.
8. Yes, they can. OR No, they can't.
9. Yes, they should. OR No, they shouldn't.
10. Yes, I did. OR No, I didn't.
11. Yes, I do. OR No, I don't.
12. Yes, it will. OR No, it won't.
13. Yes, it does. OR No, it doesn't.
14. Yes, they were. OR No, they weren't.
15. Yes, he/she should. OR No, he/she shouldn't.
16. Yes, it is. OR No, it isn't.
17. Yes, it was. OR No, it wasn't.

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 89.
2. when did 3. is 4. does 5. will 6. was 7. is 8. are
9. Can

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>helping verb</th>
<th>main verb</th>
<th>rest of the sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
2. B: they don't. 7. B: she will.
3. A: Did Ann and Jim come 8. A: Can birds swim
5. A: Are you writing 10. A: Is
6. B: I am. 11. B: he is.
8. B: I wasn't.

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. 89.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>question word</th>
<th>helping verb</th>
<th>main verb</th>
<th>rest of the sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1. Ø | Did | hear the news yesterday? |
2. When | did | hear the news? |
3. Ø | Is | reading today's paper? |
4. What | is | Ø |
5. Ø | Did | find your wallet? |
6. Where | did | find your wallet? |
7. Why | does | walk to work? |
8. Ø | Does | walk to work? |
9. Ø | Will | return to her office? |
10. When | will | return to her office? |
11. Ø | Is | the orange juice in the refrigerator? |
12. Where | is | the orange juice? |
**PRACTICE 7, p. 90.**
1. What time/When do the fireworks start
2. Why are you waiting
3. When does Rachel start
4. What time/When do you leave
5. Why didn't you get
6. Where can I find
7. When are you leaving
8. When do you expect
9. Where will the spaceship go
10. Where did you study...Why did you study...Why didn't you go

**PRACTICE 8, p. 91.**
1. When/What time did you get up
2. Where did you eat lunch
3. When/What time did you eat
4. Why do you eat lunch
5. Where do your aunt and uncle live
6. When are you going to visit
7. When/What time will you get home
8. Where is George going to study
9. Why does George study
10. Where can I catch
11. When/What time do you have to leave
12. Where were you living
13. Why are the students writing
14. What time should I call
15. Why is Yoko

**PRACTICE 9, p. 92.**
1. were you
2. can’t you come
3. did Tom go
4. won’t Ann be
5. do you need
6. are you going to buy
7. didn’t you do
8. isn’t Anita coming
9. are you and Joe going
10. didn’t you eat
11. did Jack take
12. don’t you like

**PRACTICE 10, p. 93.**
1. Who knows Tom?
2. Who(m) does Tom know?
3. Who will help us?
4. Who(m) will you ask?
5. Who(m) is Eric talking to on the phone? OR (formal: To whom is Eric talking on the phone?)
6. Who is knocking on the door?
7. What surprised them?
8. What did Jack say?
9. What did Sue talk about?
10. Who(m) did Ann talk about? OR (formal: About whom did Ann talk?)

**PRACTICE 11, p. 94.**
1. Who taught
2. What did Robert see
3. Who got
4. What are you making
5. Who does that calculator belong
6. What do you have
7. What did the cat kill
8. What killed the cat
9. What makes
10. Who wrote a note
11. Who(m) did you get a letter

**PRACTICE 12, p. 95.**
1. A: What does “explore” mean?
   B: “to go to a new place and find out about it.”
2. A: What does “underneath” mean?
   B: “under.”
3. A: What does “blink” mean?
   B: “to open and close your eyes quickly.”
4. A: What does “delicious” mean?
   B: “it tastes very, very, good.”

**PRACTICE 13, p. 95.**
1. What is Alex doing?
2. What should I do
3. What do astronauts do?
4. What are you going to do
5. What do you do
6. What can I do
7. What did Sara do
8. What should I do?
9. What is Emily going to do
10. What did you do
11. What would you like to do (also possible: Where would you like to go?)
12. What are you trying to do?
13. What does Kevin need to do?
14. What does Nick do?
15. What did he do?...What did you do?...What did he do?

**PRACTICE 14, p. 96.**
1. What kind of music
2. What kind of clothes/clothing
3. What kind of food
4. What kind of books
5. What kind of car
6. What kind of government
7. What kind of job
8. What kind of person/man/woman
9. What kind of products/things

**PRACTICE 15, p. 97.**
1. Which 6. Which
2. What 7. What
3. Which 8. What
5. Which

**PRACTICE 16, p. 98.**
1. Who 5. Who
2. Whose 6. Who
3. Whose 7. Whose
4. Who 8. Whose

**PRACTICE 17, p. 99.**
1. Whose house is that?
2. Who’s living in that house?
3. Whose umbrella did you borrow?
4. Whose book did you use?
5. Whose book is on the table?
6. Who is on the phone?
7. Who’s that?
8. Whose is that?

**ANSWER KEY Chapter 5 13**
PRACTICE 18, p. 99.
1. A: hot
   B: hot
2. soon
3. expensive
4. A: busy
   B: busy
5. A: serious
   B: serious
6. safe
7. B: fresh
   A: fresh...fresh
8. A: well
   B: well

PRACTICE 19, p. 100.
1. far
2. long
3. often
4. far
5. far
6. often

PRACTICE 20, p. 101.
1. What is Jack doing
2. Who is he playing
3. What is Anna doing
4. What is she throwing
5. What are Anna and Jack holding
6. Where are they
7. How long have they been playing
8. Who is winning

PRACTICE 21, p. 102.
1. When will the clean clothes be
2. Where did you go
3. Which dictionary did you buy
4. How long did it take you
5. How can I reach
6. What kind of bread do you like
7. Where are they
8. How long have they been playing
9. Who is winning
10. Who won

PRACTICE 22, p. 103.
1. a. don't
   b. doesn't
   c. is
   d. weren't
   e. wasn't
   f. didn't
2. a. didn't
   b. did
   c. were
   d. wasn't
   e. aren't
   f. isn't
3. A: hasn't
   B: haven't
4. A: has
   B: have
5. A: isn't
   B: isn't
6. A: aren't
   B: aren't
7. A: don't
   B: don't
8. A: has
   B: has

PRACTICE 23, p. 104.
1. A: haven't you?
   B: Yes, I have.
2. A: has he?
   B: No, he hasn't.
3. A: didn't you?
   B: Yes, I did.
4. A: don't you?
   B: Yes, I do.
5. A: haven't they?
   B: Yes, they have.
6. A: hasn't she?
   B: Yes, she has.
7. A: is it?
   B: No, it isn't.
8. A: don't we?
   B: Yes, we do.
9. A: doesn't he?
   B: Yes, he does.
10. A: didn't you?
    B: Yes, I did.
11. A: is it?
    B: No, it isn't.
12. A: do I?
    B: No, you don't.
13. A: do I?
    B: Yes, they were.
14. A: is it?
    B: No, it isn't.
15. A: weren't they?
    B: Yes, they were.
16. A: will she?
    B: No, she won't.

PRACTICE 24, p. 105.
1. Who saw the car accident?
2. Why didn't you say "good-bye" when you left?
3. How about asking Julie and Tim to come for dinner Friday night?
4. What time does class begin today?
5. Why does he have no shoes on his feet?
6. Where can you get a drink of water in this building?
7. What kind of music do you like best?
8. How long does it take to get to the beach from here?
9. She is working late tonight, isn't she?
10. Whose glasses are those?
11. How much tall is your father?
12. Who did you talk to about registration for next term?
13. How about we going to see the baby elephant at the zoo tomorrow?
14. How far is it from here to the nearest gas station?

PRACTICE 25, p. 106.
1. When are you going to buy
2. How are you going to pay
3. How long did you have
4. How often do you ride
5. How do you get
6. Are you going to ride
7. Why didn't you ride
8. Does your bike have
9. What kind of bike do you have
10. When did Jason get
11. Who broke
12. What did Billy break
13. Whose new bike is broken
14. How did Billy break
15. Which bicycle is
16. Where do you keep
17. Who does that bike belong to
18. Whose bike did you borrow
19. Where is Rita
20. What is she doing
21. How far did Rita ride
22. How do you spell
Chapter 6: Nouns and Pronouns

PRACTICE 1, p. 108.
1. Airplanes...wings
2. Children...swings
3. Animals...zoos
4. Trees...branches...leaves
5. Ducks...geese...pond...park
6. Babies...teeth
7. Potatoes...beans...peas...tomatoes
8. Opinions...facts
9. Country...customs
10. Governments...taxes

PRACTICE 2, p. 108.
1. /z/ 2. /s/
3. /s/ 4. /z/ 5. /z/
6. /l/ 7. /az/
8. /l/ 9. /s/
10. /az/ 11. /s/
12. /l/

PRACTICE 3, p. 108.
1. /z/ 2. /s/
3. /s/ 4. /l/ 5. /l/
6. /l/ 7. /az/
8. /l/ 9. /az/
10. /l/ 11. /az/
12. /l/

PRACTICE 4, p. 109.
1. /l/.../l/.../l/
2. /az/.../az/.../az/
3. /l/.../l/.../l/
4. /az/.../az/.../az/
5. /l/.../l/.../l/
6. /l/.../az/.../l/
7. /az/.../az/.../l/
8. /az/.../az/.../az/

PRACTICE 5, p. 109.

PRACTICE 6, p. 110.
1. Cows, sheep, horses, mice, geese
2. Potatoes, tomatoes, peas, beans
3. Apples, grapes, strawberries, bananas, cherries, pears
4. Poppies, daffodils, roses, daisies, lilies
5. Babies, sons, daughters, husbands, wives, children

PRACTICE 7, p. 111.
1. Children play games.
2. Fish swim.
3. The baby doesn't like her new toys.
5. Dictionaries give definitions.
6. Teachers correct tests.
7. The cat found a mouse.
8. The sun shines brightly.
10. Do snakes fly?
11. The child petted the dog.
12. Did the phone ring?

PRACTICE 8, p. 111.
1. The man opened the door with his key.
2. The little girl put her shoes on the wrong feet.
3. The student added and subtracted with a calculator.
4. My father fixes breakfast for my mother every morning.
5. Librarians work in libraries.
6. The bird flew into the window of the building.
7. The children played in the backyard until dinner.
8. The artist drew scenes of the beach in his notebook.
9. It rained for two weeks.
10. A man with dark glasses stood near the door.

ANSWER KEY Chapter 6

15
PRACTICE 9, p. 112.

1. Bridges cross rivers.
   S V O
2. A terrible earthquake occurred in Turkey.
   S V PP
3. Airplanes fly above the clouds.
   S V O
4. Trucks carry large loads.
   S V PP
5. Rivers flow toward the sea.
   S V O PP
6. Salespeople treat customers with courtesy.
   S V O
7. Bacteria can cause diseases.
   S V PP
8. The audience in the theater applauded the performers at the end of the show.
   S V PP
9. Clouds are floating across the sky.
   S PP V O
10. Helmets protect bicyclists from serious injuries.
    S V O PP

PRACTICE 10, p. 112.

1. in 5. at 9. at 13. in
2. in 6. at 10. at 14. in
3. on 7. in 11. in 15. on
4. on 8. on 12. on

PRACTICE 11, p. 113.

1. 3 4. 2 7. 2
   2 3 1
2. 1 5. 1 3
   2 3 1
3. 2 2
   3 1 1
   1 2 3
4. 6. 3 9. 2
5. 1 1
6. 3 1
7. 2 3 1
8. 2 3 1
9. 3 1 1
10. 1 2 3

PRACTICE 12, p. 114.

1. are 5. is 9. are
2. are 6. is 10. is
3. are 7. is
4. is 8. is

PRACTICE 13, p. 114.

1. make 5. are 9. needs
2. need 6. comes 10. go
3. Do 7. is 11. work
4. are 8. are 12. are

PRACTICE 14, p. 114.

1. old 9. hard 17. cheap/inexpensive
2. old 10. narrow 18. light
3. cold/cool 11. clean 19. light
4. slow 12. empty 20. public
5. happy 13. safe 21. right
6. bad 14. noisy 22. right
7. wet 15. deep 23. strong
8. easy 16. sour 24. long

PRACTICE 15, p. 115.

1. loud → voice
2. sweet → Sugar
3. easy → test
4. free → Air
5. delicious → food
6. important → facts
   Mexican → restaurant
7. sick → child
8. sick → child
   warm → bed
   hot → tea
9. camping → equipment
   old, rusty → equipment
10. hungry → bear
   garbage → cans
11. elderly → father
   nursing → care
12. fresh → coffee
   warm → cookies

PRACTICE 16, p. 116.

1. newspaper articles 11. brick walls
2. page numbers 12. egg cartons
3. paper money 13. mountain views
4. apartment buildings 14. pocket knives
5. computer disks 15. traffic lights
6. birthday presents 16. picnic tables
7. rose gardens 17. apple pies
8. key chains 18. bicycle helmets
9. city governments 19. log cabins
10. duck ponds 20. steel bridges

PRACTICE 17, p. 117.

1. mountains
2. Cats ... mice
3. Mosquitoes/Mosquitos ... insects
4. cyclonches
5. Geese ... ducks
6. programs
7. Forests ... fires ... fires ... animals
8. knives ... weapons
9. manners
10. tickets
11. lives ... ways ... years ... lamps ... candles ... houses ... chickens ... fires
12. kinds ... flowers
13. reporters ... jobs
14. universities
15. students
16. animals ... horses ... zebras [NOTE: deer is already plural]
17. students ... experiments ... classes
18. Houseflies ... pests ... germs
19. articles ... experiences
20. devices ... batteries ... flashlights ... calculators ... radios ... recorders ... kinds ... toys ... batteries

16  ANSWER KEY Chapter 6
1. The teacher helped me with the lesson.
2. I carry a dictionary with me at all times.
3. Mr. Fong has a computer. He uses it for many things. It helps him in many ways.
4. Jessica went to Hawaii with Ann and me. We like her, and she likes us. We had a good time with her.
5. Mike had dirty socks. He washed them in the kitchen sink and hung them to dry in front of the window. They dried quickly.
6. Joseph and I are close friends. No bad feelings will ever come between him and me. He and I share a strong bond of friendship.

**PRACTICE 19, p. 118.**

**pronoun → noun/noun phrase**

1. She → Janet
2. it → a green apple
3. her → Betsy
4. They → Nick and Rob
5. him → Louie
6. She → Alice
7. He → Louie
8. her → Alice
9. They → phone messages
10. him → Louie
11. her → Alice
12. He → phone messages
13. them → Mr. and Mrs. Moore
14. her → Jane
15. him → Louie
16. her → Alice
17. They → Mr. and Mrs. Moore
18. her → Jane

**PRACTICE 20, p. 119.**

1. me
2. He
3. him
4. he
5. her
6. She
7. me...He...us
8. her...They
9. I...They...us...
   it...We...them
10. them
11. me...him
12. she
13. him and me
14. them...They...her
15. me...him
16. me...him
17. me...he...him...
   us...We...We...
   him...he

**PRACTICE 21, p. 120.**

1. friend's
2. friends'
3. son's
4. sons'
5. baby's
6. babies'
7. child's
8. children's
9. person's
10. people's
11. teacher's
12. teachers'
13. man's
14. men's
15. earth's

**PRACTICE 22, p. 120.**

1. Dan's
2. (no change)
3. Jack's
4. (no change)
5. roommate's
6. roommates'
7. (no change)
8. Betty's...sister's
9. sisters'
10. woman's
11. women's...men's
12. Jupiter's surface
13. Mercury's atmosphere
14. Mars'/Mars's surface...
15. Earth's surface
16. Venus'/Venus's surface

**PRACTICE 23, p. 122.**

1. your...yours
2. her...hers
3. his...his
4. your...yours
5. their...our...theirs...ours

**PRACTICE 24, p. 122.**

1. her
2. hers
3. Our
4. ours
5. your
6. mine...my...yours
7. their...their...theirs
8. mine...yours
9. ours

**PRACTICE 25, p. 123.**

1. myself
2. himself
3. ourselves
4. ourselves
5. yourselves
6. herself
7. themselves
8. himself
9. herself
10. myself
11. ourselves
12. themselves
13. herself/himself
14. ourselves
15. themselves
16. herself
17. himself
18. themselves
19. yourself/yourselves

**PRACTICE 26, p. 124.**

1. cut myself
2. be proud of yourself
3. talks to himself
4. taught myself
5. blamed herself
6. help yourselves
7. takes care of himself
8. enjoyed themselves
9. worked for himself
10. introduce themselves

**PRACTICE 27, p. 125.**

1. me...him
2. yourselves
3. itself
4. its...its
5. hers
6. him

**PRACTICE 28, p. 125.**

1. his...He...himself...he...him
2. Her...She
3. Our...We
4. her
5. my...I
6. hers
7. mine
8. They...themselves...them...theirs...Their...their
9. hers...his
10. himself...him...he...his...He...him
11. her...she...herself(also possible:it)...she...her
12. your...ours

◊ PRACTICE 29, p. 126.
1. one...another...another...the other
2. one...another...the other
3. one...another...another...another...the other
4. one...the other
5. one...another...another...another...another...the other

◊ PRACTICE 30, p. 127.
1. another
c. another
2. The other
d. another
3. The other
e. another
4. Another
8. another
5. The other
9. The other
6. a. Another
10. The other
b. the other
11. another
7. a. another
b. another

◊ PRACTICE 31, p. 128.
1. The others
10. The others
2. The others
11. The other
3. Others
12. The other
4. others
13. Others...other
5. other
14. another...other
6. Others
15. another...other
7. Other
16. The others
8. Others
17. The other
9. Other

◊ PRACTICE 32, p. 129.
1. A
4. B
7. D
2. C
5. B
8. B
3. D
6. A

◊ PRACTICE 33, p. 130.
1. are
6. us
2. potatoes
7. its
3. by myself
8. our...yours
4. on...at
9. himself
5. four-week
10. the others

◊ PRACTICE 34, p. 130.
1. Look at those beautiful mountains!
2. The children played a game at the park on Saturday afternoon.
3. There are two horses, several sheep, and a cow in the farmer's field.
4. The owner of the store is busy at the moment.
5. The teacher met her students at the park after school.
6. Everyone wants peace in the world.
7. I grew up in a very large city.
8. This apple tastes sour. Here's some more, so let's try another (or another one).
9. Some trees lose their leaves in the winter.
10. I am going to wear my brown shirt to the party.
11. I hurt myself at work last week.
12. Our neighbors invited my friend and me to visit them.
13. My husband's boss works for twelve hours every day.
14. The students couldn't find their books.
15. I always read magazine articles while I'm in the waiting room at my dentist's office.

Chapter 7: MODAL AUXILIARIES

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 132.
(1) has to = must
(3) can't = is not able to
may = might
(5) couldn't = was not able to
(7) got to = must
(10) have to = must
(12) 'd (had) better = should
ought to = should
(17) might = may
(21) ought to = should

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 133.
1. Ø 8. to
2. to 9. Ø
3. Ø 10. Ø...Ø
4. Ø 11. to...Ø
5. Ø 12. Ø
6. to 13. Ø
7. Ø

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 134.
1. zebra 7. horse
2. cat 8. donkey
3. Elephants 9. squirrel
4. Monkeys 10. ants
5. camels 11. baby
6. cow 12. women

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 134.
1. may/might...may not/might not
2. can't
3. can...may/might...may not/might not
4. may/might
5. can't
6. may/might...may/might
7. can't

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 135.
1. I might take a nap.
2. Maybe she is sick.
3. Maybe there will be time later.
4. Our team may win.
5. You might be right.
6. We may hear soon.
7. It may rain.
8. It might snow.
9. Maybe she will come tomorrow.
10. Maybe she is at home right now.
PRACTICE 6, p. 135.
1. possibility 6. permission
2. possibility 7. possibility
3. permission 8. permission
4. possibility 9. possibility
5. possibility 10. permission

PRACTICE 7, p. 136.
1. b 4. a 7. b
2. b 5. b 8. a
3. a 6. a

PRACTICE 8, p. 137.
1. Could/Can/Would
2. may B: May
4. could B: Will

PRACTICE 9, p. 137.
1. Could/Can/Would
2. Could/May/Can
3. Would/Could/Will
4. Can/May/Will
5. Will/Can/Will

PRACTICE 10, p. 138.
1. shouldn’t drive a long distance
2. should quit
3. shouldn’t exceed the speed limit
4. shouldn’t give too much homework
5. shouldn’t miss any classes
6. shouldn’t be cruel to animals
7. should always be on time for an appointment
8. shouldn’t throw trash out of your car window

PRACTICE 11, p. 138.
1. soak it in cold water . . . wash it in hot water
2. take it back to the store . . . try to fix it herself
3. get a job
4. call the landlord and complain
5. find a new girlfriend
6. send it back to the kitchen . . . eat it

PRACTICE 12, p. 139.
1. A 6. C
2. C 7. A
5. B 10. C

PRACTICE 13, p. 140.
1. C 5. B
2. A 6. A
3. D 7. D
4. C 8. C

PRACTICE 14, p. 140.
1. have to/must 5. has to
2. had to 6. had to
3. have to/must 7. have to/must
4. had to 8. had to

PRACTICE 15, p. 141.
1. had to 4. had to
2. had to 5. have to
3. have to 6. had to

PRACTICE 16, p. 141.
1. had to study 4. had to see
2. had to turn off 5. had to be
3. Did you have to work 6. had to close

PRACTICE 17, p. 141.
1. must not 9. must not
2. don’t have to 10. don’t have to
3. don’t have to 11. don’t have to
4. don’t have to 12. must not
5. must not 13. must not
6. don’t have to 14. must not
7. must not 15. don’t have to
8. must not

PRACTICE 18, p. 143.
1. must/have to 5. doesn’t have to
2. doesn’t have to 6. must/has to
3. don’t have to 7. must not
4. must/has to

PRACTICE 19, p. 143.
People have to/must . . .
et and drink in order to live
pay taxes
stop when they see a police car’s lights behind them
People must not . . .
fall asleep while driving
drive without a license
take other people’s belongings
People don’t have to . . .
cook every meal themselves
say “sir” or “madam” to others
stay in their homes in the evening

PRACTICE 20, p. 144.
1. 2 6. 2
2. 1 7. 2
3. 1 8. 2
4. 2 9. 1
5. 1

PRACTICE 21, p. 144.
1. Wait 6. Don’t cross
2. Don’t wait 7. Don’t stand . . . Do
3. Read 8. Call
5. Come . . . have 10. Capitalize . . . Put . . . use

PRACTICE 22, p. 145.
1. 1 2. 2 3. 2 4. 4
2. 1 4. 1 2
3. 4 3. 1
4. 2 3 3
Chapter 8: CONNECTING IDEAS

PRACTICE 23, p. 145.
1. A: go ... fly 4. A: get/take
B: see 5. B: take ... save
2. A: get 6. A: stop ... fill up
B: take/ask 7. B: get/pick up
3. A: go 8. go ... call ... ask/see
B: play

PRACTICE 24, p. 146.
1. prefer 7. would rather
2. like 8. would rather
3. would rather 9. B: prefer
4. prefer 10. prefer
5. would rather 11. B: likes ... would rather
6. A: prefer

PRACTICE 25, p. 147.
1. Kim prefers salad to dessert.
2. In general, Nicole likes coffee better than tea.
3. Bill would rather teach history than work as a business executive.
4. When considering a pet, Sam likes dogs better than cats.
5. On a long trip, Susie prefers to drive than (to) ride in the back seat.
6. I would rather study in a noisy room than study in a completely quiet room.
7. Alex would rather play soccer than baseball.

PRACTICE 26, p. 148.

PRACTICE 27, p. 149.
1. Before I left on my trip last month, I had to get a passport.
2. Could you bring us more coffee, please?
3. Ben can drive, but he prefers to take the bus.
4. My roommate may be at home this evening.
5. A few of our classmates can't come to the school picnic.
6. Could/Would/Will/Can you take our picture, please?
7. Jane's eyes are red, and she is yawning. She must be sleepy.
8. Jim would rather have Fridays off in the summer than have/take a long vacation.
9. I must read several lengthy books for my literature class.
10. Take your warm clothes with you. It may/might snow. OR Maybe it will snow.
11. When the baby went to the doctor last week, she had to have several shots.
12. It's very cool in here. Please turn up the heat. OR Would/Could/Will/Can you please turn up the heat?
13. You had better call us before you come over. We're often away during the day.
14. The children would rather see the circus than a baseball game.
15. It's such a gorgeous day. Why don't we go to a park or the beach?

PRACTICE 28, p. 150.
1. may ... is ... can ... can
2. should ... can ... should ... should not ... is ... Will
3. do not have to ... do not have to ... can
4. have to ... cannot ... must ... do ... is ... can ... should
5. ought to ... prepare
6. are ... might ... may ... Maybe ... could ... is ... should
7. should ... will ... can change ... should ...
8. is ... should

Chapter 8: CONNECTING IDEAS

PRACTICE 1, p. 152.
1. The farmer has a cow, a goat, and a black horse.
2. Danny is a bright and happy child.
3. I picked up the telephone and dialed Steve's number.
4. The cook washed the vegetables and put them in boiling water.
5. My feet were cold and wet.
6. Anita is responsible, considerate, and trustworthy.
7. The three largest land animals are the elephant, the rhinoceros, and the hippopotamus.
8. A hippopotamus rests in water during the day and feeds on land at night.

1. (no commas)
2. I opened the door, walked into the room, and sat down at my desk.
3. (no commas)
4. Their flag is green, black, and yellow.
5. (no commas)
6. Tom made a sandwich, poured a glass of juice, and sat down to eat his lunch.
7. Ms. Parker is intelligent, friendly, and kind.
8. (no commas)
9. Did you bring copies of the annual report for Sue, Dan, Joe, and Mary?
10. (no commas)
11. Can you watch television, listen to the radio, and read the newspaper at the same time?
12. (no commas)
13. Doctors save lives, relieve suffering, and cure diseases.
14. The restaurant served a five-course dinner: soup, fish, entrée, salad, and dessert.
15. (no commas)
16. An invitation should include your name, address, the date, the time, the purpose of the party, and any special activities such as swimming or dancing.
1. Birds fly, and fish swim.
2. Birds fly, fish swim.
3. Dogs bark, lions roar.
4. Dogs bark, and lions roar.
5. A week has seven days, and a year has 365 days.
6. Ahmed raised his hand, and the teacher pointed at him.
7. I talked to Amy for a long time, but she didn’t listen.
8. I washed the dishes, and my son dried them.
9. My test was short and easy, but Ali’s test was hard.
10. Every air traffic controller worldwide uses English, so it is important for Gina to become fluent in the language.

2. Gina has decided to take some intensive English courses at a private language institute, but she isn’t sure which one to attend. There are many schools available, and they offer many different kinds of classes.
3. Gina has also heard of air traffic control schools that include English as part of their coursework, but she needs to have a fairly high level of English to attend.
4. Gina needs to decide soon, or the classes will be full . . .

7. There are over 100,000 kinds of flies. They live throughout the world.
8. I like to get mail from my friends and family. Mail is important to me.
9. We are all connected by our humanity. We need to help each other. We can all live in peace.
10. There was a bad flood in Hong Kong. The streets became raging streams. Luckily no one died in the flood.

PRACTICE 4, p. 154.

1. I 6. C
2. C 7. C
3. C 8. C
4. I 9. I
5. I

PRACTICE 5, p. 154.

1. I talked to Amy for a long time, but she didn’t listen.
2. C 6. C
3. C 7. C
4. C 8. C
5. I 9. I

PRACTICE 6, p. 155.

1. C 5. B
2. B 6. C
3. A 7. A
4. C 8. C

PRACTICE 7, p. 155.

1. (no change)
2. I washed the dishes, and my son dried them.
3. I called their house, but no one answered the phone.
4. (no change)
5. I bought some apples, peaches, and bananas.
6. I was hungry, so I ate an apple.
7. (no change)
8. (no change)
9. My daughter is affectionate, shy, independent, and smart.
10. It started to rain, so we went inside and watched television.

PRACTICE 8, p. 156.

1. . . . Every air traffic controller worldwide uses English, so it is important for Gina to become fluent in the language.

ANSWER KEY Chapter 8
PRACTICE 11, p. 157.

1. did 10. are 19. does
2. does 11. will 20. don’t
3. didn’t 12. am 21. can’t
4. do 13. won’t 22. don’t
5. does 14. will 23. is
6. doesn’t 15. can 24. does
7. wasn’t 16. has 25. did
8. is 17. did 26. is
9. isn’t 18. would 27. isn’t

PRACTICE 12, p. 158.

1. does Tom does too
2. does Brian Brian doesn’t
3. was I . . . I was
4. is Oregon Oregon is
5. did Jean . . . Jean did
6. did Jason . . . Jason didn’t
7. can Rick . . . Rick can’t
8. does Laura . . . Laura does
9. does Alice . . . Alice doesn’t
10. are porpoises . . . porpoises are
11. have I . . . I haven’t
12. does my brother . . . my brother does
13. will Erin . . . Erin won’t

PRACTICE 13, p. 160.

PART I.

1. can’t either 7. couldn’t either
2. does too 8. did too
3. doesn’t either 9. can’t either
4. is too 10. does too
5. wasn’t either 11. would too
6. didn’t either

PART II.

12. so is 18. neither is
13. neither do 19. so does
14. neither did 20. so is
15. so are 21. neither have
16. so do 22. so did
17. so is 23. neither did

PRACTICE 14, p. 161.

1. Mr. Tanaka was late for work because [he] [missed] the bus.
2. I closed the door because the [room] [was] cold.
3. Because [I] [lost] my umbrella, I got wet on the way home.
4. Joe didn’t bring his book to class because [he] [couldn’t find] it.
5. The teacher couldn’t hear the question because the [class] [was] so noisy.
6. Because the [ice cream] [was beginning] to melt, I put it back in the freezer.

PRACTICE 15, p. 161.

1. I opened the window because the room was hot. We felt more comfortable then.
2. Because his coffee was cold, Jack didn’t finish it. He left it on the table and walked away.
3. Because the weather was bad, we canceled our trip into the city. We stayed home and watched TV.
4. Debbie is a cheerleader. She woke up in the morning with a sore throat because she had cheered loudly at the basketball game.
5. Francisco is an intelligent and ambitious young man. Because he hopes to get a good job late in life, he is working hard to get a good education now.

PRACTICE 16, p. 161.

1. lose weight—Eric went on a diet because he wanted to lose weight.
2. didn’t have money—The family couldn’t buy food because they didn’t have money.
3. have several children—Our neighbors are very busy because they have several children.
4. be tired—Because I am tired, I am going to bed.
5. exercise every day—Because Susan exercises every day, she is in great shape.
6. have a high fever—Because Jennifer has a high fever, she is going to the doctor.

PRACTICE 17, p. 162.

1. a. He was hungry, so he ate a sandwich.
   b. Because he was hungry, he ate a sandwich.
   c. He ate a sandwich because he was hungry.
2. a. Because my sister was tired, she went to bed.
   b. My sister went to bed because she was tired.
   c. My sister was tired, so she went to bed.
3. a. Because human beings have opposable thumbs, they can easily pick things up and hold them.
   b. Human beings have opposable thumbs, so they can easily pick things up and hold them.
   c. Human beings can easily pick things up and hold them because they have opposable thumbs.
4. a. Schoolchildren can usually identify Italy easily on a world map because it is shaped like a boot.
   b. Because Italy has the distinctive shape of a boot, schoolchildren can usually identify it easily.
   c. Italy has the distinctive shape of a boot, so schoolchildren can usually identify it easily on a map.

PRACTICE 18, p. 163.

1. like 5. didn’t change
2. don’t like 6. didn’t pass
3. is 7. ate
4. stayed 8. were

PRACTICE 19, p. 164.

1. B 5. A 9. A
2. A 6. A 10. A

22 ANSWER KEY Chapter 8
Chapter 9: COMPARISONS

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 169.
1. (just) as busy as Jason (is)
2. (nearly) as busy as Jason (is)
3. (nearly) as tired as Susan (was)
4. (nearly) as tired as Susan (was)
5. (just) as large as/as big as Po’s (is)
6. (nearly) as big as Anna’s (is)

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 169.
1. aren’t as noisy as
2. is as lazy as
3. aren’t as strong as
4. is as tall as
5. isn’t as comfortable as
6. isn’t as big as
7. was as nervous as
8. isn’t as fresh and clean as
9. am not as ambitious as
10. aren’t as interesting as

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 170.
PART I.
1. not nearly as
2. almost as / not quite as
3. not nearly as
4. just as

PART II.
5. just as
6. not nearly as
7. almost as / not quite as
8. not nearly as

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 172.
PART I.
1. as snow
2. as ice
3. as a picture
4. as a bat
5. as a bone
6. as a pillow
7. as a wink
8. as a mouse
9. as a bird
10. as pie
11. dry as a bone

PART II.
1. cold as ice
2. quick as a wink
3. blind as a bat
4. white as snow
5. quiet as a mouse
6. pretty as a picture
7. easy as pie
8. free as a bird
9. soft as a pillow
10. as pie

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 172.
PART I.
1. as snow
2. as ice
3. as a picture
4. as a bat
5. as a bone
6. as a pillow
7. as a wink
8. as a mouse
9. as a bird
10. as pie
11. dry as a bone

PART II.
1. just as
2. almost as / not quite as
3. just as
4. not nearly as
5. almost as / not quite as
6. just as
7. not nearly as
8. just as
9. not nearly as
10. almost as / not quite as

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. 174.
1. stronger . . . the strongest
2. more important . . . the most important
3. softer . . . the softest
4. lazier . . . the laziest
5. more wonderful . . . the most wonderful
6. calmer . . . the calmest
7. tamer . . . the tamest
8. dimmer . . . the dimmest
9. more convenient . . . the most convenient
10. more clever/cleverer . . . the most cleverest
11. better . . . the best
12. worse . . . the worst
13. farther . . . the farthest
14. slower . . . the slowest
15. more slowly . . . the most slowly

◊ PRACTICE 7, p. 174.
1. colder than
2. older than
3. more expensive than
4. larger
5. hotter than
6. slower than
7. creamier than
8. worse than
9. faster than
10. more important
11. quicker than
12. heavier
13. safer than
14. more difficult than
\[\text{PRACTICE 15, p. 179.}\]
1. (no change possible using less)
2. I visit my brother less often than I visit my sister.
3. (no change possible using less)
4. Sam is less generous than his brother.
5. I'm less eager to go to the circus than the children are.
6. A notebook is less expensive than a textbook.
7. (no change possible using less)
8. Some people think that life in a city is less peaceful than life in a small town.
9. (no change possible using less)
10. I travel to Europe on business less frequently than I used to.

\[\text{PRACTICE 16, p. 180.}\]
1. Sam enjoys football more than his best friend does.
2. OK
3. The coach helped Anna more than Nancy did. OR The coach helped Anna more than she/he helped Nancy.
5. Sara likes tennis more than her husband does. OR Sara likes tennis more than her husband helps her.
7. Charles knows Judy better than Kevin does. OR Charles knows Judy better than he knows Kevin.

\[\text{PRACTICE 17, p. 180.}\]
1. more newspapers (NOUN)
2. more homework (NOUN)
3. more snow (NOUN)
4. more friends (NOUN)
5. more pleasant/pleasanter (ADJ)
6. more easily (ADV)
7. more books (NOUN)
8. more carefully (ADV)
9. louder (ADJ)

\[\text{PRACTICE 18, p. 181.}\]
1. better and better
2. bigger and bigger
3. colder and colder
4. louder and louder
5. angrier and angrier/more and more angry
6. longer and longer
7. more and more expensive
8. more and more tired
9. friendlier and friendlier/more and more friendly
10. faster and faster

\[\text{PRACTICE 19, p. 181.}\]
1. The more the stronger
2. The softer the easier
3. the older the wiser
4. The simpler the more relaxed
5. The longer the more tired
6. The harder the more

\[\text{PRACTICE 20, p. 182.}\]
1. more he talked, the more bored I became
2. older you are, the more you understand
3. more I thought about it, the more confused I became
4. more polluted the air, the greater the chances of developing respiratory diseases
5. faster he talked, the more confused I became
6. more the fans clapped and cheered, the more shots the basketball team made

\[\text{PRACTICE 21, p. 183.}\]
1. the most familiar
2. the longest necks
3. the largest ears
4. the largest eyes
5. the most intelligent ... the most intelligent
PART I.
1. the most difficult ... ever
2. the friendliest ... of
3. the most embarrassing ... in
4. the wisest ... ever
5. the best ... in
6. the most artistic of
7. the hottest ... in
8. the warmest ... of
9. the brightest ... ever
10. the highest ... in
11. the most knowledgeable ... of
12. the most important ... in

PART II.
13. the least ambitious of
14. the least expensive ... ever
15. the least populated ... in
16. the least amount ... ever

PART III.
12. Air ... than iron
13. Iron ... than wood
14. iron ... of all
15. Air ... as water
16. air ... of all
17. Water ... as air
18. Water and iron ... than wood

PART 24, p. 186.
1. a 4. a 7. a
2. b 5. a 8. b
3. b 6. b

PART 25, p. 186.
1. the funniest ... funnier
2. sadder ... the saddest
3. the best ... better book
4. more exhausting ... the most exhausting

PART 26, p. 187.
1. more intelligent than ... the smartest ... in
2. the most popular ... in
3. smaller than
4. More potatoes ... than

PART 27, p. 188.
1. safer ... than
2. the largest ... in
3. more strength than
4. better
5. shortest
6. thinner ... juicier
7. more comfortable ... than
8. the most difficult of
9. the worst ...

PART 28, p. 189.
1. alike 5. like
2. like 6. like
3. alike 7. alike
4. alike 8. like

PART 29, p. 190.
1. from 7. to
2. to 8. as
3. as 9. to
4. from 10. from
5. as 11. as
6. to 12. from

PART 30, p. 190.

PART 31, p. 191.
1. like
2. like
3. alike
4. A: alike
   B: alike/the same ...
5. like
6. A: like
   B: similar to
7. alike ... alike ...
8. the same ... the same ...

ANSWER KEY Chapter 9 25
Chapter 10: THE PASSIVE

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 193.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>active/passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>grow</td>
<td>active/passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is grown</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>active/passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was written</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>explained</td>
<td>active/passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are designed</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>design</td>
<td>active</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 193.

1. is delivered
2. has been eaten
3. was written
4. is going to be fixed
5. will be taught
6. is going to be brought
7. was won
8. will be treated
9. have been planted
10. are caught
PRACTICE 9, p. 198.

verb object
1. TRANSITIVE a letter
2. TRANSITIVE (none)
3. TRANSITIVE (none)
4. TRANSITIVE (none)
5. TRANSITIVE the ball
6. TRANSITIVE (none)
7. TRANSITIVE (none)
8. TRANSITIVE my car
9. TRANSITIVE the book
10. INTRANSITIVE (none)

PRACTICE 10, p. 198.

object passive sentence
1. me I was awakened by a noise.
2. (no change) 
3. the mistake The mistake was discovered by Alice.
4. (no change) 
5. (no change) 
6. the chair The chair was fixed by Anita.
7. (no change) 
8. (no change) 
9. (no change) 
10. (no change) 
11. a quiz A quiz was announced by the teacher.
12. (no change) 
13. (no change) 
14. (no change) 

PRACTICE 11, p. 199.

Passive (checked) sentences: 2, 4, 6, 9

PRACTICE 12, p. 199.

passive verb action performed by
1. are used unknown
2. was opened Shelley
3. will be translated unknown
4. was stolen unknown
5. were taken a professional photographer
6. is going to be built unknown
7. has been rented a young family
8. has been rented unknown

PRACTICE 13, p. 200.

Unnecessary by-phrases: 1, 3, 6, 8

PRACTICE 14, p. 200.

1. The soccer game has been canceled.
2. The meeting has been canceled by the president.
3. Beer and wine are served at that restaurant.
4. I was confused in class yesterday.
5. I was confused by the teacher's directions.
6. The dishes haven't been washed yet.
7. They should be washed soon.
8. Was this sweater washed in hot water?
9. Wool sweaters should not be washed in hot water.
10. I was invited to the party by Luis.
11. Have you been invited to the party?

PRACTICE 15, p. 201.

1. Sometimes keys are hidden under cars.
2. Cats hide under cars.
3. Students are taught by teachers.
4. Students study a lot.
5. Cereal is often eaten at breakfast.
6. Cats eat cat food.
7. Mice are eaten by cats.
8. Songs are sung to children by their mothers.
10. Thai food is cooked in Thai restaurants.
11. Chefs cook in restaurants.

PRACTICE 16, p. 201.

1. are considering ... is being considered
2. are watching ... are being watched
3. are painting ... is being painted
4. is fixing ... is being fixed
5. was fixing ... was being fixed
6. are meeting ... is being met
7. were moving ... was being moved
8. were singing ... was being sung
9. are discovering ... are still being discovered


1. is being played
2. was being cleaned
3. is being built
4. is being read
5. were being watched
6. was being flown

PRACTICE 18, p. 203.

1. b 4. a
2. b 5. b
3. b

PRACTICE 19, p. 203.

I/C corrections
1. I It was happened many years ago.
2. C (none)
3. I I went to school yesterday.
4. I Two firefighters were injured while they were fighting the fire.
5. I Sara was accidentally broke the window.
6. I Kara ate a snack when she got home from school.
7. C (none)
8. I I am agree with you.
9. I The little boy fell down while he was running in the park.
10. I The swimmer was died from a shark attack.
11. C (none)
12. I I was slept for nine hours last night.

PRACTICE 20, p. 204.

1. Class might be canceled.
2. Medicine can be prescribed by a doctor.
3. This report must be signed by Mr. Hook.
4. A new post office may be built on First Street.
5. Stamps have to be placed in the upper right-hand corner of an envelope.
6. That fence ought to be painted.
7. The assignment must be done by all of the students.
PRACTICE 21, p. 204.
1. shouldn't be put off
2. must be written
3. can be taught
4. could be killed
5. ought to be divided
6. must be sold
7. will not be known
8. has to be torn down . . . can be built

PRACTICE 22, p. 205.
1. has to be returned
2. should be returned
3. must be sent
4. could be sent
5. should be sent
6. can be put away
7. may be thrown away
8. might be picked up
9. will be cleaned up

PRACTICE 23, p. 205.
1. ACTIVE have used
2. PASSIVE have been used
3. PASSIVE are used
4. ACTIVE show
5. PASSIVE is shown
6. PASSIVE were made
7. PASSIVE were worn
8. ACTIVE became
9. ACTIVE wear
10. PASSIVE are sold
11. PASSIVE are made and sold
12. PASSIVE is made and sold
13. PASSIVE can be bought
14. ACTIVE Do own
15. PASSIVE was made

PRACTICE 24, p. 206.
1. is being repaired
2. was being repaired
3. repaired
4. is made
5. should not carry
6. ought to be kept
7. are sent
8. has already been hired
9. must be used . . . can produce
10. are manufactured
11. can be used . . . can be recycled . . . should not be thrown away
12. must be protected
13. can be found

PRACTICE 25, p. 207.
1. are loved . . . brings . . . are often used . . . can be found
2. exist . . . are found . . . have
3. are carried . . . carries . . . were introduced
4. are appreciated . . . is made . . . is gathered . . . are eaten
5. are made . . . do not come . . . are made
6. may be planted . . . grown . . . survive

PRACTICE 26, p. 207.

PART I.
1. to 6. of
2. about 7. with
3. from 8. in
4. of 9. about
5. with 10. with

PART II.
11. in 18. of
12. with 19. in
13. of 20. with
14. to 21. for
15. to
16. with
17. from

PRACTICE 27, p. 208.
1. The little girl is excited about her coming birthday party.
2. Mr. and Mrs. Rose are devoted to each other.
3. . . . I am lost.
4. The students are bored with their chemistry project.
5. . . . are composed of recycled products.
6. . . . He is hurt.
7. How well are you prepared for the driver's license test?
8. Mary has been engaged to Paul for five years.

PRACTICE 28, p. 209.
1. interesting
2. interested
3. exciting
4. excited
5. fascinated
6. fascinating
7. bored
8. boring
9. confusing
10. confused
11. excited
12. exciting
13. surprising
14. shocking
15. surprising

PRACTICE 29, p. 209.
1. boring
2. interested
3. confused
4. exciting
5. confused
6. interesting
7. surprising
8. bored
9. tired
10. frightened
11. frightened
12. frightened
13. fascinating
14. fascinating
15. fascinating

PRACTICE 30, p. 211.
1. confusing
2. frustrated
3. confusing
4. excited
5. confused
6. interesting
7. surprising
8. interested
9. interesting
10. confused
11. confusing
12. exhausting
13. embarrassing
14. shocking
15. surprising

PRACTICE 31, p. 211.
Incorrect sentences:
1. c 4. a
2. a 5. c
3. b

PRACTICE 32, p. 212.
1. sick
2. lost
3. dizzy
4. bored
5. hungry
6. late
7. rich
8. arrested
9. dressed
10. wet
11. invited
12. stolen
Chapter 11: COUNT/NONCOUNT NOUNS AND ARTICLES

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 218.
1. a game 14. an hour
2. an office 15. a star
3. a car 16. an eye
4. a friend 17. a new car
5. a mountain 18. an old car
6. a rock 19. a used car
7. an army 20. an uncle
8. an egg 21. a house
9. an island 22. an honest mistake
10. an ocean 23. a hospital
11. an umbrella 24. a hand
12. a university 25. an ant
13. a horse 26. a neighbor

These do not complete the sentences:
1. b 3. c 5. a
d e c
f h e
h f h
c g 6. d
f h g

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 218.
These do not complete the sentences:
1. bread, corn, peas, rice, sandwiches
2. apple trees, grass, lakes, mountains, plants, scenery
3. bracelets, jewels, jewelry, rings
4. equipment, hardware, machines, machinery, tools

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 219.
one some
1. words words
2. Ø vocabulary
3. Ø slang
4. Ø homework
5. assignment assignments
6. Ø grammar
7. dress dresses
8. Ø clothes
9. Ø clothing
10. parent parents
11. family families
12. Ø knowledge
13. Ø information
14. fact facts
15. Ø luck
16. Ø garbage

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 220.
1. bread, corn, peas, rice, sandwiches
2. apple trees, grass, lakes, mountains, plants, scenery
3. bracelets, jewels, jewelry, rings
4. equipment, hardware, machines, machinery, tools
PRACTICE 5, p. 220.

1. one chair
2. much furniture
3. many vegetables
4. much clothing
5. one vegetable
6. many clothes
7. much fruit
8. many facts
9. much grammar
10. one word
11. many idioms
12. much vocabulary
13. many cars
14. many games
15. much water
16. one parent
17. much sand
18. many professors
19. much dust
20. much money
21. much stuff
22. one thing
23. many things
24. much English
25. much toast

PRACTICE 6, p. 221.

1. is ... snow
2. is ... weather
3. Sunshine is
4. knowledge
5. fun
6. factories ... pollution
7. pride ... children
8. people ... intelligence
9. peace
10. hospitality
11. beef ... was
12. is ... fog
13. isn't much news
14. many articles are
15. much fun
16. many stars are
17. isn't much sunshine
18. is ... much pollution
19. much luck
20. are many kinds
21. is ... much violence
22. much makeup
23. many cars
24. Is ... much traffic

PRACTICE 7, p. 222.

1. many apples
2. much fruit
3. much mail
4. many letters
5. much English
6. much slang
7. many words are
8. much coffee
9. many sandwiches
10. much sugar
11. many courses
12. much homework
13. isn't much news
14. many articles are
15. much fun
16. many stars are
17. isn't much sunshine
18. is ... much pollution
19. much luck
20. are many kinds
21. is ... much violence
22. much makeup
23. many cars
24. Is ... much traffic

PRACTICE 8, p. 223.

1. many letters are
2. much mail (/)
3. many men have
4. many families are
5. many sentences are
6. much chalk (/) is
7. much English (/)
8. much ... literature (/)
9. many ... words
10. much gasoline (/)
11. much homework (/)
12. many grandchildren
13. many pages are
14. many libraries are
15. many glasses
16. much fun (/)
17. much education (/)
18. much soap (/)
19. many islands are
20. many people (/)
21. many zeroes/zeroes are
22. many things
23. one thing
24. a flower
25. a coin
26. a bar of soap
27. a cup of tea
28. an unsafe place
29. an honest mistake
30. some ... mistakes

PRACTICE 9, p. 224.

1. a flower
2. some/many flowers
3. a coin
4. some/much money
5. some/many coins
6. some/much salt
7. an error
8. a mistake
9. an honest mistake
10. some/many mistakes
11. a dream
12. an interesting dream
13. some ... questions
14. some/much soap
15. a bar of soap
16. some/much beauty
17. a cup of tea
18. an unsafe place
19. some/much fruit
20. some ... pieces of fruit

PRACTICE 10, p. 224.

1. a little music (/)
2. a few songs
3. a little help (/)
4. a little English (/)
5. a few ... apples
6. a little honey (/)
7. a little advice (/)
8. a few suggestions
9. a few questions
10. a few people (/)
11. a few ... minutes
12. a little light (/)
13. a little homework (/)
14. a little ... grammar (/)
15. a few flowers
16. a little progress (/)

PRACTICE 11, p. 225.

1. Kim has applied to a university in England.
2. ... gave her some ... jewelry and a poem he had written.
3. The politician wanted specific suggestions for her speech on the economy.
4. Some of the homework for my English class was easy, but many of the assignments were unclear.
5. Diane has been to Rome several times recently. She always has a wonderful time.
6. Many parents need advice about raising children.
7. The boys played together in the sand and dirt for hours.
8. A person doesn't need much equipment to play baseball: just a ball and a bat.
9. Much happiness can come from enjoying the simple things in life.

PRACTICE 12, p. 225.

1. Plants are the oldest living things on earth. (2)
2. Scientists divide living things into two groups: plants and animals. Generally speaking, plants stay in one place, but animals move around. (7)
3. Flowers, grass, and trees grow every place where people live. Plants also grow in deserts, in oceans, on mountaintops, and in polar regions. (7)
4. Plants are useful to people. We eat them. We use them for clothing. We build houses from them. Plants are also important to our health. We get many kinds of beneficial drugs from plants. In addition, plants provide beauty and enjoyment to all our lives. (7)
5. Crops are plants that people grow for food. Nature can ruin crops. Bad weather—such as too much rain or too little rain—can destroy fields of corn or wheat. Natural disasters such as floods and storms have caused farmers many problems since people first began to grow their own food. (9)
6. Food is a necessity for all living things. All animals and plants need to eat. Most plants take what they need through their roots and their leaves. The majority of insects live solely on plants. Many birds have a diet of worms and insects. Reptiles eat small animals, eggs, and insects. (13)

PRACTICE 13, p. 226.

1. cup
2. pounds
3. bowl, cup
4. glass, bottle, quart
5. piece
6. gallons
7. bottle, gallon, quart
8. piece
9. bottle, glass
10. pieces
11. bowl, cup, piece, pound, kilo
12. sheets
13. loaf
14. spoonful
15. tube
16. bar, piece
17. piece
18. piece
19. pieces
20. pieces
PRACTICE 14, p. 227.
1. jar 6. bag, box
2. bottle, box 7. jar
3. box, bottle 8. bottle
4. jar, bag, can/tin 9. box, bag
5. can/tin 10. can/tin

PRACTICE 15, p. 227.
1. many suitcases
2. much suntan oil
3. many pairs of sandals
4. many tubes of toothpaste
5. many kilos of luggage
6. much money

PRACTICE 16, p. 228.
1. a letter 10. a suggestion
2. some mail 11. an interesting story
3. some equipment 12. some interesting news
4. a tool 13. a poem
5. some food 14. some poetry
6. an apple 15. a song
7. some old clothing 16. some Indian music
8. an old shirt 17. a new word
9. some advice 18. some new slang

PRACTICE 17, p. 228.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>singular</th>
<th>plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a bird</td>
<td>I saw some birds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some corn</td>
<td>Ø (none possible)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some tea</td>
<td>Ø (none possible)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a flower</td>
<td>I picked some flowers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some water</td>
<td>Ø (none possible)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a horse</td>
<td>I fed grass to some horses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some jewelry</td>
<td>Ø (none possible)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some money</td>
<td>Ø (none possible)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a new shirt</td>
<td>Tom bought some new shirts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>some soap</td>
<td>Ø (none possible)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PRACTICE 18, p. 229.
1. A dog 13. the telephone
2. the dog 14. the cat
3. a desk . . . a bed 15. A: a cat
4. the desk . . . the top drawer 16. B: a dog
5. the basement 17. A: the lecture
6. a basement 18. B: The speaker . . . an interesting talk
7. a subject . . . a verb 19. A: a cup of coffee
8. the subject . . . the verb 20. B: the cafe . . . the corner
9. a meeting 21. A: a job
10. the meeting 22. B: a restaurant
11. a long distance . . . a telephone 12. The distance . . . the sun . . . the earth

PRACTICE 19, p. 230.
1. Ø Dogs
2. the dogs
3. Ø Fruit
4. The fruit
5. the milk . . . the refrigerator . . . the table
6. Ø Milk
7. Ø Wine
8. the wine
9. Ø Meat
10. The meat
11. the potatoes
12. Ø Potatoes . . . Ø Vegetables
13. Ø Frogs . . . Ø Small animals . . . Ø Tails . . . Ø Turtles . . . Ø Trails . . . Ø Hard shells
14. The frogs . . . The turtles
15. the weather

PRACTICE 20, p. 231.
1. some coffee . . . some milk . . . The coffee . . . The milk
2. some soup . . . a sandwich . . . The soup . . . the sandwich
3. some clothes . . . a suit . . . a shirt . . . a tie . . . The suit . . . The shirt . . . the tie
4. A: an accident . . . A man . . . a Volkswagen . . . a bus
   B: the accident
   A: The man . . . the Volkswagen . . . the bus
5. a man . . . a woman . . . an argument . . . The man . . . the woman . . . the man . . . the argument
6. some birds . . . a tree . . . a cat . . . the tree . . . The birds . . . the cat . . . the cat . . . the birds

PRACTICE 21, p. 233.
1. a man 11. a solution
2. a truck 12. the solution
3. a covered bridge 13. the truck
4. The bridge 14. the bridge
5. a small river 15. the river
6. the man 16. a great idea
7. the man 17. the man
8. the top 18. the tires
9. the bridge 19. the river
10. the bridge

PRACTICE 22, p. 234.
1. B: An egg
   A: the egg
2. Ø Eggs
3. a scientific fact . . . Ø steam . . . Ø water
4. Ø Ogas
5. The gas
6. Ø Newspapers . . . an important source . . . Ø information
7. The sun . . . a star . . . the sun . . . Ø heat . . . Ø light . . . Ø energy
8. Ø Ducks
9. Ø Pizza . . . Ø cheese . . . Ø tomatoes . . . Ø Pizza . . . Ø Italian
10. A: the pizza
    B: the big piece . . . the small one
11. Ø Gold . . . an excellent conductor . . . Ø electricity . . . a spaceship
12. the kitchen . . . a sandwich
13. A: the plumber . . . The sink
    B: the water supply . . . the house . . . the leak
14. the man . . . the president
15. a president
My roommate likes Vietnamese food, and I like Thai food.

The religion of Saudi Arabia is Islam.

Sheila works for the Xerox Corporation. It is a very large corporation.

Pedro is from Latin America.

My uncle lives in St. Louis. I'm going to visit Uncle Bill next spring.

We went to a park. We went to Waterfall Park.

Are you going to the University of Oregon or Oregon State University?

Alice goes to a university in Oregon.

The next assignment in literature class is to read *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer*.

In France, they call it "Bastille Day."

1. Do you know Robert Jones?

2. (no change)

3. I like Uncle Joe and Aunt Sara.

4. (no change)

5. Susan W. Miller is a professor.

6. I am in Prof. Miller's class.

7. The weather is cold in January.

8. (no change)

9. I have three classes on Monday.

10. I would like to visit Los Angeles.

11. It's the largest city in California.

12. (no change)

13. There are fifty states in the United States of America.

14. (no change)

15. Today we can fly across the Atlantic Ocean in hours.

16. (no change)


18. (no change)

19. Our family stayed at the Hilton Hotel in Bangkok.

20. Yoko is Japanese, but she can also speak German.

PRACTICE 26, p. 238.

1. The mail carrier brought only one letter today.

2. Mr. Dale gave his class a long history assignment for the weekend.

3. Tariq speaks several languages, including Arabic and Spanish.

4. Dr. Kim gives all her patients a toothbrush (or toothbrushes) and toothpaste at their dental appointments.

5. I usually have a glass of water with my lunch.

6. A helpful policeman gave us information about the city.

7. This cookie recipe calls for two cups of nuts.

8. Many vegetables are believed to have cancer-fighting ingredients.

9. Only applicants with the necessary experiences should apply for the computer position.

10. When Vicki likes a movie, she sees it several times.

11. A popular children's story is *Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs*.

12. Is it possible to stop all violence in the world?
Chapter 12: RELATIVE CLAUSES

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 240.
1. who helped me move the refrigerator
   I: I thanked
   2: He helped
2. who was wearing a gray suit
   I: A woman asked
   2: She was wearing
3. who aided the rebels
   I: The woman put
   2: She aided
4. who was wearing a blue coat
   I: I saw
   2: He was wearing
5. who broke the vase
   I: The girl apologized
   2: She broke

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 241.
1. The woman who answered the phone was polite.
2. The man who sang at the concert has a good voice.
3. We enjoyed the actors who played the leading roles.
4. The girl who fell down the stairs is hurt.
5. I read about the soccer player who was injured in the game yesterday.

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 241.
1. The people who live next to me are nice.
   They live next to me.
2. The people whom Kate visited yesterday were French.
   Kate visited them yesterday.
3. The people whom I saw at the park were having a picnic.
   I saw them.
4. The students who go to this school are friendly.
   They go to this school.
5. The woman whom you met last week lives in Mexico.
   You met her last week.

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 242.
1. The woman whom Jack met was polite.
2. I like the woman who manages my uncle’s store.
3. The singer whom we heard at the concert was wonderful.
4. The people who came to dinner brought a small gift.
5. What is the name of the woman whom Tom invited to the dance?

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 242.
1. who
2. who(m)
3. who
4. who(m)
5. who
6. who(m)
7. who
8. who
9. who
10. who
11. who(m)
12. who(m)
13. who
14. who(m)
15. who

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. 243.
1. O that
2. S
3. S
4. O who
5. S
6. S
7. S
8. O that

◊ PRACTICE 7, p. 243.
1. That man that I saw was wearing a black hat.
2. (no change)
3. The fruit that I bought today . . .
4. . . . a person that I will never forget.
5. (no change)
6. The girl that sits in front of Richard has long black hair
   that she wears . . .
7. (no change)
8. (no change)

◊ PRACTICE 8, p. 244.
1. who/that
2. who(m)/that/Ø
3. who(m)/that/Ø
4. who/that
5. who(m)/that/Ø
6. who(m)/that/Ø

◊ PRACTICE 9, p. 245.
1. C
2. A
3. C
4. C
5. B
6. A
7. C
8. C
9. C
10. C

◊ PRACTICE 10, p. 245.
1. who/that designs buildings.
2. who/that doesn’t eat meat.
3. which/that forms when water boils.
4. which/that has a hard shell and can live in water or on land.
5. who/that leaves society and lives completely alone.
6. which/that grows in hot climates and produces large bunches of yellow fruit.
7. which/that can be shaped and hardened to form many useful things.
8. which/that cannot be understood or explained.

◊ PRACTICE 11, p. 246.
1. O which
2. S
3. O which
4. S
5. S
6. S
7. O which
8. S
9. S
10. O which

◊ PRACTICE 12, p. 246.
1. which/that/Ø
2. who/that
3. which/that/Ø
4. which/that/Ø
5. which/that/Ø
6. which/that

◊ PRACTICE 13, p. 247.
Incorrect (crossed out) pronouns:
1. them
2. it
3. them
4. him
5. her
6. him
Adjective clauses:

1. we listened to at Sara's apartment
2. I accidentally broke e
3. we were waiting for
4. I always enjoy talking to about politics
5. I had just written e
6. I've been interested in for a long time
7. I was looking at
8. I was waiting for
9. I waved at
10. for whom Alex was waiting

1. whose daughter is a pilot
2. whose husband is out of work
3. whose wallet I found
4. whose views I share
5. which/that had backbones
6. which/that disrupted the global climate and caused mass extinctions of animal life

True (checked) answers:
1. a, c
2. c
3. b, c
4. c
5. a, c
6. a, c
7. b
Chapter 13: GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES

PRACTICE 1, p. 256.
1. moving 7. which/that
2. who/that...whom 8. who(m)/that/O
3. who/that...which/that 9. whose
4. who/that 10. which/that
5. which/that/O 11. who/that
6. whose

PRACTICE 2, p. 256.
1. went dancing 6. go sightseeing
2. is going to go hiking 7. go camping
3. went shopping 8. go sailing
4. go swimming 9. go skiing
5. goes fishing 10. went skydiving

PRACTICE 3, p. 257.
1. INF to wait
2. GER walking
3. INF to help
4. GER writing
5. INF to call
6. GER quitting
7. INF to work
8. INF to grow

PRACTICE 4, p. 258.
PART I.
1. to work 7. to work
2. working 8. to work
3. to work 9. working
4. working 10. to work
5. to work 11. working
6. to work/working 12. working

PART II.
13. to leave 18. leaving
14. to leave 19. to leave
15. leaving 20. to leave
16. leaving 21. leaving
17. leaving 22. to leave

PART III.
23. to know 28. to know
24. to know 29. to know/knowing
25. to know 30. to know
26. knowing 31. to know
27. to know 32. to know/knowing

PRACTICE 5, p. 258.

PRACTICE 6, p. 261.
1. B 6. A, B
2. A, B 7. A, B
3. A, B 8. B
4. B 9. A
5. A, B 10. A, B

ANSWER KEY Chapter 13

1. who/that
2. who/that...whom
3. who/that...which/that
4. who/that
5. which/that/O
6. whose

PRACTICE 24, p. 254.
1. A movie that looks interesting opens tomorrow.
2. My family lived in a house which it was built in 1900.
3. The little boy who was lost asked for directions.
4. I don't know people whose their lives are carefree.
5. It is important to help people who have no money.
6. At the airport, I was waiting for friends who I hadn't seen--them--for a long time.
7. The woman who/that lives next door likes to . . .
8. My teacher has two cats whose their names are Ping and Pong.
9. A beautiful garden--that--separates my house from the street.
10. I asked the children who were sitting on the bench to help us.
11. The school that my children attend--ie--is very good academically.
12. I enjoyed the songs which we sang--them--.
13. One of the places that I like to visit is Central Park.
14. The movie we saw--it--last evening was very exciting.
15. I sent the parents whose son I hiked with a picture of us on Mt. Fuji.
16. Do you know the man who works in that office?
17. A mother whose daughter is in my class often brings cookies for the children.
18. The CD player which/that I bought can hold several CDs at once.
19. The bed which I sleep in is very comfortable. OR
   The bed in which I sleep is very comfortable.
20. . . . problems which I have had--them--since I came here.
◊ PRACTICE 8, p. 262.

PART I.
1. of flying 5. of working
2. for hurting 6. about walking
3. in helping 7. of/about owning
4. at listening

PART II.
8. for closing 12. on eating
9. for lending 13. to finishing
10. on becoming 14. from making
11. for taking 15. about ... having

◊ PRACTICE 9, p. 263.

1. for ... for interrupting 8. in ... in saving
2. in ... in learning 9. about ... about falling
3. for ... for helping 10. ... making
4. on ... on walking 11. about ... about going
5. for ... for losing 12. to ... to going
6. like ... like going
7. at ... at drawing

◊ PRACTICE 10, p. 264.

PART I.
1. about asking 6. to ask
2. to ask 7. for asking
3. on asking 8. to ask
4. about asking 9. to ask/asking
5. about asking 10. to ask/asking

PART II.
11. to fix 16. about fixing
12. to fix/fixing 17. to fix/fixing
13. to fix 18. to fix
14. to fix 19. to fix
15. to fix 20. fixing

◊ PRACTICE 11, p. 265.

1. writing 6. adopting
2. to install 7. to take
3. to cash 8. in using
4. staying 9. to be
5. to go 10. to lower

◊ PRACTICE 12, p. 265.

1. going 11. for watering
2. of driving 12. for speaking
3. to park/on parking 13. on washing
4. to watch/watching 14. from hitting
5. to cook/cooking 15. to be
6. baking 16. repairing
7. of going 17. to get
8. of/about becoming 18. to have/on having
9. having 19. to taking
10. running 20. about seeing

◊ PRACTICE 13, p. 267.

1. by holding
2. by reading
3. by reading
4. by watching
5. by running
6. by treating

◊ PRACTICE 14, p. 268.

1. I arrived on time by taking a taxi instead of a bus.
2. I put out the fire by pouring water on it.
3. Giraffes can reach the leaves at the tops of trees by stretching their long necks.
4. I fixed the chair by tightening the loose screws.
5. Sylvia was able to buy an expensive stereo system by saving her money for two years.
6. A hippopotamus can cross a river by walking on the bottom of the riverbed.
7. I figured out how to cook the noodles by reading the directions on the package.
8. Pam finished her project on time by working all through the night.
9. You can figure out how old a tree is by counting its rings.

◊ PRACTICE 15, p. 268.

1. with 7. by 13. by
2. by 8. by 14. with
3. with 9. with 15. with
4. by 10. with 16. with
5. by 11. by
6. with 12. with

◊ PRACTICE 16, p. 269.

1. a. It is ... to learn
   b. Learning ... is
2. a. Eating ... is
   b. It is ... to eat
3. a. Driving ... is
   b. It is ... to drive
4. a. It is ... to swim
   b. Swimming ... is
5. a. Is it ... to live
   b. Is living
6. a. Is it ... to complete
   b. Is completing

◊ PRACTICE 17, p. 270.

1. It is difficult for shy people to meet
2. It is interesting for babies to look
3. it is customary for young children to sleep
4. It is necessary for airline pilots to have
5. It is hard for many teenagers to wake up
6. It is important for elderly people to keep
7. It is boring for people to listen
8. It is necessary for students to have
9. It is impossible for scientists to know
10. It is important for parents to teach
11. It is easy for people to be
12. It is dangerous for small children to cross

◊ PRACTICE 18, p. 271.

PART I.
1. for 8. to
2. to 9. to
3. to 10. for
4. for 11. for
5. to 12. to
6. to 13. to
7. for 14. for
8. to 15. to
1. to 5. for 9. to
2. for 6. to 10. for
3. for 7. to 11. for
4. to 8. for

PRACTICE 20, p. 271.
1. turned on the TV (in order) to watch the news.
2. goes to the laundromat (in order) to wash his clothes.
3. runs (in order) to get to class on time.
4. open the bedroom windows (in order) to let in some fresh air.
5. writes a letter to his parents (in order) to ask them for some money.
6. have the radio on (in order) to listen to a baseball game.
7. go to the library (in order) to study in peace and quiet.

PRACTICE 21, p. 272.
1. a. enough time to go
   b. too busy to go
2. a. tall enough
   b. too short
3. a. enough money
   b. too poor
4. a. too hot
   b. cool enough
5. a. too sick to eat anything
   b. well enough to eat anything
6. a. isn’t old enough to stay home by herself
   b. too young to stay home by herself

PRACTICE 22, p. 273.
1. 0 . . . enough 7. too . . . 0
2. too . . . 0 8. 0 . . . enough
3. enough . . . 0 9. enough . . . 0
4. too . . . 0 10. too . . . 0
5. 0 . . . enough 11. enough . . . 0
6. 0 . . . enough 12. 0 . . . enough

PRACTICE 23, p. 273.
1. being . . . to be
2. to stay
3. to help
4. to thank
5. going . . . to stay
6. to learn
7. to cause . . . to destroy
8. to recognize . . . to build . . . to knock
9. Predicting . . . to predict . . . reading . . . to act . . . running . . . counting . . . to be able to predict

PRACTICE 24, p. 274.
1. studying
2. jotting
3. to be
4. B: flying
   A: crashing
5. A: arguing . . . to disagree . . . be
   B: raising . . . to yell
   A: to get
6. A: to sneak . . . paying
   B: doing
   A: trying to sneak . . . to have . . . to like . . . liking . . . to do
7. to build
8. to do . . . to do . . . to do . . . to do
9. A: doing
   B: going shopping
   A: going . . . pretending to be . . . buying
   B: to do
   A: to get . . . to buy . . . to have
   B: Pretending to be . . . buying
10. B: putting . . . forgetting to send
    A: to get . . . not remembering
11. interrupting
12. to taste . . . to make

PRACTICE 25, p. 276.
1. I decided not to buy a new car.
2. The Johnsons are considering selling their antique store.
3. Sam finally finished building his vacation home in the mountains.
4. My wife and I go to- dancing at the community center every Saturday night.
5. Suddenly, it began to rain/raining and the wind started to blow.
6. The baby is afraid to be of being away from her mother for any length of time.
7. I am excited about starting college this September.
8. You can send your application by fax.
9. My country is very beautiful. OR My country is too-beautiful.
10. It is exciting to drive a sports car.
11. My grandparents enjoy traveling across the country in a motor home.
12. Elena made this sweater by hand.
13. Swimming is one of the sports we can participate in at school.
14. That was very good, but I’m too full to eat any more.
15. My mother-in-law went to a tourist shop to buy a disposable camera.
16. Instead of getting her degree in four years, Michelle decided to travel abroad first.
17. Swimming with a group of people is more enjoyable than swimming alone.
18. It is interesting to meet new people.
19. It is hard for me to stay up past 9:00.
20. The professor thanked his students for doing well on the test.

Chapter 14: NOUN CLAUSES

PRACTICE 1, p. 278.
1. I don’t know where Jack bought his boots.
2. Where did Jack buy his boots?
3. I don’t understand why Ann left.
4. Why did Ann leave?
5. I don’t know where your book is.
6. Where is your book?
7. When did Bob come?
8. I don’t know when Bob came.
9. What does “calm” mean?
11. I don’t know how long the earth has existed.
12. How long has the earth existed?

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 278.

Noun clauses:
1. where [Patty] [went] last night
2. where [Joe’s parents] [live]
3. where [Joe] [lives]
4. what time [the movie] [begins]
5. what [Brazil] [is]
6. what [Estefan] [said]
7. when [the packages] [will arrive]
8. how far [it] [is] to the post office
9. [who] [knocked] on the door
10. [what] [happened] at the party last night

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 279.

question
1. Why did Tim leave?
2. Where did he go?
3. Where does he live?
4. Is he now?
5. What time will he return?
6. How far is it to his house?
7. Who lives next door to him?
8. What happened to him?

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 279.

question
1. did Marcos leave?
2. did he say?
3. is the post office?
4. is it?
5. did David arrive?
6. is Anna from?
7. was Kathy
8. lives
9. did Eric invite
10. borrowed
11. are the restrooms located?

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 281.

1. who(m) Helen talked to?
2. who lives in that apartment?
3. what he said.

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. 281.

A: were you
A: you were

B: you said
B: she came

A: Tom went
A: was she

A: a bumblebee is
A: she was

◊ PRACTICE 7, p. 282.

Noun clauses:
1. who [that man] [is]
2. [who] [called]
3. who [those people] [are]
4. who [that person] [is]
5. [who] [lives] next door to me
6. who [my teacher] [will be] next semester
7. [who] [will teach] us next semester
8. what [a lizard] [is]
9. [what] [happened] in class yesterday
10. whose hat [this] [is]
11. [whose hat] [is] on the table

◊ PRACTICE 8, p. 282.

A: / / is
B: / / is

A: / / is
B: / / is

A: / / is
B: / / is

A: / / is
B: / / is

A: / / is
B: / / is

◊ PRACTICE 9, p. 283.

1. who she is.
2. who they are.
3. whose book that is.
4. whose glasses those are?
5. what a wrench is?
6. who that woman is.
7. what a clause is?
8. what is in that drawer.
9. who is in that room.
10. what is on TV tonight.
11. what a carrot is?
12. who I am.
1. whose car that is
2. whose car is in front of Sam's house
3. who the best students are
4. what time dinner is
5. who's next in line
6. whose purse this is
7. what the main ideas of the story are
8. whose shoes those are under the chair
9. what causes tornadoes

1. if (whether) Tom is coming
2. if (whether) Jin has finished medical school yet
3. if (whether) Daniel has any time off soon
4. if (whether) the flight is on time
5. if (whether) there is enough gas in the car
6. if (whether) Yuki is married
7. if (whether) the Petersons are going to move
8. if (whether) Khaled changed jobs

1. if I'm going to need
2. if chicken is
3. if the new teaching position includes
4. if there will be a movie
5. if Greg has to come
6. if penguins ever get
7. if you can drive
8. if Nasser has already left

1. if (whether) Karen is
2. where Karen went?
3. how Pat is feeling
4. if (whether) Pat is feeling
5. if (whether) the bus stops
6. where the bus stops.
7. why Elena is absent
8. if (whether) Elena is going to be absent
9. if (whether) I should buy
10. which book should buy.
11. if (whether) we are going to have
12. if (whether) there is

1. rains
2. gets
3. like
4. runs
5. run
6. takes
7. enjoy
8. seems

1. I'm sorry that
2. I predict that
3. I'm surprised that
4. Are you certain that
5. Did you notice that
6. John is pleased that
7. Anna was convinced that
8. It's a fact that
9. A: Guido is delighted that
   B: I'm surprised that
10. A: How do you know that
    B: I'm still worried that
11. A: Mrs. Lane hopes that
    B: I don't think that
    A: I wish that
12. A: Do you think that
    B: Everyone knows that
    A: I'm not sure that that's true.

1. (that) I will have a peanut butter sandwich.
2. (that) I should study tonight
3. (that) flying in an airplane is safer than riding in a car.
4. (that) I'll get married someday.
5. (that) a huge monster was chasing me.
6. (that) John "Cat Man" Smith stole Mrs. Adams' jewelry.
7. (that) people are pretty much the same everywhere.
8. (that) high school students in the United States don't study as hard as the students in my country do.
9. (that) he always twirls his mustache when he's nervous?
10. (that) all people are equal.
11. (that) more than half of the people in the world go hungry every day?
12. (that) plastic trash kills thousands of marine animals every year?

1. I feel (don't feel) that smoking in public places should be prohibited.
2. I regret (don't regret) that I'm living in this country.
3. I would like to know (wouldn't like to know) when I will die.
4. I doubt (don't doubt) that there will be peace in the world soon.
5. I remember (can't remember) what I was like as a child.
6. I wonder (don't wonder) why the world exists.
7. I am afraid (am not afraid) that someone may make unwise decisions about my future.
8. I know (don't know) what I want to do with my life.

1. The Jeness are pleased that their granddaughter graduated from the university. They are pleased that she was offered a good job.
2. Po is lucky that the smoke alarm in his apartment rang. He is lucky that he woke up and discovered that his apartment building was on fire.
3. Ming Soo was surprised that she didn't fail the math exam. She was surprised that she got one of the highest grades in the class.
4. Karen is sorry that she lent her cousin Mark some money. She is sorry that she can't afford to buy her children new shoes.

1. that Alice has a car
2. that the library is open
3. that Ann speaks Spanish
4. that Alex passed his French course
5. that Mr. Kozari is going to be at the meeting
6. that the photos are ready to be picked up at the photo shop
1. Alex said, "Do you smell smoke?"
2. "Something is burning," he said.
3. He said, "Do you smell smoke? Something is burning."
4. "Do you smell smoke?" he said. "Something is burning."
5. Rachel said, "The game starts at seven."
6. When the game starts at seven, we should leave here at six," she said.
7. She said, "The game starts at seven. We should leave here at six. Can you be ready to leave then?"

1. Mrs. Hill said, "My children used to take the bus to school."
2. She said, "We moved closer to the school."
3. "Now my children can walk to school," Mrs. Hill said.
4. "Do you live near the school?" she asked.
5. "Yes, we live two blocks away," I replied.
6. "How long have you lived here?" Mrs. Hill wanted to know.
7. I said, "We've lived here for five years. How long have you lived here?"
8. "We've lived here for two years," Mrs. Hill said.
9. "It's a nice community," I said. "It's a good place to raise children."

1. Mr. Garcia asked me. "Why weren't you in class yesterday?"
2. "I had to stay home and take care of my pet bird," I said. "He wasn't feeling well."
3. "What? Did you miss class because of your pet bird?" Mr. Garcia demanded to know.
4. I replied, "Yes, sir. That's correct. I couldn't leave him alone. He looked so miserable."
5. "Now I've heard every excuse in the world," Mr. Garcia said. Then he threw his arms in the air and walked away.

1. One day my friend Laura and I were sitting in her apartment. We were having a cup of tea together and talking about the terrible earthquake that had just occurred in Iran. Laura asked me, "Have you ever been in an earthquake?"
2. "Yes, I have," I replied.
3. "Was it a big earthquake?" she asked.
4. "I've been in several earthquakes, and they've all been small ones," I answered. "Have you ever been in an earthquake?"
5. "There was an earthquake in my village five years ago," Laura said. "I was at my house. Suddenly the ground started shaking. I grabbed my little brother and ran outside. Everything was moving. I was scared to death. And then suddenly it was over."
6. "I'm glad you and your brother weren't hurt," I said.
7. "Yes, we were very lucky. Has everyone in the world felt an earthquake sometime in their lives?" Laura wondered.
8. "Do earthquakes occur everywhere on the earth?"
9. "Those are interesting questions," I said, "but I don't know the answers."

1. he...his
2. his...them
3. she...her
4. him...them
5. they...me...they
6. she...her
7. they...my
8. he...us...he...his

1. would meet
2. was going to be
3. had
4. needed
5. had flown
6. were planning
7. didn't want
8. could babysit

1. (that) you didn’t have
2. (that) you hadn’t found
3. (that) the Smiths hadn’t canceled
4. (that) it wouldn’t rain
5. (that) the Whites hadn’t gotten
6. (that) Mei didn’t exercise
7. (that) your computer wasn’t working
8. (that) Ali was coming

1. how old I was
2. if/whether he was going to be
3. if/whether she had
4. if/whether he had changed his
5. how long I had been
6. if/whether she could speak
7. if/whether he would be in his office
8. why she was laughing
9. if/whether I had ever considered

1. “Have you ever gone skydiving?”
2. “Will you be at the meeting?”
3. “Are you going to quit your job?”
4. “Where is your car?”
5. “What did you do after class yesterday?”
6. “Do you know Italian?”
7. “Can you guess what I have in my pocket?”
8. “Why aren’t you working at your desk?”

1. where I was from.
2. how I liked it here.
3. how long I would stay.
4. why I had come here.
5. if/whether I had met many people.
6. what I was going to study.
7. if/whether the local people were friendly to me.
8. if/whether I liked the weather here.
9. how I had chosen this school.
PRACTICE 30, p. 298.
1. he was going to call me
2. (that) he had to talk ... her
3. (that) she could meet me
4. (that) she had written him
5. (that) I needed his
6. she would see him
7. (that) he was going to meet ... me
8. what he was doing
9. (that) he was sure he had met me

PRACTICE 31, p. 299.
1. told 6. told said
2. said 7. asked ... said
3. asked 8. told told
4. told 9. told
5. said 10. asked ... said ... asked ... told

PRACTICE 32, p. 299.
1. asked me where I lived.
2. asked me if/whether I lived
3. told him / replied / said that I had
4. told me / said that he was looking
5. told me / said that he didn't like living
6. asked him if / whether he wanted to move in with me.
7. asked me where my apartment was.
8. replied / told him / said that I lived
9. told me / said that he couldn't move
10. told me / said that he would cancel his
11. asked me if/whether that was okay.
12. told him / replied / said that I was looking forward to having him

PRACTICE 33, p. 300.
Correct (checked) answers:
1. The teacher asked if I was finished.
   The teacher asked, “Are you finished?”
2. Aki said he was finished.
   Aki said that he was finished.
   Aki replied that he was finished.
   Aki answered that he was finished.
3. Ann told Tom she needed more time.
   Ann said she needed more time.
4. Donna answered that she was ready.
   Donna answered, “I am ready.”
5. Mr. Wong wanted to know if Ted was coming.
   Mr. Wong wondered if Ted was coming.
   Mr. Wong wondered, “Is Ted coming?”

PRACTICE 34, p. 300.
1. (that) he had forgotten
2. where his bicycle was ... told me/said (that) he had sold
3. (that) we would miss
4. if/whether she could swim
5. if/whether she wanted ... (that) she couldn't ... had to study
6. (that) she had broken
7. was ... (that) he wasn't ... (that) he had gone
8. if/whether I would be ... (that) I would be
9. if/whether he had ... been ... (that) he had been
10. where his cane was ... (that) I didn't know ... if/whether he needed ... (that) he wanted to walk ... (that) I would find it

PRACTICE 35, p. 302.
   The husband asked where the children were. His wife replied/said (that) they had already left for school.
   The father said that they had forgotten to take their books with them. The mother wondered how they could be so irresponsible. She asked the father what they were going to do.
   The father told her not to worry. He said (that) he would take the books with him and drop them off at the school on his way to work. The mother told him (that) that was okay and said goodbye. She told him to have a good day.
   The children asked their mother where their schoolbooks were. They said (that) they had left them on the kitchen table. They said (that) they couldn't go to school without their books.

PRACTICE 36, p. 303.
1. ... May I ask if/how old you are?
2. I wonder, “Did Rashed pick up something for dinner?”
3. I'm unsure what Lawrence does for a living.
4. Fernando said, “The best time for me to meet would be Thursday morning.”
5. Eriko asked me if I was coming to the graduation party. I told her that I wasn’t.
   OR I said she wasn’t.
6. I hope so that I will do well on my final exams.
7. Antonio asked his mother what she wanted for her birthday.
   I'm not sure if the price includes sales tax.
8. My mother asked me, “How many hours did you spend on your homework?”
9. Pedro asked if/whether that was okay.
   Pedro asked, “Is that okay?”
10. Mika told me she was going to stay home today.
11. I'd like to know how you do that.
12. My parents knew what Sam and I did.
13. It is a fact that life always changes.

Appendix 1: PHRASAL VERBS

PRACTICE 1, p. 305.
1. on 7. A: down
2. B: up 8. out out
3. down ... up 9. off on
4. B: on 10. A: up
5. B: off
6. away/out

PRACTICE 2, p. 306.
Correct (circled) completions:
1. her socks
2. the TV, the stove
3. his new shoes
4. a story, a fairy tale, an excuse
5. some rotten food, an old shirt
6. a doctor’s appointment, a meeting, a trip
7. a puzzle, a math problem, a riddle
8. a report, some late homework
9. a message, a phone number
10. a box, a sack of mail  
11. my coat, my wedding ring  
12. the light, the computer, the car engine

◇ PRACTICE 3, p. 307.  
1. out of  4. over  7. from  
2. on  5. into  8. in  
3. off  6. into  9. on

◇ PRACTICE 4, p. 308.  
1. B  5. F  
2. C  6. D  
3. A  7. E  
4. G

◇ PRACTICE 5, p. 308.  
1. back  8. up  
2. down/off  9. A: out  
3. out  10. A: off  
4. away  11. B: up  
5. on  12. B: back  
6. up... off  13. C: up  
7. back

◇ PRACTICE 6, p. 309.  
1. out... out  7. down... X  
2. on... X  8. X... up  
3. into... X  9. away... X  
4. into... X  10. up... up  
5. up... up  11. off... X  
6. away... away  12. from... X

◇ PRACTICE 7, p. 310.  
1. over  6. down  11. out  
2. out  7. around  12. up  
3. in  8. out  13. over  
4. out  9. up  
5. out  10. out

◇ PRACTICE 8, p. 311.  
1. a. off  5. a. into  
   b. on  6. b. up  
   c. down  7. c. over  
   d. back  8. d. up  
   e. out  9. e. off  
   f. away  10. f. back  
2. a. in  7. a. down  
   b. out  8. b. back  
3. a. over  9. c. up  
   b. off  10. d. over  
   c. on  11. e. in  
   d. into  12. f. out  
   e. out of  13. c. up  
4. a. out  14. b. up  
   b. up  15. c. down

◇ PRACTICE 9, p. 312.  
1. on  6. A: out  9. up  
2. up  7. B: over  10. on  
4. out  12. B: over  
5. out  13. B: up

◇ PRACTICE 10, p. 313.  
1. lay... off  6. cheer... up  
2. take... back  7. clean... up  
3. take... out  8. worked... out  
4. blow... out  9. think... over  
5. give... away  10. bring... up

◇ PRACTICE 11, p. 314.  
1. off  8. out  15. out of  
2. out  9. down  16. out  
3. up  10. down  17. on  
4. up  11. up  18. up  
5. over  12. up  19. back  
6. up  13. up  20. up  
7. in... down

◇ PRACTICE 12, p. 316.  
1. a. up  2. a. up  
   b. up  3. a. up  
   c. up  4. a. up  
   d. out  5. a. up  
   e. out  6. a. up  
   f. out of  7. a. up

◇ PRACTICE 13, p. 316.  
1. out for  7. through with  
2. in on  8. out for  
3. up for  9. back from  
4. along with 10. out of  
5. around with 11. up in  
6. out of

◇ PRACTICE 14, p. 317.  
1. gymnastics class  5. assignment  
2. their neighbors  6. cord  
3. paint  7. Hawaii  
4. rocks  8. snakes

◇ PRACTICE 15, p. 317.  
1. out... about  6. A: along with  
2. out for  7. B: out of  
3. back to  8. over to  
4. out with  9. around with  
5. away from 10. over to  
6. together with

◇ PRACTICE 16, p. 318.  
1. out about  5. together with  
2. out for  6. along with  
3. back to  7. over to  
4. around 8. out of

◇ PRACTICE 17, p. 319.  

42 ANSWER KEY Appendix 1
Appendix 2: PREPOSITION COMBINATIONS

◊ PRACTICE 1, p. 321.
1. of 2. to 3. to 4. with 5. for 6. to 7. about 8. of 9. from 10. to
11. with

◊ PRACTICE 2, p. 322.

◊ PRACTICE 3, p. 322.
1. at 2. at 3. in 4. with 5. for 6. for 7. about 8. for 9. to 10. for
11. with

◊ PRACTICE 4, p. 323.

◊ PRACTICE 5, p. 323.
11. with

◊ PRACTICE 6, p. 324.
1. a. of 2. a. about b. for c. of d. with e. of f. of g. in h. to 3. a. about b. about c. of d. of 4. a. of b. of c. of d. with e. of f. about g. for h. for

◊ PRACTICE 7, p. 325.
1. for 2. A: to ... about 3. to 4. from 5. A: on B: to 6. in 7. of 8. with ... about 9. to 10. to 11. with ... about

◊ PRACTICE 8, p. 326.
1. arrived at 2. wait on 3. invited ... to 4. consists of 5. waited for 6. talked about 7. is leaving for 8. is ... staring at 9. helped ... with 10. borrowed ... from

◊ PRACTICE 9, p. 326.
1. for 2. with 3. to 4. at 5. to 6. A: to 7. about/of 8. for 9. about ... about
10. from

◊ PRACTICE 10, p. 327.

◊ PRACTICE 11, p. 327.
1. on 2. to 3. in 4. with 5. for 6. to 7. about 8. for 9. to 10. from
11. to 12. from/of
13. of

◊ PRACTICE 12, p. 328.

◊ PRACTICE 13, p. 329.
1. on 2. to ... about 3. to ... from ... by ... by 4. for 5. A: about B: with 6. A: from B: to 7. about ... from 8. about 9. A: from B: from 10. about

◊ PRACTICE 14, p. 330.
1. hoped for 2. wonders about 3. divided ... into 4. add ... to 5. concentrates on 6. escaped from 7. am accustomed to 8. heard ... about

Correct (circled) prepositions:
1. to 2. of/from 3. of/about 4. of/about 5. of/about 6. with/to 7. to 8. like 9. to 10. for 11. to/from 12. of/about 13. with 14. at/with

◊ PRACTICE 15, p. 331.

◊ PRACTICE 16, p. 331.